THE FIFT BOOKE OF THE MOST PLEASANT AND ELECTABLE HISTORIE OF AMADIS DE GAVLE.

ining the first part of the most strange, vali-
worthy actes of ESPLANDIAN sonne to *Amadis*
his strange sailing in the great Serpent, the winning of his Sword,
nquest of the Castle *La montaigne defendu*, his warres with *Armato* King of
Turkie, his loue to *Leonorine* daughter to the Emperour of Constantinople,
with diuers seruices done in her behalfe: the besieging of Constantino-
ple by the Turks & Pagans, with their ouerthrow by the Christian
Princes: his marriage with *Leonorine*, his investing in the
Empire of Greece: and lastly his enchantment with
diuers other Princes in the pallace of Apol-
lidon deuised by *Virganda*.



LONDON.
Printed by Adam Islip, and are to be sold by
Hugh Iackson, dwelling in Fleetstreet.
1598.



MAY 30 69

THE BOOKE OF THE

The Printer to the courte-ous Readers.

GEntlemen, I present you here *with the fift book of* Amadis de Gaule, *of whose delectable history you haue already perused the first and second books: wherefore it may bee, you rather expect the third and fourth bookes to come forth in due course, then that the fift should thus vntimely appeare before the rest. The cause of which vnorderly proceeding, grew from this occasion: I hauing only interest in this and the following bookes of Amadis, haue already set out this fift booke, being the first of those which are in my hands, and also doth begin with the history of Esplandian, being the sonne of Amadis: intending by Gods grace to proceed with the others in due order as time doth permit. But as concerning the other Bookes which rest in another mans right, as they are not in my power, so can I make no promise when they shall bee published: wherefore seeing that matter remaines wholly to his will, I being ignorant*

of his intent, did according to my owne fancy go forward with my owne, which may the ſooner produce him to ſet out his: but if he ſhould not, yet will I by Gods helpe goe thorow with mine till I haue finiſhed all the parts that are in my hands: which are Hyſtories ſo pleaſant and delightfull, that it were great pitty they ſhould lie hidden from your gentle ſight: eſpecially, for that they containe ſuch high matters of knighthood and princelychiualry: All which I humbly commend to your fauourable cenſure.

Yours in all dutie,

A. I.

THE FIFT BOOKE OF *Amadis de Gaule*, containing part of the valiant acts of *Esplandian* his sonne, and others.

CHAP. I.

How Esplandian sleeping in the great serpent, when hee awaked, he found himselfe to bee at the foot of the rocke of the Enchauntresse, and what happened vnto him.

ESplandian that had fallen asleepe in the serpent by meanes of the melodious noise of trumpets, that the fire Gentlewomen sounded along the shoare, after he had receiued the order of knighthood, as it hath ben declared vnto you in the end of our fourth booke, when hee awaked was much abashed that he saw not any of the company that were there present when the Giant Balan dubbed him knight, but found himselfe alone betweene the wings of that monstrous beast, at the fot of a rocke vnknowne to him, which rocke was so high, that hee thought it impossible to climbe vp, but hee was persuaded that Vrganda la Descogneue (whose workes and enterprises were most wonderfull) had ordained it to be so, and thereupon he

comforted himselfe, going down into the body of the ship (where the day before that great assemblie had ben) but he found no man; and séeking further, hee went into the chappel, where hee espied Sergil his squire fast sléeping, and hard by him two old men with rols on their heads, apparrelled like Turkes: with that he went to Sergil, and with his foot gaue him such a thrust, that on a sodain he started vp, and speaking to his maister (as though hee had neuer séene him before) asked him what he meant, whereat Esplandian began to laugh, and said vnto him: God God, Sergil, hast thou ben in my company all thy life time, and knowest mee no better? and taking him by the hand, he drew him in such maner to him that therewith hee awaked, much ashamed to haue committed such a fault: whereof séeking to excuse himselfe, hee said vnto his maister, By my faith sir, I was so fast asléepe when you called me, that I neither remembred you nor my selfe, and I am now more abashed then I was before to think how I fel into so sound a sléepe: That cannot I tel (answered Esplandian) although as much hath happened vnto me. Then he told him that hee had slept, and when he awaked he found himselfe alone betwéene the wings of the Serpent, without any of the company that were with him when hee receiued the order of knighthood, and now (said he) we are arriued at the foot of the highest rocke that euer I saw, and withall it is so hard and difficult to climbe vp, that I can find neither path nor way how to doe it, yet haue I beheld it long, but (as I perceiue) it is enuironned with the sea in such manner, that considering the situation of the place, I certainly beléeue it is the rocke of the Enchauntresse, whereof in times past thou hast heard by Amadis my father. And as they were in this manner speaking, Sergil heard the two old men snort (that as yet they had not once perceiued) and demanded of Esplandian if he knew them not: As God helpe me no (said Esplandian) for as farre as I remember I neuer saw them before, but I iudge that Vrganda hath left them here to helpe vs if we néed. I pray you said Sergil let vs awake them: then hee called them so lowd that they rose vp, Esplandian asking them who brought them thether, but they made signes that they could not speake. It was then

about

about twelue of the clocke, and Esplandian would willingly haue eaten if he had found meat, and said vnto Sergil, Friend, neuer in all my life had I so good an appetite to eat as I haue now, but I doubt we shall find no victuals in the ship, I pray thee Sergil let vs go see, for as I perceiue, if we trust vnto these dumbe men, we are like to fare but hardly: but the dumbe men perceiued well what he meant: wherefore going out of the chappell they entred into a chamber that ioined to the hall, from whence they presently returned, bringing with them such quantity of meate that Esplandian and Sergil were neuer better satisfied in all their liues: hauing dined & the tables vncouered, they went vnto the place where Esplandian had slept, from whence hee shewed Sergil the rocke whereof hee had told him before, saying: Assure thy selfe Sergil, seeing the serpent stirreth not from hence, it is a signe that I must goe vpon this high rock to see if there be any aduentures, and if I can bring them to an end. I know not (answered Sergil) what you will doe, but if you trust to the counsell of our dumbe men we shall stay long ynough here before we haue any words of them. Let vs land (said Esplandian) and with that hee made signes to the old men, that they should hoise out the boat, whereunto they willingly obeied: which done, the first that entred was Sergil, then Esplandian (armed in the same armour he ware when the great Balan dubbed him knight) and rowing with their oares they made towards the rocke, at the foot whereof they descended out of the boat, leauing the two dumbe men alone in the serpent, and as they were looking for a way to get vp, they found the same path that Amadis and Gransador had taken when they went vp to see the strange aduentures that the Enchaunteresse had left there, and they had not trauelled long, but that Sergil perceiued his maister to want a sword (for of all other armour he was well furnished when hee receiued the order of knighthood onely of a sword) wherefore he said vnto him: Sir, I know not whether you meane to goe, but if we passe forward, and that vpon the top of this rock, if you find any dangerous aduenture, you haue nothing to defend your selfe withall, but if you will beleeue me, you shall rather take an oare out of our boat, for oftentimes the stoutest

man is ouercome not for want of courage or stomacke to resist, but for want of weapons to defend himselfe, and with that hee went backe vnto the boat, and bringing one of the oares with him, gaue it to his maister, in which maner they began to mount vpon the rocke not without great paine, the way being so difficult, the aire hote, and Esplandian heauily armed. Notwithstanding they ceased not to trauaile day and night, till they arriued at the Hermitage, where the image of brasse stood with a scrole of writing at his fèet (as you haue read in the fourth booke) which as then they could not discerne by reason it was darke, wherfore they determined to passe the night vnder the gate, not entering any further, for it was extreame whote. Then Esplandian put off his helmet, and laying downe his shield, eate such meate as his Squire had brought with him: which done, lying downe vpon the grasse he slept till the morning that he and Sergil entered into the chappell, where they beheld the image and the writing, but neither of them could read it because the letters were in Grèek, which they vnderstood not. Then Esplandian determining to goe further, said to Sergil, Friend, it is best for you to stay here till I come againe, for if this be the rocke where my father & Grantador (whether it weare by fortune or willingly) did once arriue, I remember I haue heard them tell, that in Summer the aire is so whote therein that it breedeth many venomous beasts, whereby thou mightest receiue some harme, being no better armed thē thou art, but as for mee thou knowest I am predestined to those aduentures that other men haue failed to accomplish, which putteth me in hope either that I shall not liue long, or I shal accomplish the things that are foreshewed of me, and by that meanes shall conquer the sword and the treasure, that for certaine is said to be in an old pallace within this rocke. What, said Sergil, Doe you think that although I should see a thousand deaths I would refuse to goe with you? No by my faith, for I know that without your company life wil be irksomer to me then a thousand deaths if a man could indure so many. Friend answered Esplandian I beleeue it wel, neuertheless if any inconuenience should happen vnto thée, besides the blame I might receiue thereby, thy deede

would be more esteemed folly, then done of any courage: but not to me that haue both armor and shield to fight against the strongest enemy that may bee found, wherefore I pray thée once againe doe as I would haue thée. Wherewith Sergil perceiuing no remedy, turned his head aside and began to weepe. In ỹ meane time Esplandian laced on his helmet, and hanging his shield about his necke with the oare on his shoulder, kept on the pathes that at the last brought him to the top of the rocke, and being there hee went towards the broken castle, where hee perceiued the other Image with the table that she held in her left hand, the contents whereof he could no more vnderstand then that of the Hermitage, wherefore without longer staying he passed forward towards the chamber where the treasure lay, being continually guarded by a most great and horrible serpent: and as hee went nérer to it, he perceiued ỹ gates to be of hard stone, where there was a sword so farre thrust in, that nothing but the handle could be séene, wherewith he thought it to be the same whereof he had heard, and being moued with great desire to haue it, he determined (although he had but a staffe to defend himselfe) to assaile the beast, whatsoeuer happened thereby. And to the same end with a bold courage he set forwards, but the serpent (that as thē slept) awaked, and loking with a cruell countenance vpon Esplandian, began to hisse, and cast out fire at her mouth as if shee would deuour him. Neuertheless Esplandian couered with his shield went nére vnto her, and with his oare gaue her such a blow betwéene the eares, that with the force hee vsed, it had almost fallen out of his hands. Notwithstanding the beast made towards him so furiously that she ouerthrew him on the ground and troad vpon his belly, whereat hée was not a little abashed, but perceiuing what danger hee was in, sodainly start vp, and by little and little got to the gate wherein the sword stucke, which at the last hee laid hold vpon, and with both hands drew it to him with such force that he puld it out: and with that the gates opened with so fearefull a noise, that presently the serpent fell dead vpon the ground, and Esplandian was so astonished that he knew not what hee did, but it was no meruell for that Sergil that staied in the hermitage,

farre from thence was in the greateſt feare that euer he had, and beſides the ſaylers that as then ſayled along the coaſt, thought verely the rocke would haue fallen into the ſea, ſo great was the noiſe at the opening of the gate. Meane time Eſplandian lay in a ſwoune till midnight following that he opened his eies, when he ſaw a great brightneſſe in the place, perceiuing the ſerpent dead and the inchanted ſword lying by his ſide, which hee toke in his hand, and riſing vp entred into the chamber, in the middle whereof he ſaw a tombe ſhining brighter then fire, and vpon it a great lion of braſſe, holding in his right paw the ſcabberd of the ſword, from whence the great brightneſſe iſſued, and in his left a roll of letters written in Latine, The contents whereof doe follow.

CHAP. II.

How *Eſplandian* hauing read the writing contained in the roll that the Lyon held, tooke the ſhining ſcabberd, and what ſpeech hee and *Sergil* had together.

THe fearefull cries at the time of the great conſtraint, ſhal force thee (O thou Knight that haſt conquered the ſword) to returne againe to conquer the great treaſure whereby thy ioy ſhal be reſtored in ſuch ſort, that the kindled flames, by whoſe beames thou ſhalt farre off be wounded (ſhal bee extinguiſhed, & content thy ſelfe with this glorious conqueſt thou haſt made: for that variable fortune had aduanced thee before all others, and thou haſt obtained the honor whervnto ſo many good knights could neuer attaine, notwithſtanding all their Proweſſe.

Eſplandian hauing read and again peruſed the contents of the writing, for a time ſtood muſing thereon, and in the end perceiued thereby, that although hee had brought the aduenture of the ſword vnto an end, yet he ſhould be conſtrained to attend ỹ time appointed (according to the contents of the writing) neuertheleſſe

leſſe hee knew not the meaning thereof, being as then at libertie and frée from all the paſſions of loue. Notwithſtanding the cruell Tyrant Loue, afterward obtained ſo great a conqueſt againſt him, that hee made him fall in loue with her that hee neuer had ſéene, nor neuer was in her company, as reading further in this hiſtory you ſhall at large perceiue. Then he laied hand vpon the ſcabbard, and put the ſword into it, thanking God deuoutly for the grace he had obtained. After that he went diuers times about the tombe to ſée if he could open it without breaking, but he perceiued the chriſtall, from whence iſſued part of the brightneſſe to be couered with another plate coloured like azure, ſo wonderfully wrought that it would ſcarſe bée iudged whether it were marble, mettall, or any other ſtuffe: whereupon he left off his enterpriſe, and returned into the hall where the dead ſerpent lay, but as then neither ỹ ſword nor the ſcabberd yéelded any ſuch brightneſſe as before they did, becauſe it was day: Then going out hée went downe againe towards the Hermitage where hee had left his Squier, who being melancholy and amazed at the long abſence of his maiſter, (fearing ſome danger happened vnto him) was gone out of the Hermitage to ſéeke him, and he had not trauelled farre, but hee perceiued him comming with the ſword by his ſide, whereat he made ſuch ioy, that being yet farre from him, he cried out and ſaid, O my lord, bleſſed bee God that hath giuen you ſo good a beginning wherat euery man ſhal wonder. Friend (ſaid Eſplandian) he hath yet done more for mee then thou woldeſt thinke, and with that hee began from point to point to ſhew him the danger wherein he was, and being in that diſcourſe, it waxed darke euen then when they arriued at the Hermitage: wherefore they determined not to trauel any further that night, but laied them downe vnder the next trées they came vnto, ſtill ſpeaking of the ſtrangeneſſe of the place: whereat Sergil being more abaſhed then before, could not refraine to ſay: As God help me Maiſter, by good reaſon you may bée eſtéemed a better knight then Amadis your father, that came into this place, and ſaw the Image at the Hermitage, the writing that ſtandeth vpon the arch of ſtone, the ſerpent, the ſword that ſtuck in the gate where

you

you found it, and the shining tombe, yet durst he neuer proue any of these aduentures, and hée saied true, for Amadis knew well by the contents of the letters written in Gréeke, that those aduentures were ordained for his sonne Esplandian, and therefore vndertoke them not, but all others, onely Gransador and Vrganda knew it not til thē, but although Sergil thought to please his master vsing such words in his commendation, yet Esplandian toke it not so well, saying: I pray thée Sergil neuer vse such spéeches, for if the Prowesse and knightly aduentures of my Father had ben as well employed to the aduancing of the Christian faith as they were to win and obtaine honour in this world, I thinke his like would not be found, but hauing passed his youth in things so vaine and transitory, doubtlesse his glory is the lesse, not that I presume in any thing to accuse him, and God forbid I should, yet is hee knowne in so many places to bee so valiant a knight, that whosoeuer he be can second him may well estéeme himselfe happy among the happiest, wherefore I pray thée let vs talk of other matters. Thus sometimes talking and other whiles slééping, day began to appeare, when they rose vp, taking their way towards the sea side, descending downe the rocke, till they came where the two dumbe men staied for them, one within the ship, the other in a little barke, wherein Esplandian entred, according to the sign the dumb man had made, and Sergil went into the serpent, and with that they departed, and the barke sayled so swiftly, that in short space they left the sight one of the other. But we will leaue Sergil with his dumbe man, making extream sorrow to sée himselfe bereaued of his maisters presence, and will shew you of Esplandian that from this time forwards shal be called the blacke knight, by reason of the armes hee bare, who being in the little barke with his conducter, sayled so long that they took landing néere the Port where king Lisuart lay prisoner.

CHAP.

CHAP. III.

How the barke wherein the black Knight and the dumbe man sailed, arriued in the borders of Turkie hard by the place called *La montaigne defendu*, and of the discourse that an hermite and the Knight had together.

TEnne daies and as many nights together ỳ black knight and the dumbe man sayled on the sea, not knowing in what parts they were, for if he had enquired of his guide, it had ben but labor lost: ỳ eleuenth day they discouered a great & pleasant Iland, where the knight being wearied with the impetuosity of the waues, desired his guide to put his barke on shoare, but he regarding not his words, thrust it nére vnto a high rocke, by nature cut in such manner, that it séemed a wall purposely made for the defence thereof: and the countrey was full of woods and bushes, that it might be esteemed vnhabitable. Then the dumbe man shewed him a path that led him vp to the rocke, and made him a signe to goe thether, where with he issued out of the barke, armed at all paints, and began to mount vp, the weather was then extreame hote, whereby the knight was so chafed in his harneis, ỳ he was constrained to put off his helmet & carry it in his hand, till he perceiued a little Hermitage among the bushes, & before it stood a high crosse, which pleased him well, not only for the hope he had to find some one of whom hee might enquire in what countrey hee was, but because hee was assured that there dwelt a Christian, and with that hée perceiued a man apparelled like an Hermite, so old and withered that his long white beard hung downe to his girdle, carrying in his hand a pitcher of water, that he had drawne out of a fountaine not farre from thence, and was passing by when the knight spake vnto him, saying: Father, God saue you, which when the good man heard, he was in so great a maze, that for feare his pitcher fell out of his hand and brake in péeces. Neuertheless by little and little

he came to himselfe againe, and perceiuing him that spake vnto him, answered and said, My sonne, it is now twenty years past sithence I left the pleasures of this world, and forsake my natiue soile to obtaine the grace of God, and that which most abasheth mée is, that since the time whereof I speake I neuer found man that as yet saluted mee in this manner, and I thinke verely you are a stranger in these countries, or els your speech and apparell disguiseth you much. Father (said the knight) true it is I am a stranger, brought hether by such meanes, that I neither know the country where I am, nor any man or womã inhabiting therin, for you are the first creature that I met since I arriued here, of whom I might enquire, assuring you that when I perceiued this crosse it reioiced my heart, for it is the armes of the maister that I serue. What saied the Hermit, doe you then know the vertue thereof? I, answered the knight, that I doe, being well assured that vpon the like crosse our Redeemer (whereof I speak) suffered death and passion. Alas saied the holy man, you say true, praised be his holy name, that once before I die he hath giuen me the grace to let me see a man on this side tha sea that beleeueth in him, assuring you sir knight that you and I are onely the liuing creatures in this country that are Christians, for all the rest are Pagans and idolaters. And as he would haue proceeded further, his speech failed him, doubting that hee to whom hee spake, was but a fantasie or shadow of a man, but at the last he start holder, and in maner of coniuration asked him if he were a mortall man or not? Mortall (answered the knight) that I am for certain, and withall a sinner, which displeaseth mee much, and if it abasheth you at this present to see mee here, I am my selfe no lesse abashed to see you: for without doubt the manner of my arriuall in this countrey hath been such and so strange, that I cannot render you no reason thereof, but if you know the countrey where in wee are, I beseech you good Father tell it me to put me out of doubt. Gladly (said the Hermite) and with that he toke him by the hand, & led him to his Hermitage, and there sitting downe together vpon a log of wood, the old man began to speake in this maner, and said,

Now

Now sir knight, tell mee I pray you what countryman you are, Father (said he) Great Brittaine is the countrey where in my youth I was borne and bred, I know not if euer you were acquainted therewith: How long is it said the Hermite since you came from thence? It is fiftéene daies & more since I was there said the knight, did you neuer know king Lisuart (saied the Hermite) that in my time raigned therin? Yes truly (said the knight) for I haue séene him many times: how did hee when you came from thence said the Hermite? That can I not certainely shew said the knight, for hée was lost and led away from thence, but by whom or in what manner no man can tell, notwithstanding the great paine and diligence diuers of his knights haue vsed to find him out. When the Hermite heard that, he séemed very pensiue, which the knight perceiuing, thought in his mind that hee could tell him some newes, whereupon he began to behold him well in the face to sée if hée changed colour, with that the Hermite (that well perceiued the Knights meaning) said vnto him. Truly Sir Knight, not without cause haue I enquired so much touching King Lisuart, but before I will shew you my reason why, you shal vnderstand that I am of great Brittaine as well as you, where as yet the greatest part of my kinsfolk are liuing, whome I forsoke at the same time that a Gyant lord of this country married with a lady who as then I serued, and with her passed the sea, not only hoping to reape some reward for my former seruice, but (as yong men are moued) with a great desire to séé strange countries, but it fortuned, that my mistresse being forsaken of God, as soone as shee arriued in this countrey, left his holy law to receiue the law of her husband, wherefore considering with my self, that by reason as wel of my natural weakenesse, as by often frequenting the company of these countrymen I might fal into some error, I determined to withdraw my selfe into this place, wherein I haue endured much paine and misery, to the great daunger of my life, by reason of the controuersie betwéene the law of Iesus Christ, which I hold, and the law of the Pagans that séeke daily to destroy it, that without the fauour of my mistresse that would not suffer them to displease me, I had not liued so long as I haue

done among them, but when it pleaseth God I wil depart hence, and returne again into mine owne country, now you haue heard how I haue hetherto liued, I pray you sir knight (said hee) shew mee your aduentures, and who hath brought you into this place from whence very hardly you will euer be able to returne again, but rather are in danger of most cruell death, or to indure the most horrible imprisonmēt that euer was heard of, which would greeue me much, not only for the great beauty and young yeares that I perceiue to be in you, but for that you are my native countryman. Father answered the knight, you haue done mee great pleasure to shew me the manner of your life and bringing vp, neuertheleſſe before I satisfie your request, tell mee (if it pleaseth you) wherfore when you spake of king Lisuart you seemed so sad, which made mee coniecture that you know some thing touching him. Sonne (said the Hermit) you shall vnderstand that a doughter of mine, seruant to the lady whereof I spake, not long since came hether to see me, and told mee that her mistresse returning from great Brittaine, whether shee went to deliuer a brother of hers out of prison, brought with her very secretly a knight of great estimation as shee said, neuertheleſſe I cannot assure you who it is: but as I haue learned since, they say the two Giants sonnes were much pleased therewith, which maketh mee doubt, considering the newes you haue shewed mee touching king Luisart, that he is most likely to be the man, for shee is so well seene in the art of Nigromancy and Magicke, that oftentimes shee procureth mischief vnto those that neuer offended her. And in what countrey are wee now (said the knight?) You are betweene the marches of Turky and Greece said the Hermite, for this mountaine parteth both the countries, but it is so strong, not onely by nature, but by art, that neither of the two Princes of those countries, what force soeuer they brought hether, could neuer win it. And now a Giant (sonne vnto my lady and mistresse) and one of the most strongest and puissant knights in ỹ East parts, (as many of his neighbours, whose goods hee hath by force vsurped, and that in despight of the Emperour, or any other contradicting the same haue proued) is lord thereof. Where dwelleth hee (said the knight)

in Gray

knight:) Aboue vpon ỹ rock (said the Hermite) in a castle which he hath most strongly fortefied, and is kept with all diligence and care by a Giant one of his brethren, with others, of as good condition as themselues, and which is more, it is not possible to come néer ỹ castle, but by a little path way whereon the sea continually beateth, at the end whereof there is a pair of staires cut out of the rocke, whereby you mount vp till you come to an yron gate, where a villaine, in whom the lord of the castle putteth his trust, watcheth continually, for there is no other entery, but onely the great gate that is defended with strong platformes and great Towers, in the middle whereof there is a dore so straight, that a man on horsebacke can hardly enter therein, and that way most commonly those of the castle doe vse to issue forth. Before it bee night said the knight, I meane to see what manner of place it is, & if I can I will know who it is, that was so lately brought thether. God keepe you from thence (saied the Hermite) for thereby you will either procure your owne death, or at the least perpetuall imprisonment. Happen what may (said ỹ knight) I wil proue what fortune it shall please God to send mee. That were but ill done of you (said the Hermite), for that men are bound to imploy their forces only in things that stand with reason and possibilitie thereby to reap a benefit by their labors, otherwise they are to be estæmed desperat fools, & not valiant & hardy knights aduẽturing (without due respect) not only their bodies, but their souls which are of greater price, and Christ himselfe hath by example plainely shewed it vnto vs, for when the Deuil came and tempted him, bidding him doe certain things, which in deed (as he was Christ) were possible, but as he was man were impossible to doe, hee answered him that hee should not tempt the Lord his God. So my good sonne (said hee) I would aduise you to desist from so vnreasonable an enterprise. You may preach what you will to perswade me to the contrary (said the knight) but I must do that whereunto I am called, which is to proue my selfe in those aduentures that in mans iudgement séeme impossible: otherwise those that haue foreshewed of me, should not onely haue trauelled in vaine, but bee estæmed liers and fooles. If then their sayings bee true,

what greater honour can I obtain then by inging most wonderful aduentures to an end, I may from henceforth therby restrain the rage and furie of such men as hurt, and do iniury vnto others, contrary to the lawes of God and man: And if they be found liers I had rather they shold be reproued for their want of knowledge then I accused of any point of cowardise. And if the worst fal out I will imploy my forces against such accursed people, (members and ministers of the deuill) whom by the help of God I shal ouercome: and I beléeue and am certainely persuaded (that if I die in those aduentures) hee will receiue my soule into his heauenly ioy. The Hermite meruailed much to heare the blacke knight speake so wisely, and with so great a courage, neuertheless the great beautie and yong yeares hée perceiued him to haue, moued him to so great compassion, that the teares ranne downe his eies, and therewith he saied, Ha good knight, hee in whome thou trustest, preserue thée and send thée long liues, and seeing thou art resolutely determined to passe forward, I pray thée deferre the time for this night, for it is already so late, that although thou shouldest haue time inough to get vnto the gate before the sunne goeth downe yet shalt thou find it shut as it is accustomed to be, whereupon the knight kept the Hermite company till the next day in the morning.

CHAP. IIII.

How the blacke knight went vp the rocke, where by force of armes he slue three Giants, and deliuered king *Luisart* out of prison.

AT the Hermites request the knight stayed and kept him company all night, who entertained him in the best manner hee could, where after they had supped, they laied them downe vpon a little straw till day began to appear, when they rose vp, and the knight hauing said his praiers in the chappell, being armed at all points, toke

toke his leaue of the Hermite, that brought him the greatest part of his way, and had gone further but he feared both Giants. Wherefore commytting him to God, hee tooke his leaue and returned. Being gone, the knight trauailed so farre, that hauing coasted along the sea shore, and passed the side of a great and thick forest, he descended into the goodliest meadow that euer his eies sawe, from whence hee perceiued the castle, scituated vpon the top of a high rocke, and making towards it, hee came to a long bridge, finding no other way vnto it, with a wide ditche vnder it, and a broad cause paued with stone, at the foote whereof (hauing boldly aduanced against the towers out of the windowes hee espied two knights, one as hee thought was a Giant, the ladies seruant, notwithstanding hee stayed not, but tooke his way on the left hand of the causey vp the steppes, came to a marble gate, where two [illegible] armed, that before he came at him cried as loud as they could, saying, Thou accursed wretch, the colour of thy armour sheweth vnto much sorrow and griefe as ere thou shalt see the conclusion. What deuill was he that sent thee hether hauing so little regard vnto the knight by little and little got vp the hill, making as if hee heard him not, for hee had woorke inough to looke to himselfe, the way was strait and vneasie to passe, and therefore hee bare his helmet vnder his arme. But when hee approched the gate and heard the other entitle him by his vnkindnesse, he answered him and said, Why that is a straunge matter why thou mayst thinke a knight a fooles part, but if thou desirest to know the cause why I come, I open vnto the gate, and thou shalt see it I can satisfie thy desire. With ye the Porter came downe, (and while the knight put on his helmet) hee opened the gate, and looking out cried with a loud voice, come in thou vnhappy creature to the place where no straunger had good entertainement. Then the knight went in, and entred into a vault, meane time the gate was shut whereby the place seemed very darke, for there entred no light but only by a little hole that came through the rocke; and as he passed forward the Porter that was behind, stayed him, saied vnto him, Villaine, leaue thy armour here, and I will bring thee where the Lords of the castle shall reward thee according to thy desertes. It were better

(saied

(saied the knight) without so much trouble to bring me thether, in as I am, and I will follow thee. But I will not (saied he) least I lose too much by thée, for then my companion will haue thy armour, which by right is mine, and with that he lifted vp his hatchet, thinking to cleaue his head, whereat the blacke knight stept backe, and with his sword gaue him such a blow, that hee ouerthrew him on the ground, and stepping vpon him, thrust him into the body, and as he had done, there entered at the gate (that went out of the vault) a villaine all armed, who thinking to speak to the Porter, with a rude and churlish voice, said Argantes why stayest thou so long to bring vp that accursed wretch that euen now entred at the gate? Be content a while (saied the blacke knight) I will bee there soone and [illegible] if the gates be open. The villaine perceiued himself to be deceiued, for he espied Argantes dead vpon the ground, wherefore without longer staying he [illegible] and pulling the doore after him, left the knight shut in the vault, whereat he was abashed, fearing to be famished for want of meat, but otherwise, seeing the gate open, wherein he entred a Giant armed all in greene, who perceiuing the pastie dead, and the knight that had slaien him standing by him, was in such a rage, that he saied vnto him. Thou accursed wretch, I am much abashed how thou hast thus inuangled thy selfe within this place, from whence while thou liuest thou shalt neuer bee able to escape, but when thou hast indured long and most hard imprisonment, shalt bee constrained to end thy miserable daies with a thousand cruell torments that are prepared for thée. Art thou at that point (saied the knight) I hope rather before I bee depart to make thée beare this villaine company, that at my entring spared not to threaten me as thou dost now. What (saied the Giant:) I assure thée I loued this dead knight as well as I loue my selfe, and now I find him in this manner slaine before mine eies, yet art thou not afraid to boast thereof: By my head (saide hee) thou shalt déerely buy it. Behold I pray thée answered the knight, how thy vnhappy fortune followeth thée at once, here before thy face thou séest thy friend dead, and by the same meanes thou shalt likewise

waise lose the soule out of thy body, which the deuill hath waited for since thou first beganst to lead an euill life, That shall soone bee séene (said the Giant) and with that they encountered, and at their méeting laid vpon each other so fiercely, that with the noise they made, it séemed tenne knights fighting together: and so long they continued the combate, that in the end the Giant waxed faint, which hee perceiuing, hauing lost the greatest part of his shield, and in a maner all his blood, hée began to flie, and the black knight after him so fast, that before hee could get out of the vaut with one blow that claue his head to the teeth hée slew him in the place. And as the knight stepped forth, hee met two Squires that came to sée the combat, who perceiuing ỹ knight with his sword bloody in his hand, asked him what was become of their guard. I haue dealt with them (said hee) as it hath pleased God to dispose: And how is that (saied they) to send them both (saied the knight) an vnhappy end of their wretched liues, that their soules might bee tormented in the euerlasting paines of hell. With that they looked in and perceiued Argantes on the one side, and the Giant on the other as yet shaking their legs with the panges of death; whereat they had so great feare, that in great hast they presently retired, crying with a lowd voice, Come forth my lords, come forth, for your vncle and the Porter are both slaine, wherewith at the gate of the dungeon there appeared another Giant vnarmed, very young and of a huge stature, named Ereion, who perceiuing the blacke knight marching so boldly towards him, held the doze half shut, and with a loud voice spake vnto him and said, By my fathers soule thou must surely be some deuill disguised in humane shape, other wise it had beene vnpossible for thée to haue slaien two of the best knights in the world, and in despight of the to enter thus farre within the castle, but of one thing am I well assured, that what paine or torment soeuer I shall cause thée to indure, I cannot bee reuenged of the least wrong and iniury I haue receiued at thy handes. Thou brutish & vnreasonable beast (said the knight) thou art surely worse then he of whom thou speakest, for that he being already iudged of God, hath neither meanes to repent his wickednes nor hope of saluation, but thou to whom

it hath pleased God to giue sence and reason to knowe both good and euill, doest still persuere in thy wickednesse, making of vice a vertue, in such manner that by good right I may better tearme thee a deuill then those that are wearied and ware melancholy to haue so long attended for thy accursed soule, which I will shortly send them if thou come forth into this court, or let mee enter in. Then stay (said Frerion) and thou shalt see how I will teach thee to preach in other sort, and with that hee shut the doore and went in to arme him, meane time the blacke knight sate downe vpon a marble stone, and he had not rested long, but the Gyant came againe, who bringing a great cimitere vpon his shoulder, would haue issued at the gate, when the knight spake vnto him, saying. Stay a little I pray thee before thou commest forth, and graunt me one request which in right thou canst not well deny mee, for although neither courtesie nor any part thereof did euer lodge within thy breast, that habite of knighthood wherewith thou art inuested, ought more to moque thee to humanity then thy nature of it selfe affordeth. Aske what thou wilt (saied the Giant) and it may be thou shalt be refused, both thou and I (said the knight) are now on foote, I pray thee then let vs fight in the other court, that those of thy castle may behold the pastime: which hee saied to the end that if he ouercame his enemie as he doubted not thereof, they should not shut him out. By my head (said the Giant) at the first, I thought thou wouldest haue asked mercy at my handes, which would not much auaile thee: but seeing thy request is no other, I am content to graunt it, although amendes to liue away were much more aduantage vnto thee, which these high walls will not permit thee, if thou be once inclosed within them. Thou speakest (said the blacke knight) as thy nature yeeldeth, and I as vertue bindeth me, for the rest let God worke his will. Come in then (said Frerion) and defend thy selfe from mee if thou canst. With that the black knight entred into a faire court paued with white marble, all galleried about and supported with pillers of Porphire, in the middest whereof stoode the portall that entered into the house, where an olplady accompanied of diuers young gentlewomen stoode looking forth, to whom the Giant went, and ma-

ling

ling on his knee, said vnto her: Madame, I most humbly beseech you, that neither for good nor euill which may happen vnto me in fighting with this knight, not one of your house be so bold to help or succour me in any sort, for I my selfe will put him to death with this my trenchant blade, and rising vp againe holding his shield before him with his cimiterre in his hand, he marched towards his enemy, who hauing God on his side (to whom he recommended himselfe) stood ready to receiue him. Then there began such a combate betweén them that their blowes seemed two smiths forging vpon their anuiles, séeming like fire that the wind kindleth in the aire, and surely the blacke knight had sped but hardly at that time had it not béene for the armour Vrgands gaue him, that could not bee cut by any weapon, after [illegible] for you bee conquered in the rocke of the Enchantresse, [illegible] bee stroke not one blow, but he drew blow on the Giant [illegible] enor, who neuertheless did marueilously both defend himselfe and assaile his enemy, but by euill fortune as he thought to strike the knight on the right arme, he shifted backe, and stepping forwards againe gaue the Giant such a blow vpon the helmet that hee cut away a great péece thereof together with the buckle that made it fast, but although the blow was marueilous great, and in a manner incredible, yet was not the Giant any thing therewith abashed, but still shewed himselfe as fresh as if he had not fought all the day long: Neuertheless the blood in such abundance issued out of his body, that the white pauement of the court was chaunged into red, and therewith he grew so weake, that it might easily be iudged he had the worst, whereby he still began to reuile, séeking only to defend himselfe from his enemies blowes, whereat the old lady that beheld them, considering her sonnes extremity, cried out and said, Alas my child, is it possible I should see thée murthered before my face, and therewith in great haste shee ran thether, thinking to part them, but it was too late, for as she began to goe towards them, the Giant fell dead on the ground with two blows that the black knight gaue him, one vpon the head where he was vnarmed, the other right in the middle of his leg, wherewith hee cut it from his body, whereat the old lady was so grieued that she

swounned in the place, being by her Gentle women carried from thence into hir chamber, where they laied her on a bed, cursing him that was the cause thereof, neuertheless hee followed them to the chamber doze, where the old woman (being reuiued) perceiuing him to enter, began againe to lament and mourne, and shedding great abundance of teares she said vnto him. Alas thou cruel knight the only bereauer of all my ioy and felicitie, art thou not satisfied yet: But wilt thou likewise haue my life and my sonnes both: Then I pray thee with speed either execute thy will or else depart from hence, and take what thou thinkest good, permitting mee to liue the rest of my miserable dates in sorrow and care, with these poor women: but all her intent was to make him enter into the chamber, which was so inchaunted, that no man could passe the threshold of the doze, but presently hee lost all his sences and fell downe vpon the ground, as if hee were dead, but little did the inchauntment raise her against the blacke knight, because the shining sword had such a property in it, that no enchantment whatsoeuer could hurt the bearer thereof. Therefore the knight hearing the sorrow the old lady made, hee went into the chamber, speaking courteously vnto her & saith, Madame me thinkes you should take the offence I haue committed on your behalfe in much better part, considering such hazards are common vnto knights, desiring to win honour, and therefore I pray you appease your sorrow, and shew mee the knight you brought hether out of great Britaine. When the old lady perceiued him so farre within the chamber without let, and that he desired to see the king, she being as it were out of her wits, cried as lowd as she could, and saied, alas vnhappy wretch that I am, what haue I done, for thinking to reuenge another mans death, I haue procured the destruction of mine owne children, and therewith shee sighed in such manner as if her heart would burst within her body, and lamenting ỹ absence of her other son, said: Alas Matroco, where art thou now: What vnhappy fortune hath thus seperated thee from thy brother and mee: Surely when thou heerest of his death, and at thy returne shalt find another lord of this castle, I am in doubt thou wilt not haue the patience to put vp so great

an iniury, but thinking to reuenge thy selfe I feare this deuill will handle thée in the like sort he hath done the rest, for sure he is no mortall man, for if hee were hee had found more resistance in this place then he hath done. Then speaking vnto the knight she asked him if he knew the man she held in prison, I truly (saied he) it is king Lisuart, whereof I am right sorry, being well assured that kings elected of God, (as hee is) for the gouernement of his people ought not to be vsed in that manner. Wherefore I would haue you shew me where he is, other wise, I will doe worse then I haue hetherto done. I know not (said she) who thou art, nor by what meanes thou hast so great power, but I am well assured and I would neuer haue thought that twenty such knights (as once this day I did estéeme thee) could euer haue attained to the achieuing of so great an enterprice, and much lesse to haue withstood my art as thou hast done, so that considering thereof, I suppose that this thy power procédeth from him in whō in my yong yeares I did once beléeue, and sinte that haue forsaken him, to follow the workes of the common enemie of all mankinde, who according to his naturall instinction, hath iustly rewarded me to my desert: therefore it were but folly to denie thée any thing, that art so surely defended by him to whome all thinges are obedient. Follow me then (saied she) and I will shew thée the king, but as I thinke, it is not he thou séekest. And with that shee rose vp & went into a darke chamber, the knight following her: then she opened an yron gate and said vnto him, goe in, and there shalt thou finde the prisoner. Ladie (saied the knight) if it were to fight I would not faile to doe your commandement, but if by subtiltie I should be shut in prison, you would laugh at me that I had no more wit but to put my trust in you, wherefore goe you in first, that whatsoeuer happeneth, you may haue your part, I sée well (saied the lady) that my labour is in vaine, and all my art is nothing in respect of thée, therefore I am content to doe thy will, but we haue no light to sée. Care you not for that (saied he) for I will prouide you light, and with that hee pulled of the taffata that couered the scabberd of his sword, whereby there was so great a brightnesse in the place, as if the sunne had shone therein. Then they descen-

ded into a caue, where the knight perceiued king Luiſart lie vpon a couch of ſtraw, with a great coller of yron about his necke, and fetters on his legs, whereby he indured no little paine, whereat hee was ſo grieued, that for ſorrow the teares ranne downe his eies, yet would hee not diſcloſe himſelfe vnto him, neither once vtter what hee thought, but without making himſelfe knowne, ſaid vnto him. Noble king, you haue beene ouerlong within this filthy place, riſe vp I pray you and follow mee. When the king heard him ſpeake in that manner, hée made no other account but to end his daies at that time, wherewith he could not refraine to weepe, and ſpeaking vnto the old lady, aſked her if ſhe knew him: For (ſaied hee) ſince I entered into this place, I neuer ſaw any knight nor any one that ſpake vnto me, but that little ſuſtenance I had was let downe at a hole from the top of this dungeon. Thē ſhe anſwerd him, and in great deſpight ſaid, Thou accurſed king, if I had not knowne thée, I would neuer haue taken paines to fetch thée ſo farre from hence as I haue done, curſed bee the time when firſt I toke it vpon mee, for thou onely art the cauſe of my great ſorrow, and the ſole inſtrument of my bereaued ioies. In faith lady (ſaied the king) I know not what you meane, and am very ſorry for your heauineſſe, for I neuer ſought but to doe honour and pleaſure vnto all ladies and Gentlewomen that deſired the ſame, and for them haue I oftentimes enterpriſed many dangerous aduentures, to the great perrill and hazard of my life, and if it hath happened otherwiſe vnto you it is altogether vnknown to mee and wholly againſt my will, wherefore I beſeech you bee not offended with me but tell me where I am, and in whoſe power I now remaine a priſoner in ſo great miſery, or by my ſoule I know it not, neither can I ſo much as conceiue which way I came into this place, only I remember that to ſecond a Gentlewoman y a villaine would haue forced, I entered into a tent, but what happened vnto mée after that I know not, but that now I find my ſelfe lying on ſtraw like a théefe with yrons on my legs. King (ſaid ſhe) the ſhort time of thy continuance in this darknes hath not ſatisfied (as I well hoped it would) the great miſchief I doe wiſh thée, and that for good cauſe, ſéeing that by thée onely I

haue

haue indured so much sorrow, that if the heart and bowels were taken out of my body they would bee found as burning whote as flaming fire, and especially for the new displeasure I haue nowe conceiued to sée thée so sone deliuered out of my hands, being in good hope by thy long imprisonment to satisfie my losses past: but yet I am deceiued, for that fortune hath now made mee pay the vsury of my forepassed ioies, hauing giuen thée into my handes, from whence by the exquisite force of this diuell incarnate (thou art nowdeliuered) who hauing put to death the Gardians of this castle and slaine mine owne sonne, hath constrained mee to bring him vnto thée, which I neuer thought hée could haue done, much lesse that euer I should haue yéelded vnto his request, knowing the wrath of a woman not to haue any bridle, or meanes of mittigation vntill her desired reuenge, hath wrought the effect: and so had it happened vnto thée without ý force of this my enemy, but in despight both of him and thée with mine owne handes I will slay my selfe, if my accursed fortune bereaue mee not the sooner of my wretched daies, Cursed bée both thou and thy King, thou now hast found (saied shee vnto the knight,) Now take him and doe thy pleasure with him. I pray you then lady (said hee) vnloose his irons, and helpe mee to lead him vp, with that shee tooke the keies out of her pocket, and opened the lockes of his chaines, whereby the King rose vp vpon his feet, and embracing ý blacke Knight, saied vnto him, What great good or pleasure sir Knight did I euer doe you, whereby you should purchase this liberty vnto me? By my faith I sweare, that besides the honour you haue obtained in this place, you haue so much bound me vnto you, that during my life I shall neuer forget your courtesie, wherefore if you loue me let me know your name. Noble King (said ý knight) whosoeuer I am, I account my selfe happy if in any sort I may be able to doe you seruice, as for the rest pardon mee if it pleaseth you, and let vs goe out of this caue, thanking God, that oftentimes sendeth scourges vnto those hee loueth, as in his heauenly wisedome he thinketh conuenient, thereby to keepe them in obedience vnto him. The King perceiuing well by ý knights words that he desired not to be known, and for the same cause kept his

hel-

helmet on his head, therefore hee determined not to moue him any more, but with that they went all three out of the caue, and came into a goodly hall, when the sunne began to goe downe.

CHAP. V.

How that after King *Luisart* was deliuered out of prison, *Matroco* (*Frerions* elder brother) with his ships, arriued at the foot of the rocke called *La Roche defond*, and of the battell betweene the said *Matroco* and the blacke knight.

KIng Luisart, the black knight, and the lady [illegible] entred into the hall, as they looked out at the windowes into the sea, there [illegible] a Gentlewoman, and doing reuerence vnto the lady, shee saied, Madame, your sonne Matroco with his ships is euen now arriued at the foote of the rock, & with him great numbers of other vessels, & he hath taken vpon the seas, What is your pleasure to say vnto him? When the ladie heard her shee waxed pale, and with teares in her eies, answered her and said, I would to God he were as farre from hence as hee is neere: for my heart giueth mee he will spied in the like manner that others haue done before him. And as shee spake, king Luisart and the knight looked into the sea, and perceiuing the Giants fleet forging on the shoare out of wind and weather, among the which they knew Elizabeth Libee his nephue, and diuers others ỹ were bound in chaines, making great sorrow; but none of Matrocos men durst set foot on land, hauing already ben aduertised by some of the castle, of the great misfortune happened therein, and for the same cause staied so long without, till the Giant espied at the windowes the knight and ỹ king looking vpon them, wherewith in a great rage hee cried vnto the blacke knight whom he perceiued all armed, and saied vnto him: Thou accursed slaue is it thou that so cowardly hath slaine my vncle, my brother, and the poster-

of my castle: When the knight heard him, he answerd him and said, I haue done my endeuour to make thée know, that it belongeth not to such as thou art either to inprison kings, or to molest and grieue so many men as continually thou doest. By all my gods (said Marroco) fortune fauoureth thée too much, when at my arriuall I finde thée armed with the wals of this my castle, for if I had thée here vpon the shore, I would soone send thée fishing into the sea as I haue done many other rash and bold fooles like thy selfe, that hast enterprised without cause to inforce my castle, but if I continue here tenne yeares together, I will neuer depart hence till I haue thée in my hands, then shalt thou know how I vse to handle such as thou art. Stay a while (said ỹ black knight) there is much more difference betweene saying and doing, then there is distance of place betweene thée and me. Thy threatnings make me more assured, where as now I feare thée lesser then I did before, and that thou maiest well know it to bee so, take thy choice whether I shall come downe to fight with thée, or thou come vp to me. Then shalt thou plainely see to whome God will giue the victory, either to thée ỹ trustest in thine owne strength, or to mee, that trust onely in him. The greatest oxen and fattest bulls are oftentimes brought vnto the slaughter as well as lesser beasts. So thou great beast, I aduise thée to remember thy former life before worse happen vnto thée, forsaking thy accursed faith which thou now holdest, & with might maintainest, otherwise bee thou assured the wrath of God will fall vpon thée, as it hath already done vpon thy friends. That shall bee séene (saied Marroco) and if thou hast the courage to stay for mee, I assure thée, thou wilt bee glad to denie the villainous wordes thou now hast vttered. Therefore cause the gate to bee opened, for seeing thou puttest mée to my choice, I will come vp to thée, were it into the dungeon, from whence thou hast deliuered that villaine standing by thée, and therwith leauing his company behind him, being all armed, he began to mount vp the rocke, and went vnto the castle, but when he came to the yron gate, (which he found open, because the watch had left it and were gone) and saw Argaues lying dead, hee was in a manner out of his wits, not so much

much for the prowesse he knew to be in him, as that he had from his youth beene nourished and bred vp in the castle by the Giant his father. Neuertheleſſe hée diſſembled his griefe, hoping to bee reuenged at his pleaſure, and going further, in another place hee found the Giant armed all in gréene, dead and freſhly bléeding, wherewith he was ſomoued, that he ſtaied and ſtood ſtill, and caſting forth a great ſigh, began to crie out and ſaied, alas Arcalaus my good vncle, how néere doth the loſſe of thee goe to my heart, whereſoeuer it had happened, but eſpecially being done within mine owne caſtle, wherein I thought long time to liue and make merry with thée: Alas is fortune ſo cruell vnto thée, that after ſo many trauailes and dangerous aduentures, with infinite perils, that in the flower of thy youth thou haſt ſuſtained, thou muſt in thine old yeares come and receiue ſo cruell a death within my houſe, which I eſtéemed as an aſſured hold and defence, not only for me, but for thée and the reſt of our kindred and frends: O immortall gods, what vengeance can I take vpon the Traitor that hath ſo much offended me, ſéeing that to cauſe him to die each day a hundred times were nothing in reſpect of the miſchiefe he hath done vnto mée: At the leaſt if it were Amadis de Gaule, ſo much eſtéemed of all men or any of his two brethren, or all they three together, my griefe would bee ſomewhat eaſed by reaſon of the ſorrowes I would cauſe them to indure. But what: Now I am conſtrained to fight againſt one alone, who by reaſon conſidring the trauell hee hath taken all this day, ought already to eſtéeme himſelfe ouercome and vanquiſhed: What glory then can I obtaine by winning victory againſt him: Trewly as much as if I fought againſt a ſimple woman, being (as by nature ſhee is) both weake and féeble, ſo hee vnworthy of my preſence will bee much prowder if I doe but make a countenance to fight with him: neuertheleſſe what blot ſoeuer may happen vnto mine honour, of force hee muſt die. In this manner did the Giant lament ouer the body of Arcalaus his dead vncle, not mouing from thence, till at laſt hee perceiued the blacke knight that ſtoode to heare him, wherewith being ſomewhat aſhamed he marched towards him, thinking without hinderance to enter into the dungeon, but hee found

found the blacke knight at the gate that boldly thrust him backe, and saied vnto him, Thou brutish and vnreasonable beast, thinkest thou to enter in by force? Whereat the Giant all abashed, staied without and said, Thou biddest me to come by, haue I thē done thée wrong to come at thy commandement? No (saied the knight) but beholding thy countenance, it séemeth thou wouldest enter by authority, and therewith stepping aside, he saied: Now come in and doe what thou canst. When the old woman (with whom king Luisart talked) perceiued thē ready to fight, in great feare she ran out of the hall, and fel downe at her sonnes fēet, crying out and said, alas Matroco, I pray thée, and by the duty a child oweth vnto the mother I commaund thée not to enter into this combate, for thou knowest well that of all thy brethren, thou art onely left aliue, wherewith my heart is so grēeued, that had it not been for the loue I beare thée, thou haddest found mee now at thy returne in as pittiful estate as thou séest thy brother Frerion: neither is there any woman at this present liuing in the world, that ought (with better reason) to wish for death then I. Alas what fortune is this, that now again I must renue the sorrows, which both time and long patience (as I thought) had buried in oblinion? Alas miserable woman that I am, I only haue forged the weapon that hath giuen the wound, whereby at this present I receiue this dommage, for vpon the day of my husbands decease, thinking to reuenge the griefe that my soule sustained, I haue to the contrary aduanced mine owne shame and vtter ruine, iustly receiuing the reward that belongeth vnto such, as refusing the better part thinke to remedy one mischiefe by procuring a worse vpon themselues. Madame (said the Giant) if at this present you haue receiued great losse by the death of some of your friends, neuertheless you ought not to take it so offensiuely, séeing they haue ended their daies in honourable combate, as behoueth all worthy knights such as they were. And as for me, think you that for feare of death I will refuse to doe that whereunto by knighthood I am bound? No, no: likewise what reason or what excuse should moue me, being as I am both fresh and well disposed, to refuse the combat alone against one simple knight? I deny not ma-

dame, but confesse that affection causeth you to vse these words, and shew the nature of a woman: but you must conceiue & think with your selfe that I answere you as it becommeth me, preferring mine honour before your teares, wherefore I beseech you suffer mee to take the small vengeance I can vpon the villaine that hath so much offended mee. Matroco (saied the knight) thou reckonest before thine host, I would not for all the gold in the world lose such an occasion offered as I now haue, both for mine honour and aduantage. Beléeue mee, that neither thy mothers teares, nor the duty thou owest vnto her (as being her child) can by any meanes prolong the end of thée or me, if without dissimulation thou doest not by oath promise and assure mée to liue in as good sort from this time forwards as in times past thou hast liued wickedly. Wherefore it were better for thée to make mee know by effect the Prowesse thou vauntest thy selfe to haue, and for me to let thée see the curtesie, which it may bee thou shalt find at my hands if I ouercome thée. When ỳ lady perceiued that her prayers could take no place she left them, and the two knights began to runne one vpon the other so brauely and with such fury, that king Luisart beholding them thought he neuer saw so cruel a battell, & ỳ which abashed him more was that hee could not presume how or in what manner the blacke knight had found him in so strange a place, and yet he knew him not; sometime hee thought him to be Amadis, but when he remembred the loue he bare vnto the lady Oriana that hee had newly married, hee was other wise persuaded, and likewise hee remembred very well the combates hee had seene Amadis de Gaule make at Windsore against Dardan le Superbe; and after that with Ardan Canile, wherein hee vsed all his forces, yet were they not comparable to those of the blacke knights: who as then found himselfe as fresh and well disposed to fight as if hee had not fought all the day before. Againe when he thought it to be his nephew Esplandian, for that Vrganda had foreshewed many wonderfull things of him, he was soone dissuaded from that opinion by reason hée left him with the queen his mother, not once seeking to receiue the order of knighthood, and although that since his departure out of Brittaine he might

haue

haue obtained that honour, yet did he esteeme it impossible for Esplandian to doe so valiantly at the first. Further Vrganda had alwaies prophesied of him that the first valiant acts he should atchieue, should be renowned and spoken of by his strange & fearefull nauigation in the great serpent, wherein he should be imbarked, and for the blacke knight he knew he arriued there in a little barke vnfurnished, whereby he esteemed it vnlikely to be his nephew Esplandian. Yet he thought hee neuer had seene so valiant and hardy a knight, for the longer he fought, the more he wearied and laboured Marroco. Nouerthelesse hee continued fighting for the space of two houres together before it could be iudged who should haue the victory, but in the end the Giant feeling himselfe wounded in so many places, (his armour altogether broken, and his shield halfe clouen in two) began to mistrust his owne force. Wherefore stepping backe he staied his hand, and saied: Knight I pray thee let vs breath our selues a while, and hear what I will offer thee, which cannot bee other then to thy honour and aduantage. With that the knight stood still, and Marroco began to speake, saying: I wonder (sir knight) what moued thee to venture in this manner vpon this my Isle, wherein neuer any but thy selfe durst enterprise to come during my fathers life, neither yet sithence that by his death I haue been lord therof, and besides this thy enterprise, wherein thou hast done the thing that all others feared to doe before thee, thou hast also slaine three of my friends, whereof two of them as I thinke were the best knights in their time liuing on the earth, whereby I haue iust cause to hate thee more then any man liuing. But when I call to minde that thou hast done therein like a valiant and hardy knight, I haue some reason to pardon thee, and to esteem thee for one of the valiantest champions that euer I saw in all my life, although I haue both proued and vanquished many others longer practised in armes, & stronger then thy selfe. Wherefore if the onely cause of thy arriuall in this place was to deliuer the king that loketh on vs, I am content thou take and lead him hence in safety, and for the same cause likewise I quite thee of thy combate, vpon condition that without long sojourning here, thou shalt presently depart out of

 this

this castle that belongeth vnto mee. When the blacke knight had heard him, hee answered him and saied, Giant, as farre as I perceiue thou estæmest it a great enterprise ỳ I haue done to come hether and find thee here within thy castle, where by mee those that thou so much lamentest haue bin slaine, but if thou knewest the maister that I serue, to whom as duty bindeth mee I am obedient, thou shouldest presently perceiue and plainely see, this enterprise by thee estæmed much, to bee nothing in comparison of that hee is able to doe and bring to passe, for that from him onely and none other proceedeth all whatsoeuer I haue done, whereby of good right the glory belongeth vnto him: and to the contrary you that are idolaters, serue those that are accustomed to rocke and lul you asleepe in all kinds of vices, cruelties, outrages, thefts, murthers, and infinite other vnrighteousnesse, whereby for a time doe prosper with you, whereby you liue in honour, riches, and all worldly pleasures, and so are rulers in all wickednesse, but surely such manner of life may well bee compared to buildings erected vpon the sands, that cannot continue long, but are most sure to haue an euil end, euen then when they are estæmed to bee at the top of all their worldly [illegible] like as it happened vnto Lucifer and his fellowes, whereof it may be thou hast heard spoken. Neuertheless if thou will acknowledge thy former life, and of a wicked wretch (as thou hast alwaies liued) become a vertuous knight, and as thou hast been [illegible] cruell and inhumane, become courteous and pitifull, forsaking thy vaine and foolish faith to beleeue in my God, who is the most true and mighty Lord of all lords, I will not only pardon thee the combate whereof thou hast the worst, but will leaue thee thy castle free vnto thy selfe, and so will be thy friend, vpon condition neuertheless, that from henceforth both thou and I shall imploy our forces to ouerthrow and destroy all those, that (as thy selfe) do walke in darkenesse, from whence (if ỳ wilt beleeue me) thou shalt come out. This answere of the blacke knight moued the Giant in such manner, that like a wilde Beare hee began to fome at the mouth, and saied vnto the knight. Thou accursed wretch, and of all others the most vile, doest thou so little estæm my force that thou thinkest me already

ouer-

ouercoure and vanquished. And therewith hee pulled away the péeces of his shield that hung about his necke, and threw them on the ground, and taking his sword in both his hands, he strooke at the blacke knight, thinking to cleaue his head, but hee perceiuing the stroke, stepped vnder the blow, and closed with the Giant, whereby the sword passing ouer his head, hit vpon the pauement with so great force that it brake in péeces, and therewith the pummell fell out of his hand, so that the two knights being closed together, could not hurt one the other but with their fists or pummels of their swordes, whereby the blacke knight much gréeued the Gyant, before hee could finde the meanes to recouer the handle of his sword, but in the end he found meanes to vnlose himselfe from the knight, and as he retyred backe, shunning the fury of his enemy, the old woman seeing her sonne in so great danger, went betweene them, and [illegible] most bitterly, saied vnto the knight: alas Gentleman [illegible] you came of woman, or haue compassion of a poore [illegible] estate, I beseech you for the honour of him in whome you beléeue to pitty my miserie, and leauing me this only sonne, content your self with the death of those, that most cruelly you haue [illegible] before my face. Ladie (saied the knight) then cause him to [illegible] mercy, and hee shal find it in mee, otherwise your labour be in vaine. To aske mercy of thée (saied the Giant) I can neuer be dishonoured thereby, knowing it by experience to bee [illegible] that such power & strength as I find in thée, commeth not from thy selfe, but proceedeth and is only caused by the fauour of [illegible] God, for without his helpe thou haddest no more [illegible] to indure against mee, then straw against the flaming fire, therefore it were great folly in mee to fight both against God and man, but I had rather (perceiuing my end to approch) aske him mercy and forgiuenesse, then beléeue any longer in those in whom I haue hetherto put my trust, whereof I am right sorry, so that whether I fight or fight not, or whether I liue or die I protest and make a vow from henceforth neuer to worship other then Iesus Christ thy Lord and maister. Meanest thou as thou saiest (saied the knight) I truly answered Matrosa, and therewith kneeling on the ground, and lifting both his

his eies and hands vnto heauen, he cried out and saied, Jesus the sonne of the virgin Mary, I most certainely beleeue thee to bee the only infallible true and liuing God, and that all others whom during my life I haue worshipped and adored, are of no power, wherfore forsaking their false doctrine to worship thee according to thy holy law, I most humbly beseech thee to be mercifull vnto me: and making the signe of the crosse vpon the ground, hee crossed downe and kissed it. Which the blacke knight beholding, for ioy thanked God with all his heart, and taking his sword by the point presented the handle to Marroco, saying vnto him: Truly valiant knight, among so many triumphant victories by in times past you haue obtained, there neuer happened any one so honourable as this, for by that heroin you haue not onely vanquished mee, but your self also, that for strength of body are inuincible: wherefore as a victorious knight, I present my sword vnto you. It shal not be so (said Marroco) but the contrary: for I being vanquished submitt my selfe vnto your pleasure, and from this time forwards dispose of me, my goods and seruice, as you shall thinke conuenient. I pray you then (said the blacke knight) haue pitty vpon the poore prisoners that either I haue bound within your gallies, and let them be sent for hether: that I might speake with them: Withall my heart (saied the Giant) and therewith calling his mother, saied vnto her, Madam, I pray you send some vnto the ships to fetch the prisoners that the knight desireth to see, and let none of my men set foot on land till I send them further commission, which she presently did. But when maister Elizabeth Lisbee, and the rest of the prisoners heard the message, they made no little sorrow, thinking the best comfort they could haue would be a most miserable and cruell imprisonment, but when they entered the first gate of the castle, where the porter and Arcalaus lay dead, they were somewhat reuiued, and in better hope then at the first, specially when they saw the blacke knight that came to meet them, who without making himselfe knowne to any but to maister Elizabeth, tooke him by the hand, and saied vnto him: My good friend, because I will not that any but you alone shall know who I am, I pray you in the morning come and visite me

in

in an Hermitage that ſtandeth at the foot of this hil, where I wil ſtay for you, in the meane time you ſhall finde king Luiſart in the caſtle, who I leaue behind me, but as you loue your life, be ſecret and tell him not who I am. Maiſter Elizabeth was much abaſhed when hee knew him to bee Eſplandian, and willingly would haue had more conference with him, had it not been for ỹ charge he had giuen him before, as alſo that at the ſame time a Gentlewoman came vnto him and ſaied. Sir knight, if euer you will ſée Matroco aliue, make haſt and come vnto him, for he is euen now fallen vpon the ground, and (as I thinke is dead) hee hath loſt ſo much of his blood. Goe (ſaid he) to maiſter Elizabeth, and help him what you can, for your helpe will doe him more pleaſure at this time then my preſence can comfort him, wherewith hee left maiſter Elizabeth with the Gentlewoman, and went vnto the Hermitage, where the night before he had lodged, but he got not thether before the ſonne went downe, being ſo weary and ſore with fighting all the day that he could not goe further: where he found the Hermite and the dumbe man ſitting together, by whome hee was preſently vnarmed, and meat ſet before him, for all that day hée had not eaten, & hauing ſupped, they laied him in a bed, where the Hermites doughter when ſhee came to ſée her father vſed to lie, and viſiting his body to ſée if he were hurt, they found it much bruſed and blacke in diuers places, but not wounded by reaſon of the goodneſſe of his armour, which no ſword or other weapon could pierce, then they annointed him with certaine ointments that appeaſed the ſoreneſſe of his bruſes, wherewith hee fell on ſléepe till the next morning.

CHAP. VI.

Of the great diſpleaſure king *Luiſart* tooke for the departure of the blacke knight, and what conference he had with *Arcabonne* mother to *Matroco*, touching her vnfortunate life.

THe black knight being departed out of the castle he had newly conquered, & the prisoners entred therein, among the rest king Luisart knew maister Elizabeth, wherfore he rose vp (sitting by Arcabonne, Matrocos mother, who as then leaned on her lap) & went to imbrace him, asking him what fortune had brought him thether at ỹ time to saue the Giants life, being in so great extremity? And it pleaseth your grace (said he) once this day I did not thinke hee would haue had so much néed of my helpe as he now hath: But as I vnderstand by a knight that I met going downe the hill, hee is in great danger of his life: Neuertheless for the honour of him that commanded mee to helpe him, I will doe the best I can. I pray you doe so (saied the king.) Then maister Elizabeth caused Matroco to be softly laied vpon his bed, and being vnarmed searched his wounds, and perceiuing them to bee deadly, would not for that time doe any thing vnto them but stanch their bléeding, leauing the rest till hee had slept, wherein hee was newly fallen. In the meane time king Luisart not forgetting what maister Elizabeth at his comming in had said vnto him, asked him what was become of the blacke knight: and it pleaseth your grace (saied he) as we entred into ỹ castle, I met him going secretly from hence, and not minding to returne againe. By Saint Mary (saied the king) haue I receiued so great aid at his hands, and am I so vnfortunate, that hee should depart from hence without knowing him? Truly I am sorry, I staied here to sée what would become of Matroco, if I had not I would surely haue followed him, and with much importunity haue craued his name. Maister Elizabeth (said he) will you vpon your faith tell mee truly whether you know him or not? If it be so, if you will do doe me any pleasure, hide it no longer fró mée, for I neuer had so great desire to know any knight, not only for the aid he hath done me, but for the valiant enterprise at this present atchieued by him. Your grace shall pardon mé if it pleaseth you, said maister Elizabeth, for it is true that I know him well, but if I tel you any more, I should do him

wrong:

wrong, for hee hath expressely forbidden mee to doe it. I see well (saied the king) you will but increase the desire I haue to know him, and that is worse, by the same means bereaue me of all hope euer to see him againe. With ý they entered into the hall, where they met Arcabonne halfe dead with sorrow, whome the king in courteous manner praied to stay a while, asking her how her son did. He doth (saied shee) as one in whome I haue as little hope of life as of the other that lieth dead in the court, and to say ý truth, it seemeth that fortune hath wholly bent her selfe against me, not ceasing continually to heap sorrow vpon sorrow to make me desperate. Notwithstanding I know ful wel how to bee reuenged, and that is, in despight of her and her cruelties to bereaue my selfe of life whereby shee shall lose her power, which by good reason I cannot well prolong, seeing she hath not spared me one houer of rest since she first began, still playing her part in tormenting mee, but of all other my misfortunes, none hath greeued mee so much as the force of this knight, by whose power (saied she vnto the king) I see thée now deliuered out of my handes, and from the cruell tormẽts I had prepared for thée, if accursed fortune had not withstood them. Madame (saied the king) I pray you declare vnto me the cause of this your great mallice towards mee, & whether at any time I haue done you wrong or iniury whereby I should deserue it: that wil I shew thée, said Arcabonne, not therein to doe thée pleasure, but rather to greeue thee more when thou shalt know and vnderstand that I was borne and bred in the same country, wherein to my great despight thou hast raigned ouerlong, for there I and Arcalaus my brother by father and mother, were both begotten and brought vp in the art of Nigromancy, which oftentimes we haue practised & put in effect, therewith to torment diuers persons that neuer did offend vs. In the which art, as age and knowledge increased, I growing very expert, in the end became acquainted with Carradaque, as then lord of this castle, with whom I grew in so great familiarity, that he married me, and with him euer sithence haue dwelt here in this castle, where not long after I was deliuered of a sonne called Lindoraque, after that of another named Marroco, that now lieth

in this bed, and lastly of the third called Frerion, whome thou hast slaine, and my brother also, that went to helpe Argantes the Porter of this castle. And being thus married vnto such a husband as Cartadaque, was so much feared and redoubted in all places, and hauing three of the most valiant and worthy knights to my sons, that euer liued, I was so eleuated in pride, and so little esteemed of cruell fortune, that I thought it vnpossible for her to worke me any woe. But by tract of time I found it otherwise, for by little and little shee hath wholly chaunged my ioy into most grieuous sorrow, and wilt thou know how? Then I thinke thou doest yet remember the discord that long sithence happened betweene thee and Childadan king of Ireland, and of the battaile wherein thou ouercammest him, where my deceased husband minding to bee present, expressely departed from hence thether, and as accursed fortune would, toke my sonne Lindoraque with him, and hauing trauailed many countries, at the last arriued at the place where my brother staied for them, trauailing all three together with full purpose and intent to doe thee all the iniury they could, and they had scarce entered into a forrest not farre from London, but they met a knight as then surnamed Le Beautenebreux, riding in company of a Gentlewoman, that ware on her head a Tal all set with strange flowers, whome my sonne (as accursed fortune would) liked so wel, that with a great desire to haue hir to present vnto the Lady Madasine his loue, commanded one of his squires to go fetch her to him, which the knight called Le beau tenebreux, whereof I speak, would not permit, but sent the messenger back againe well beaten, wherewith my sonne being moued, thought to haue her by force, but it fell out otherwise for him, for at the first encounter the knight with one blow with his sword, thrust him into the body, whereof hee died, and as much had chanced to his vncle Arcalaus, if his horse had not saued him by running away, hauing first lost foure of his fingers on the right hand. Yet fortune not contenting her selfe with this mischiefe, prepared me a worse, for my husband (who for his valour and prowes was feared and redoubted throughout all Asia and Europe) was cruelly slaine by ỹ same murtherer of Lindoraque, vpon the same day,

the

the battell was fought, if thou canst remember it, whereby euer sithence I remained a widdow with my other sonnes as thē very yong and tender of age, with whom I haue passed the greatest part of my daies most extreamely, wéeping and lamenting with continuall sadnesse, which had ben more gréeuous vnto mee, had it not ben for the hope I conceiued of their valour and prowesse. But to come to the point of my discourse, time & reason hauing in a maner suppressed my forepassed sorrows, news was brought me of the last victory thou diddest obtaine by the Prowesse of the knight named Le beau tenebreux (now as it is said, called Amadis de Gaule) and likewise of my brothers imprisonment, wherwith I was so gréeued, that respecting not my old yeares, I toke vpon me to trauaile into Brittaine, hoping by some meanes to get him out of thy hands. But before I arriued there, I had certain newes of his deliuery, neuertheless considering with my selfe the forepassed iniuries I haue receiued by thy kinsmen, namely by that wicked wretch Amadis de Gaule, I determined before my returne hether to finde the meanes to make him knowe that small good will I beare him. But hauing imploied all my art, and finding it in vaine to worke any further therein against him, by reason of a ring he beareth daily on his finger, giuen him by that wicked enchauntresse Vrganda: I determined to proue my skill (which could not take effect in him) against thée, being aduertised of thy often riding to hunt, with very fewe in thy company, where I made thée sée one of my Gentlewomen and a villains that would deflowre her, whom thou thoughtest to succour, and if thou now remembrest mee, I am the very same thou foundest in the pauillion, following after him that fled before thée, and there thou remainedst inchaunted, from whence wee carried thée into our barke, and without knowledge vnto any but mine owne seruants, thou wast brought hether by sea, with full deliberation to cause thée languish in prison: in the meane time with the helpe of my allies and friends, thy countrey should bée inuaded, but I find my selfe deceiued. For that this place (which neuer was conquered by any power whatsoeuer the kings of Turkie, or the Emperours of Constantinople could euer bring against it, in lesse

then one day is both conquered and taken by one ſimple knight, with the loſſe of my two ſonnes, and others, eſteemed Paragons among the beſt knights in the world, whereby it may clearely be perceiued, that by means of thy captiuity there is much more miſchiefe happened vnto mee then ſorrow to thy perſon. While Arcabonne made this long diſcourſe, the king that ſtill beheld her in the face, remembred well it was ſhe to whom hée ſpake in the pauillion, wherefore hee ſaid vnto her, In good faith madame I now beléeue you better then at the firſt, yet mee thinketh you doe mee wrong to make mee beare the burthen of another mans offence. Thinkeſt thou ſo (ſaid ſhee?) No truly, for thy impriſonment only had wrought great domage vnto diuers men, but to me and mine great profit and aduantage. It might be ſo (anſwered the king) notwithſtanding I will not ceaſe to doe you all the fauour and pleaſure that I can. In the meane time I pray you take your aduerſity with as great conſtancy as you may. By my ſoule (ſaied ſhe) thou ſpeakeſt at thy pleaſure, and therewith in a great fury (ſhee went into Matrocos chamber) leauing the king that had not eaten all that day, wherefore hee called maiſter Elizabeth and the other company, that meane time had prepared his meate, and ſitting downe to ſupper, they diſcourſed of the talke hee and Arcabonne had together, till it was time to goe to reſt, when the king went to bed, leauing Libee to guard the caſtle.

CHAP. VII.

How the Giant *Matroco* died, whereat *Arcabonne* was in ſuch a fury, that hauing failed to kill King *Luiſart*, ſhee threw her ſelfe headlong out of a window into the ſea.

KIng Luiſart was not fully aſléepe, but hee was forced to awake by meanes of a crie of women that hee heard, making great lamentation, wherefore ſtarting vp, and calling maiſter Elizabeth and the reſt of his company, he toke a hatchet which he had laied vnder the bolſter of his bed, and went to ſée what it meant, and as he paſſed through the hall,

hee perceiued Arcabonne comming towards him (couered onely with a mantle) wringing her hands & tearing her haire, making great sorrow. Wherwith the king went to her, asking her what she meant: Alas (said she) that which I most feared, and euer frthence yesterday most assuredly expected is fallen out: and as she vttered those words shee pulled out a naked sword that shee bare vnder her arme, wherewith shee meant to kill the king. But as fortune would, he perceiued ỹ blow comming, and stepped aside, and with the force of the blow the sword hitting vpon the pauement, fell out of the old womans hands, wherewith the king stepped vpon it, and when hee stoped to take vp, Arcabonne perceiuing the chamber dore where maister Elizabeth was, to bee open, shee ranne thether, and threw her selfe out at a windowe into the sea: the king followed her not, but went into the chamber where Matroco lay, and perceiuing him to bee dead, came foorth againe into the hall, where hee met maister Elizabeth, that tolde him newes of Arcabonnes death. In good truth (saied he) there is no extremitie like to that of a woman, behold I pray you with what fury she was possessed, for as I issued out of the chamber, I met her, and thinking with faire speeches and good persuasions to comfort her, shee failed not much to kill mee with this sword that I haue in my hand: and as they beheld it, the king knew it to bee the same he wore when hee was inchaunted, which pleased him so wel, that he saied, Ha good sword, the best and faithfullest companion that euer man had, how many victories haue I had by thy meanes, and what combats and aduentures haue I brought to an end with thy helpe: And by great misfortune hauing lost thée, thou knewest mee, for being in a mad womans hands, that with thée would haue slaine mee, thou hast not onely denied her that fauour, but hast fallen out of her hands to returne again vnto him that neuer (while his arme is able to welde thée) will forsake thée. Now (said he to Libee) if we chance to be assaulted, we haue wherewith to defend vs. Truly (saied maister Elizabeth) I beléeue all those that could hurt vs in this place, are either dead or fled away, wherefore I am of opinion in the morning to bury them that are slaine, meane time expecting some means whereby we

we may returne into your graces country, we will enquire what is become of the blacke knight that you so much desire to knowe. You shal do wel (said the king) & therewith each man went to rest til the morning, ỹ master Elizabeth & others of his company went to bury the Porter and the rest of ỹ dead knights, among ỹ which they knew Arcalaus the inchaunter, that not fiftéen daies before had arriued in the castle, for at his deliuery out of prison, being aduertised of king Luisarts suddaine departure, he suspected his sister Arcabonne had stollen him away, and therefore came expressely to the castle armed in grééne as you haue heard, and although maister Elizabeth had séene him oftentimes before, yet at the first sight hee doubted it was hee, considering where not long before hee had left him, wherefore he sent to tell the king, that presently came to sée him, who knew him well, yet I thought (said he) he had still ben prisoner in the Ferme isle, and it pleaseth your grace (said maister Elizabeth) he was deliuered from thence before my departure, and therwith shewed him the meanes how, as it is at large declared in the end of our fourth booke. Behold (said the king) how great are the iudgements of God: let his body be put into some cold place, for I am well assured that his soule shall indure much more heat then euer it had in this world.

CHAP. VIII.

How maister *Elizabeth* went to finde the blacke knight in the Hermitage, and what conference they had.

ARcalaus and the rest being buried, king Luisart went into his chamber, and as hée loked into the sea, hee could not sée the shippes that Marroco brought with him, wherefore inquiring which way they went, hee was certefied, that when Arcabonne threwe her selfe out of the window into the sea, they toke vp her dead body, and laying it in their vessels, hoised sailes, and put to sea. Let thē

go

goe to the deuill (said the king) and wee to dinner if there bee any thing to eate, your dinner is ready (said maister Elizabeth) when it pleaseth your grace to sit downe : wherewith the meate was brought in, and the king eat with a good appetite, but hee had taken so little rest the night before, that as he sate at the table he fel asleepe. Wherefore rising vp, he laid him downe on his bed, commaunding his men not to wake him, wherewith maister Elizabeth was well pleased, knowing that in the mean time he might haue conuenient leisure to goe vnto Esplandian as hee had promised, whereupon hee departed secretly out of the castle, and going downe the hill, went so long that hee came to the Hermitage, where hee found the Hermite and the dumbe man sitting at the doore, & he saluting them, asked if the black knight were there, the Hermite said no, but the dumbe man made signes that hee should goe into the chamber, which he did, where he found him very melancholy lying vpon a bed. But when hee perceiued maister Elizabeth he tooke him by the hand and said, My good friend maister Elizabeth you are welcome hither, tell mee I pray you how you left the Ferme Isle in, & how they serue Matroco & his barbarous companions. Whereat they both laughed, for the Giant had tied him to a chaire, and made him rost in his Gallics as other slaues did. My lord (said maister Elizabeth) when you receiued the order of knighthood, and that king Lisuarte, Quedragant, and al our company that were as then with your father Amadis de Gaule, kept by meanes of the melodious noise of nine trumpets y sounded on the shoare, Grasinde my mistresse sent me on a message to the Marquesse Saluder her brother, to certesie him of her marriage with the Prince of Sansuegna : wherefore I imbarked my selfe, and had so good a wind, that in short time after I arriued at Constantinople, where I found the Emperour, that tooke great pleasure to heare mee discourse what had happened sithence the returne of Gastilla his nephew. And the next day when I ment to returne, the Princesse Leonorine who in my mind is the beautifullest Princesse liuing at this time, sent for me, most instantlie desiring me that in the presence of quæne Minoresse with diuerse other ladies and Gentlewomen, I would shew her what I had

heard touching the knight with the gréene sword. For (said shee) although ỹ now we vnderstand hee is named Amadis de Gaule, yet will we not change his other name, till such time hee sendeth vs some other of his lynage, or else returne himselfe to doe vs seruice, according to his promise. Thē I shewed them of ỹ strangenesse of the Arke of louers, the singularities of the Isle, whereof they neuer had heard, the losse of king Luisart, the manner how you receiued the order of knighthood, the ceremonies that at the same time Vrganda commanded to bée vsed, the commandement that your father Amadis de Gaule gaue you to come and serue them in this place, and lastly how in the end we fel asléepe in the great serpent, frō whence we were carried, (not knowing thereof) to the pallace of Apolidon, where when we awaked we found all our company together, (onely you,) Mabely, the king of Denmarke, Ambor, and Talanque, not knowing what was become of you. And while I made this long discourse, the Princesse Leonorine would not suffer me to make an end, but interrupting mée in my tale, said vnto me: Maister Elizabeth, when my cousin Gastilles returned from theare, I remember that among other things by him declared, he said somthing touching the yong gentleman whereof you speake, wherefore I pray you shew vs what you know of him: whereunto séeking to fulfill her request, I began to shew her the maner of your natiuitie, how king Luisart found you in the forrest with the lions, of the letters hee receiued that day, what letters you had on your body when you were borne, whereof some were as white as Snow, signifying your owne name, the rest as red as blood, shewing the name of your loue, as yet vnknowne, by reason the characters cannot bée vnderstoode. Then smilingly shee asked mee how you would know it, and I answered her, that loue in time would learne, and that for certaine she should be of royal blood, and one that should be the beautifullest lady liuing in her time. Truly (said she) hee deserueth no lesse, wherefore I pray you heartely when you sée him, perswade him to come hether and fulfill the promise that his father made vs, for I haue great desire to sée him, that hee might bee as much at our commaundement, as heretofore his father Amadis hath

ben,

beene, which I promised her to doe, although I said I doubted it would not be so soone as I could wish. So my lord I staied certain daies at Constantinople, speaking continually of you, that done, I imbarked my selfe againe, where by euill fortune wee fell into the hands of the Giant Marroco, who as then was vpon the sea. While maister Elizabeth shewed the blacke knight of the beauty of the Princesse Leonorine, and what shée had inquired of him, loue entered so farre into his heart, that oftentimes hée changed colour, but for ỳ time he couered his intent as much as hée could: and entering into another matter, asked maister Elizabeth how he found the meanes to leaue king Luisart, As well as I would wish (said he) for as soone as he had dined, he lay downe to sléepe, in the meane time I came hether to you. I pray you (saied the knight) let him know nothing touching me. And wherefore (saied maister Elizabeth) will you hide your selfe from him, Séeing there is no Prince liuing in this world worthier then he to be honoured and serued of all good knights. It is true (said the knight) but I haue done so little yet, that I am ashamed hee should beare no better opinion of mee, séeing I am in hope, that in time I shall doe great matters, which of themselues will set forth my renowne, without the praise of other men. Séeing it is your pleasure (said maister Elizabeth) I will doe so, although it would reioice him much, to heare that such vnexpected aide should come vnto him onely by your meanes. That shall bee at another time (saied the knight) and not now: Wherefore least hée should misse you when hee awaketh, I pray you returne vnto the castle, and when you sée conuenient time, come hether againe to visite mee. Wherewith maister Elizabeth toke his leaue, bidding him farewell, and went the same way he came towards the castle.

CHAP. IX.

How *Carmelle* the Hermites doughter found the blacke Knight sleeping in the Hermitage, and thinking to kill him, perceiuing him so faire, she fell in loue with him.

MAister Elizabeth gone from the Hermitage where hée left the black knight, went so fast and made such hast, that hée came againe vnto the castle, not missed of any, yet the king was awake before hee came, who leaning in a windowe, and séeing him below in the court, asked him if hee had slept. Yea, and it liketh your grace (said he) I haue been abroad, walking along the countrey, which I finde enuironned with the goodliest meddowes that euer were séene, come vp hether (said the king) and you will talke with you, but hee was no sooner entred into the hall, when Carmelle the Hermites daughter came to the king, and kneeling downe before him, said, May it please your grace to entertaine mee into your seruice, that am one of your naturall subiects, and will bee during life: wherewith the king took her vp and said, Gentlewoman, if you desire any thing at my hands, assure your selfe it shall not be denied, for I did neuer during my life but honor and pleasure such as you are, and although such fauours haue oftentimes turned to my great trouble, therein doe I blame no man but my selfe, for that God iustly sendeth both good and euil, when, where, and to whome it pleaseth him, wherefore I pray you shewe mee who you are. Then Carmelle made a long discourse, how from her youth vpwards shee had serued her mistresse Arcabonne, and what occasion moued her father to become an Hermite, as you heard before. Truly Gentlewoman (said the king) if you will returne into great Brittaine, I will take you with mée. I will doe (saied shee) what your grace commandeth: in the meane time I pray you grant me leaue to giue my father intelligence who you

are,

are, for he will be most ready and glad to doe your grace seruice. With a good will (said the king) and tell him I desire to see him; wherewith Carmelle thanked his grace, and because it was late, she went againe into her chamber till the next morning that she rose, and issuing out of the castle, about breake of the day went downe a certaine path shee ordinarily vsed to goe, whereby shee came into the Hermitage at such time as the Hermite and the dumbe man were gone to the barke to fetch such necessaries as the blacke knight wanted, who in the mean time slept in his bed, for after that maister Elizabeth had giuen him intelligence what the Princesse Leonorine had said, hee could not rest, till the very same time when shee entered into her fathers cell, wherein shee found him, and not doubting any thing went into the chamber, where shee heard the blacke knight snort, wherewith being abashed she opened the window and perceiued him asleepe, his sword hanging at his beds head, which she [illegible] downe, and softly drew out of the scabberd, finding it freshly [illegible] with blood, whereupon she suspected it was he that had [illegible] Famion, Matroco, and others in the castle, [illegible] about her shee knew his blacke armour, wherewith shee [illegible] feare, that shee had almost fallen downe, [illegible] out of her hands, but taking courage, she went [illegible] to know him better, being fully determined [illegible] him as he lay, therewith began by little and little to vnlace his face, but he shewed so faire, that suddainly the fury she had changed into so burning a loue, that during her life it was neuer quenched, in such maner that the more she beheld him, the more did her loue increase, and as hee fell on sleep when his [illegible] busied with the imagination conceiued of Leonorine, after Carmelle had beheld him long he turned towards her, & without waking, cast forth a great sigh, saying in his sleepe, Alas poore wretch what shall become of me? The Gentlewoman knew well hee had not seene her, wherefore shee emboldened her selfe to kisse him, and found his face all wet with teares, whereby she feared he had some melancholy humour that troubled him, and although shee esteemed not thereof, seeing her new disease much more then his greefe, taking all to her ad-

 uantage

uantage, thee hoped from that time forwards to find the meanes to obtaine his loue, yet did she faile thereof, for that loue (to shew his power) had wounded them both diuerslie in one place, and at one time, a thing almost incredible, for who would euer thinke that little god would enter into such a place? Where a poore Hermite liued all alone in most vsuall manner, with a few colde roots, and not his belly full of them: yet did hee ouercome them both, in the most vnfit time (as it may bee thought) that could bee found, for the blacke knight had indured so great trauaile in fighting, and the Gentlewoman left so many of his friendes slaine at one time, that the one had not so much need of comfort, by the other as much cause to feare. (If then it bee so (as it is true) that we are all subiect to this Tyrant, he that hath past ye flower of his youth, notwithstanding all bravery, may not thinke himselfe in any thing more happie, seeing it is his manner to constraine young men to loue, and [illegible] old fooles to dote. In that sort the Gentlewoman [illegible] remembrance for the euill shee conceiued against the blacke knight, and had continued longer there, had it not been for feare to be discouered. Wherefore with the sword in her hand she returned backe againe towards the castle, & without being once perceiued entered at a [illegible] where of she had the key, and so [illegible] her chamber. Departing from the hermitage not long after her father and the dumbe man returned from the barke, and found the knight sleeping, who presently awaked, and missing his sword, asked them if they had taken it away. But truly (said the Hermite) for we came but now from the seaside. Wherewith Esplandian esteeming it lost, made account, that as he had conquered it after a strange maner, so hee had lost it by a strange meanes, but the Hermite and the dumbe man sought it about the house, and could not find it.

CHAP.

CHAP. X.

How King *Luiſart* being aduertiſed by *Carmella* where the blacke knight was, departed with her alone to find him out.

ARmelle returned to the caſtle (as it is ſaid before) went to the king, who at the ſame time was talking with maſter Elizabeth touching the wrong hee thought the blacke knight did him; & departing thence without being knowne, ſeeking by that meanes if it were poſſible to draw from him what hee knew as touching the knight: but all in vaine, for the king was not ſo ſubtil to vndermine him, but maſter Elizabeth was as crafty to preuēt him, not intending to [illegible] from him: and although the Gentlewoman had determined [illegible] the king what ſhee had learned of the knight [illegible] obtaine her purpoſe. Neuertheleſſe, ſeeing maſter Elizabeth preſence, ſhee held her peace till he went aſide [illegible] king alone, ſaid vnto him: My lord, if it [illegible] to ſhew me ſo much fauour, as to aſſiſt me in [illegible] that toucheth as much as my life, in behalfe of the knight that you ſo much deſire to ſee, before to morrow at night I will ſhew him vnto you, if you think good, in ſuch a place, where you may eaſily ſpeake with him: and to the end you ſhall not ſuſpect me of vntruth, I will ſhew you a certaine token, that when you ſee it, I aſſure you will eaſily beleeue me. Gentlewoman (ſaid the King) ſeeing you ſo, I will not faile if it be poſſible to ſatiſfie your requeſt. I beſeech your grace (ſaid ſhe) when you are both together, it would please you to be a meane vnto him in my behalfe to graunt me a gift that I ſhall aſke him. By the faith of a Prince (ſaid he) I will not faile to doe it in a greater matter then that, if it lieth in my power. Then followed (ſpeaking the Gentlewoman) bringing him where ſhee had laied the ſword, and ſhewing it vnto him, aſked if he had neuer ſeene it. That I haue (ſaid the king) and I would to God the knight that

knoweth

knoweth so well how to handle it, were as neere vnto mee as it is. You shall see him in the morning (saied she) if it pleaseth you to follow me. That will I doe (saied the king) armed or vnarmed I esteeme not whether, so I may see him. Then be you ready (saied she) when I shall call, and let no man go with you. Content (saied the king) wherewith hee went out of the chamber, and passing through the court, he met Libee and others, to whome hee saied, that in the morning he meant to walke along the rocke (because maister Elizabeth had certified him, it was so goodly a countrey) and that none but Carmelle should beare him company, and falling into other speeches, they passed the time till they went to rest, but the king could not sleepe for the great desire he had to see the knight, whereby he was hardly fallen asleep, when Carmelle came to awake him, saying: My lord, may it please your grace to remember your promise. Let vs goe (saied hee) and therewith making himselfe ready, commanded two horses to bee sadled, one for himselfe, the other for Carmelle, and riding out of the castle, rode towards the [illegible]. And they had not travelled farre, but they perceiued a [illegible] comming towards them in great hast, and as hee came neere [illegible] Gentleman knew him, asking whither he meant to ride so early, and whether hee rode. I ride to the castle (saide hee) [illegible] his brother Frerian, with all speed to helpe their vncle Landoraque, who comming to see the hath met with two knights armed all in white, that haue slaine his men, and (as I thinke) left him in as great danger as possible may bee. When the king heard him, hee thought them to bee of the blacke knights [illegible], and said vnto the Gentlewoman, I pray you stay here with this man, and I will ride to see them, and with that hee set spurres to his horse, and taking the same way the other came, he perceiued a far off the two knights fighting with the Giant, that defended himselfe most valiantly with his mace, hoping them oftentimes to reuenge, but the two knights as bold and nimble, handled him in such sort, that hee knew not how to defend himselfe, and if hee had not slaine one of their horses, it had gone worse with him. Neuertheless the knight on horseback seeking to reuenge his companion, was nothing abashed,

shed, but when the other rose vp, set fiercelier vpon the Giant then before, in such manner, that they closed, and striuing together, sought by all meanes to vnhorse each other. Mean time the knight on foot, went vnto the Giant, and taking him by the left leg, pulled him by such force, that both hee and the other knight fell off their horses, and holding each other fast, the Giant fell vnder with his face vpwards, wherewith the knight that threw him downe, thrust him into the face, that hee was constrained to let goe his hold, neuertheless rising vp againe with great force; and laying hold vpon the knight that had so wounded him, hee threw him on the ground, meane time the other gaue the Giant such a blow vpon the head, that he began to reele, and therewith stretching out his legs, yelded vp the ghost. With that the king rode somewhat nearer, and perceiued the two knights to beare black crosses, that shewed them to be Christians, wherefore riding boldly vnto them, hee went so neere that they knew him, whereupon they went to do him honour, much abashed to see him. But the king perceiuing their honour them did him, was no lesse abashed, and said vnto them: My good friends, I know you not, I pray you put off your helmets that I may see your faces, which they did, whereby he knew them to be Talanque sonne of Galaor, ỹ other Ambor de Constantinople, sonne of Angriote destrauaulx; who he friendly imbraced, & said vnto them, In faith my good friends, it is not without cause if it liketh you well to see mee here, for all my life haue I desired the companies of your fathers, the like doe I of their children, wherefore for the loue of God I pray you shew mee what straunge aduenture hath brought you into this country. And it pleaseth your grace (said Talanque) we seeke after a knight armed all in blacke, of whome as yet wee can heare no newes. Doe you know his name (said the king?) That wee doe (said Ambor) for it is your nephew Esplandian: ỹ contents me (said the king) doe but follow mee, and I will bring you where hee is. With that Ambor, who before was alighted to honour the king, mounted againe on horsebacke, and Talanque on the Giants horse, for his owne was slaine, and all three together rode ỹ way the king came thether, till such time they espied the Gentlewo-

man, that staid for him: who perceiuing them to ride in such hast towards her, was in mind to haue fled away, fearing they had taken the king, and forcibly had him with them, but perceiuing them by their gestures to be his friends, shée staied till they came vnto her, saying to the king. My lord, where hath your grace gotten company so soone? Gentlewoman (said he) you shall know it all in good time, but what haue you done (saied hee) with the man that I left with you? Let vs know what newes he hath told you. Truly (said she) I had no sooner assured him of the death of Matroco and the rest of the castle, but hee fled ouer this hill, as if all the deuils in hell had ben behind him: yet he tolde mée that the Giant his maister had heard some rumour thereof, and for the same cause was comming to the castle to know the truth, accompanied only with two knights, y he caused to ride before him, but to their hard fortunes, for he found them both slain, not knowing who had done it, but [illegible] long after hee met with two strange knights, that assailed him, and left them fighting (as hee saied) together. By God (saied the king) [illegible] first two knights sped hardly, their maist[illegible] folowed [illegible] them had little better entertainement, for [illegible] are all [illegible] the way, and here are the knights that did [illegible] whose [illegible] yet let vs take with vs, for they are friends and companions vnto y knight you haue promised to shew me. Let vs goe then (said shée) séeing it is your graces pleasure: and therewith they rode vnto the Hermitage, at the entery whereof, they found the Hermite set vpon a stone, who being abashed to sée his daughter in such company, asked whether shee went. Father (saied shee) here is king Luisart your Prince and mine, whom I haue brought to sée you. And although the Hermite had not séen him in long time before, yet he presently knew him, wherewith hee stepped to kisse his féete, which the king would not suffer him to doe, but imbraced him, and lighting off his horse, followed the Gentlewoman, till hée met the dumbe man, that hearing the noise and trampling of horses, came to see who they were, and perceiuing the king, hee bowed his head before him. Neuertheless the king went forward, not staying to speake vnto him, entring presently after Carmelle into the chamber,

ber, where he found the knight set vpon the beds side. Wherwith Esplandian presently knew him, and kneeled downe before him, but the king taking him vp, weeping for ioy imbraced him. With that Talanque and Ambor entred in, and perceiuing their companion (that they so long had sought) were maruellous glad, and comming to imbrace him, the king said to Esplandian: My sonne, although you haue sought by all meanes to hide your selfe from vs, yet God hath so wrought, that at one instant we haue all three found you out: wherefore I pray you let vs depart hence, and go with vs vnto the castle, where you shall bee better at your ease then in this simple Hermitage. My lord (saied hee) I am at your commaundement, with that hee went to imbrace Talanque and Ambor, asking them (and they him) what had happened vnto thé since Vrganda caused them to be dubbed knights. By Gods helpe (said the king) you shall stay to heare the [illegible] vntill wee bee in the castle, for then you shall haue better leisure to declare the same. With that he [illegible] Carmelle, willing her to returne with all dilligence to t[illegible] and Libee to bring one of Marrocos horses [illegible] (saied Ambor) it will bee late before he co[illegible] rather haue my horse, and I will goe on f[illegible] (said the king) get you vpon Carmelles horse [illegible] you. In which manner they road vnto t[illegible] after whom the Hermite and the dumb man followed as fast as they could. But they scarce alighted off their horses, Ambor and Talanque being vnarmed, but Carmelle moued with the extreame passions of loue she bare vnto ỹ blacke knight, had almost slaine her selfe with the sword that the day before she had stolen from him, the occasion whereof proceeded from a conceit ỹ he would disdaine her as vnworthy of him, hee being the sonne of Amadis de Gaule, as shee vnderstood: yet in the end she remembred the promise the king had made, wherefore she determined to desire so much of him, to be a meanes vnto Esplandian, that he would graunt she might neuer be absent from him, but would serue him during her life with all fidelitie, and to the same end, putting her determination in effect, as they sat all together, she kneeled before the king, and saied. My lord, now your grace

ſæth I haue kept my promiſe. That is true (ſaied he) and while I liue I will not be vnmindfull of it. My lord (ſaid ſhée) then I truſt your grace hath not forgotten the gift you promiſed mee: and to performe your word, I pray you be a meanes to the black knight that hee will graunt mee my requeſt. Gentlewomen (ſaied the king) bee you aſſured I will doe it with all my heart. Your grace (ſaied ſhe) as yeſterday gaue mee leaue to viſite my father in the Hermitage, who as it fortuned when I came thether was gone forth, whereat I was abaſhed; becauſe he neuer vſed to bee farre from thence: And finding the doore open, I went into a chamber (that I cauſed to bee furniſhed) wherein ſometimes I vſe to lie, when time or foule weather would not permit me to returne vnto the caſtle, where I found this knight (pointing to Eſplandian) which you all ſo much deſired to ſee, faſt ſleeping, his ſword hanging at his beds head, with which not long ſithence he hath ſlaine thoſe, that from my infancy [illegible] vp, and being moued by reaſon of my no little loſſe, [illegible] to reuenge both my ſelfe and my friendes, I thought [illegible] was ſo neere the point to execute my will, that [illegible] drawne in my hand, and began to lift vp [illegible] blow, he ſeemed ſo faire within mine eie, that [illegible] ſurpziſed with loue, and that ſo feruently, that [illegible] the promiſe you haue made me, I had not ben [illegible] time. Neuertheleſſe hauing ſithence vnderſtood, that [illegible] vnto whome I am in this extremitie, in eſtate and degree [illegible] of to bee my equall, whereby I perceiue my ſelfe vnworthy euer to be wife or companion vnto him, I haue ſomewhat moderated my firſt deliberation in ſuch manner, that I will hold my ſelfe more then ſatiſfied, if it pleaſe him I may only continue with him, to ſerue at his commandement during my life, which in reaſon he cannot well deny me, for let him doe what hee will, ſo long as life is in my body, I will neuer forſake him, if I be not conſtrained thereunto. Wherfore my lord, for the honour of God, I beſeech your grace to finde the meanes my poore requeſt may once bee granted, and you Gentlemen (ſaied ſhe to Ambor and Talanque) I pray you put to your helps, that by your fauours the life of my poore louer, not beloued,

may

may bee prolonged. The king hearing the Gentlewoman (that while she spake sometime blushed, and other whiles wared pale) make this discourse, could hardly abstain to laugh, thinking how inconsiderately shee had fallen into so great extremitie, whereby hee feared if hée should make an answere other then pleased her, she would kill her selfe, but with courteous spéech hee saied vnto her: Gentlewoman, your requeſt is so reasonable, that I am of opinion hee will not deny it: and for my part, I will intreat him as much as possible I can. My lord (said Esplandian) I wil do what your grace commaundeth. Graunt her then I pray you (saied the king) what shée craueth at your hands, that from henceforth shee may bee called your faithfull seruant, her honour alwaies saued, as in knighthood you are bound. I will doe it, answered Esplandian, and thereof I assure you (saied hee) speaking to Carmelle, who knéeling on the ground kiſſed [illegible]ete, and thanked the king and him moſt heartely, reputing [illegible]lfe moſt happy, in obtaining so great fauour.

CHAP. XI.

How *Talanque* and *Ambor* [illegible] the king what aduentures they had found seeking for *Esplandian* their companion, after they had receiued the order of knighthood.

HAd heard before in what sort king Luisart was deliuered out of prison by his nephew Esplandian, but as yet he knew not the manner how he receiued the order of knighthood. Wherefore as they rose from dinner, the king desired him to tell him how he was made knight, as also what happened vnto him since that time, to the end (saied hée) that Talauque and Ambor may doe the like. Then Esplandian tolde how Vrganda came vnto the Ferme island in the great serpent, what spéech shee had with Amadis de Gaule, and others that were with him, the order shee vsed to dub him knight, together with Talanque, Ambor, Manely, & the king

of Denmarke: The sléepe wherein they fell, and that when hee awaked, he found himselfe at the foot of the rocke of the Enchantresse, in company of Sergil his Squire and two dumb men, also how he conquered the sword, with his arriuall at the mountain, where he found the Hermite, that dissuaded him from fighting with the giants. By my head (said the king) I neuer heard stranger things, And now Ambor (saied hee) what became of you? My lord (saied Ambor) my companion and I were likewise asléepe, and when we awaked we found our selues in a little barke with our two horses, in a Hauen of the sea called Armata in the country of Norway (as then vnknowne to vs) where wee landed before a towne, not only to know in what countrey wee were, but also to séeke for victuals. And as wee went towards it, the watch of the towne (by reason of certain dissension not long before moued betweene them and their neighbours) sent to knowe what we would haue. Where with I made them answere, wee were knights aduenturous that came from the Ferme Ile, cast vpon that shore by tempest of weather. And truly said he that spake vnto vs, our king hath so great need to vse your helpes, that if you goe vnto him, I am well assured hee will bid you welcome. We asked him the kings name, and what country wee were in. My lords (said he) the country is called Norway, whereof Adroni father in lawe to Agraies, sonne to the king of Scots, and one of the best knights in the world, is our king. I know not whether you know him. And what cause saied wee, hath your king to vse our helpe? I will tell you (said he) he is sore vexed, that one of his nephewes, his sisters sonne, (procured thereunto by euil counsel) is risen in armes against him, séeking to haue the gouernement of the country, in respect (as hee saith) his vncle is no more able to rule the same. And vnder that pretence hath already vsurped a great part thereof, and now lieth in campe before one of the best cities in this land, which the king by no meanes can releeue, by reason that most of his trustiest friends haue forsaken him, and hold with the yong presumptuous fole, that winneth them by faire promises, a thing that oftentimes happeneth vnto such as fortune fauoureth not, and when men are fallen, they are not only

only abandoned of straungers, but by their owne kindred and friends, that properly may be tearmed friends for ỹ present time. In good faith said we, if the towne will giue vs victuals, and one to guide vs, we will gladly goe and present our seruice vnto him, not onely for the loue of Agraies, to whom wee are companions, but for the right he hath, as you haue told vs. That shall be done (said he) and therewith desired vs to stay till he came again from the cittie, where he staied not long, but hee brought what we desired, and a guide that conducted vs so wel, that the next day about dinner time we arriued where the king lay. Who being aduertised of our comming, and that wée were of Agraies companions, entertained vs most courteously, commaunding one of his Gentlemen to vnarme vs in one of his best chambers, whether hee came, and after hee had bidden vs welcome, beganne in the same manner to shew vs all what the Dutch had before declared vnto vs, and what an vnnaturall part his nephew shewed vnto him, procured therevnto by two knights, in whome onely hée putteth his whole trust, because (said he) they are well assured, that not any of my knights dareth enter into combat with them, they are estéemed so valiant and hardy. But who hath mooued them and your cosin (said we) to vndertake so foule an action? Because (said the king) I haue no issue male, and my cousin alledgeth I am ouer old to gouerne the countrey, saying, it is fitter for him then for me to do it: but if I can I will hold him from it, and kéep it for my doughter Olinde and Agraies her husband: By my soule (said I) I am of this opinion, that séeing this warre is begun only to trie the title, you both pretend in one thing, It were good your quarrell shoule bee ended by thé combate of two knights of both parts, without the death and destruction of so many poore innocent people as daily perish by the same means, remitting the issue thereof to those whome it shall please God to make victorious: and if it pleaseth you, I and my companion will bee the two knights that shall fight for you. But when hée heard mee speake in that manner, hee pausèd a while, séeming very pensiue, till in the end he answered me and saied, Sir knights, I am not yet so well acquainted with you, that I should venture to hazard so great

great a kingdome as this is vpon your valour, Neuertheleſſe, if you will aſſure me for a truth that you are knights of the Ferme Iſland, I am content to ſtand to it whatſoeuer may chance. For there can none but valiant knights come from thence, being aſſured (as I ſuppoſe) that otherwiſe the lord of the place would not giue them intertainement. Then wee ſwore vnto him, that what wee had ſaied was true. Whereupon hee preſently diſpatched a trumpet with meſſage to his enemy, to offer him the combate, who hearing the newes ſéemed very glad, making account that his two knights (ſo much eſtéemed) would eaſily ouercome any two of the beſt knights the king had. So that returning the meſſenger againe, hee ſent one of his trumpets with him to conclude the combate, with the day, time and place where it ſhould be done, as alſo what pledges ſhould on both ſides bee giuen for performance thereof, ſo that on the day appointed, after ech party had ſolemnly taken their oathes, wee entred into ye liſts, where wee had a cruell and dangerous combate one againſt the other, but in the end right lying on our ſides, wee wan the victory. And as we would haue ſtriken off their heads, the Kings nephew deſired vs moſt earneſtly to grant them their liues, which wee agréed vnto, vpon condition, that from that time forwards hee ſhould ſuffer his vncle to raigne in peace, not moleſting him any more, which he promiſed to performe. In this combate we were ſo wounded, that of force we continued in Norway longer then wee meant to do, where during our abode, certaine marchants arriued in the cittie, that had ſéene (as they told vs) vpon the ſea, néere vnto the rocke of the Enchauntreſſe, a Serpent greater then any veſſell, which ſo much aſtoniſhed them, that they knew not what to doe, whereby we heard newes of Eſplandian. With that (although we were not altogether healed of our wounds) yet we beſought the king to cauſe vs to bee conducted thether, which hee willingly graunted, and wee toke ſea, with ſo good a wind, that within fiue daies after wee approched the rocke where the ſerpent ſtaied, yt at the firſt made vs ſomewhat abaſhed, although we had ſéene it oftentimes before. Neuertheleſſe, we found it flaſhing ſuch flames of fire out of the mouth and noſthrils thereof;

that

that wee feared the fire would fall into our shippe, whereby not without much paine and trouble, wee procured our maister and marriners to approch it, and perceiuing no creature abord to speake vnto, we began to hallow vnto them with so loud a voice, that at the last Sergil appeared vpon the hatches, and weeping, told vs what had happened vnto his maister on the rocke of the Enchauntresse, and how after that one of the dumbe men had caused him to enter into a little barke, and therewith put to sea, so that hée knew not if hee were dead or liuing, for hee had heard no newes of him, and there hee staied with another dumbe man in the greatest care that might bée. With that wee willed him to call the dumbe man vnto vs, and when hee came, by signes wée made vnto him, we shewed him what pleasure he might doe vs if he would bring vs to ỹ place where his fellow had carried Esplandian, which as it séemed he was content to doe, for presently thervpon he entered into our vessell and sailed so well, that the tenth day after he set vs on [illegible] hard by the place where wee slew the Giant and the two [illegible], So as your grace hath heard what fortunes wee had [illegible] receiued the order of knighthood. Truly (said [illegible] Manely & the king of Denmarke be as stra[illegible], I may well bee saied, there neuer happened the like beginning vnto fiue yong knights.

CHAP. XII.

How one night as King *Luisart* was in his bed, thinking how hee might returne againe into great Britaine, hee heard so pleasant a sound of instruments, that hee rose vp to see where it might bee: and what happened after that.

THe King Luisart cõtinued so long in the castle on the mountaine, that at the last hee waxed weary, not so much for the desire he had to bee in his owne countrey, as for the grefe he certainely knew the Quéene would conceiue, by reason of his long absence: in which kinde of pensiuenesse hee continued certaine nights together, that by meanes thereof hee

could take no reſt, till at the laſt one night among the reſt about halfe an hower before day, he heard the ſweeteſt muſick that euer plaied, wherewith hee roſe out of his bed, and without making any noiſe opened the windowe, to heare it better. But as then it was very darke, and the wind blew ſo hard, that the ſea riſing therewith, beat againſt the hollowneſſe of the rocke, in ſuch ſort that the noiſe thereof, and the ſound of the muſicke, made a new kind of harmony: wherewith hee was ſo much delighted, that hee awaked Eſplandian, Ambor and Talanque, that ſlept ſoundly, as yong men without malancholy humours, are accuſtomed to doe. But when they heard the muſicke, they ſtaied not long in their beds, but went to the windowe to ſée who it might bee, but they could ſée nothing till day began to appeare. When they perceiued the great Serpent surging on the ſhoare, wherwith they were excéeding glad, making full account that the arriuall therof brought them some good newes: Wherewith they made them ready, and without longer ſtaying, iſſued out of the caſtle, to ſée who was in the ſame, and as they drew on the ſhore, they perceaued a ſmal boat, and a Gentlewoman comming out of it, bearing in her arms a packet couered with Taffata, who comming vnto the king, with moſt humble reuerence ſaied vnto him. My lord, and it pleaſeth your grace, Vrganda recommendeth her vnto your maieſty, and hath commanded me to giue you intelligence, that being buſied to aide the Emperour and the Empreſſe your doughter, in a certaine thing of great importance, ſhee hath not had the meanes to come and viſite you. Then preſenting ỹ packet to Eſplandian, ſaid vnto him, Gentle knight, My miſtreſſe that loueth and fauoureth you, as it is well knowne, giueth you theſe armes, and ſendeth you word by mee, that as ſhee gaue you the blacke armes, that hetherto you haue borne (to teſtifie thereby the ſorrow for the loſſe of the king, that as then was common among all his true ſubiects and friends) So in theſe you ſhal finde the deuiſe of the lady, that in beautie and comelineſſe of perſon ſurpaſſeth all the ladies in the world, as Amadis your father in time paſt well proued, when ſhee ſet the crowne vpon her head, in remembraunce whereof ſhee hath euer ſithence borne the like

deuiſe,

deuise. Who from henceforth shall bee so strongly fixed in your heart, that you shal neuer giue stroke with sword nor launce, but you will remember her. Which she said in respect of the princesse Leonorine, doughter to the Emperour of Constantinople, that by destinie was appointed only vnto him. And opening the pack shee pulled out a helmet, shield, Haubert, and a Caparison for a horse all of white, imbrodered with crowns of gold, and set with Diamonds and Pearles, which hée most willingly receiued, saying to the Gentlewoman: I pray you in my behalfe giue Vrganda hearty thankes for the great honour and much good shee hath continually done vnto me, assuring her, that whersoeuer I become, she hath a knight of mee ready to obay her, and that for the loue of her will beare these armes as long as it pleaseth her. Bée it so in the name of God (saied she) but before long time bee past, you shall haue another mistresse, that will constraine you to doe greater matters, for shée shall rauish both your heart and libertie in such manner, that you should lose ouermuch, if at sometimes you lose not your selfe for her. And to conclude, I tell you that my mistresse féeleth her selfe as yet so much bound, and beholding to my lord Amadis your father, because that by his meanes, shee recouered her friend, that during her life she wil vse al the means shee can to doe him plasure, and you likewise for his sake. And as shee deliuered ỹ message vnto him, Carmelle came thether, and hearing her speake in that manner, answered her and said, Gentlewoman, I pray you tell your mistresse from mée, that she hath great cause to recompence them well, by whom she enioieth her friend she loueth so entirely: and tell her I know many, to whom if such chance should happen, that would not fail to acknowledge it with the price of their déerest blood, and their soules likewise if néed were. In faith (said the gentlewoman) I know not in whose behalfe you speake it, but I know assuredly you touch mé at the quick, which she vttered with so good a grace, that the king could not refraine to smile, hauing in times past felt the fury of loue, when hée first saw the Quéene in the country of Denmarke. Yet hee chaunged his countenance, asking the Gentlewoman from whence that musicke came that hee heard in the morning before

breake of day. My lord (said she) being sometimes in greater passions then willingly I would, I passe my melancholy humours with a Lute that I haue, especially when I cannot sléepe, which as I thinke, was it you heard. What company haue you in the Serpent (said the king?) None (said she) but Esplandians Squire, that I found in a manner dead, for the desire he had to hear news of his maister, to whome also I haue brought the goodliest white horse, and the best harnaised that euer was séene, which my mistresse sendeth him likewise. Did she commãd you to say nothing else vnto me (said the king?) Yes my lord (saied shee) shee sendeth you word, that at my arriuall here, you and hee should enter into this ship, that of it selfe will bring you into great Brittaine, and that the fortunes ý not long since happened vnto you, are snares the world setteth to intrap those it séeketh to deceiue, séeming to ioine grééne and flourishing age with that which already is dried vp and withered. And further willeth you to put in effect, ý which in your selfe you haue determined to doe: (which was to forsake his kingly estate, and liue a solitary life) but hee wondered much that Vrganda knew it, yet he made no shew thereof, but speaking to the Gentlewoman, he saied. Your mistresse bindeth mee daily more and more vnto her, being well assured, that without her helpe I could hardly haue found any to haue brought me into my country. Wherefore I pray you tell her, that whatsoeuer I haue, is at her commandement, and as touching my determination, which (as soone as I conceiued in my mind, I perceiued it was knowne to her) being at home, if God giueth me life, I meane to put in execution. My lord (saied shee) she praieth you to commend the kéeping of this castle to Talanque and Ambor, (not taking any with you but Esplandian, Sergil, & maister Elizabeth) knowing for certaine that hereafter they shall doe such things, that their renoume will spread throughout the world. Wherewith my lord I will take my leaue, and returne againe to her with the dumbe men, that shall guide me in this little barke. God haue you in his kéeping (saied the king.) Then the Gentlewoman with her two Marriners entered into the barke that brought Esplandian thether, and setting saile, put to sea.

CHAP.

CHAP. XIII.

How King *Luisart* imbarked himselfe in the great Serpent, and of the message *Esplandian* sent by *Carmelle*, vnto the Princesse *Leonorine*, doughter to the Emperor of Constantinople.

THe Gentlewoman that brought the message with the two dumbe men, imbarked and put to sea, farre from the rocke: king Luisart and the rest went vnto the castle, where he staied not long, for according to the aduise Virganda had giuen him, hee desired Ambor & Talanque with Libee and the rest of the company to kéep the castle, promising with all spéed to send them prouision of all thinges necessary, whereof they wanted. But when Esplandian saw there was no remedy, but of force he must obey the king (much displeased to depart so farre from the borders of Constantinople, where he hoped to find her whereof maister Elizabeth had brought him the first newes) hée toke his faithfull seruant Carmelle aside, and said vnto her: My good friend, I was in mind neuer to falsifie the promise I haue made you, nor the gift you required at my hands, neuertheless, trusting more in you then any other, I pray you take it not in euill part, if (to saue my life) I send you to a place, whether I thought to haue gone my self in person, but it pleaseth the king (as you wel know) that I shal beare him company. My lord (saied shee) I most humbly thanke you for the honour it pleaseth you to shew mee, swearing vnto you by the liuing God, that I take no pleasure but in fulfilling your desire, wherefore I pray you feare not to command mée what you thinke good, for whatsoeuer may happen thereby, I will bee obedient vnto you during my life. My good friend (said Esplandian) imbracing her, I will one day recompence your good will, & séeing you are minded to do me so much fauour, you must then take your iourney to Constantinople, on message to the Princesse Leonorine, the Emperours

 dough-

doughter, to whom (hauing presented my most humble and hartie commendations) you shall on my behalfe say, How that at such time as I receiued the order of knighthood, I was commanded by my lord Amadis my father to repaire to her fathers court, there to discharge him of the promise hee made vnto her (which was either to returne againe to doe her seruice, or to send one of his linage thether in his place) Neuertheless, considering with my selfe his great valour and Prowesse, and the great beauty that is reported to bee in her, which my small desert in regard of him that gaue me the commandement, I am afraid to vndertake the same. Notwithstanding, it hath pleased her (by maistree Elizabeth) to put mee in mind thereof, although while breath is in my body I will neuer faile to be her knight. And to the end shee may giue credite to your message, you shal present this ring vnto her, which she knoweth well, as being the same she gaue vnto my father, to put him in remembrance of his promise. My lord (saied she) I will fulfill your commandement, but if you goe so far from hence, where shal I find you, when I come backe again? In this place (said Esplandian) whether I will returne as soone as I haue brought the king into great Britaine. Then calling Labee, hee commanded him, that presently after hee had set saile, hee should cause a ship to be prepared for Carmelle, to goe on message where he would send her, that done, hee went to finde the king and maister Elizabeth, that staied for him in the Serpent, the which presently vpon his entring therein, of her selfe began to set forwards with such spéede, that in short space they left the coast of Turkie, and the twentith day after, they discouered ý Ferme Isle, where she staied, which those of ý country perceiuing, aduertised Amadis and the rest of the company, who in great hast ran vnto the Hauen, but they were no sooner come thether, when they espied the king, Esplandian, maister Elizabeth, and Sergil, landing out of a little boat. Wherewith being all abashed, but much more pleased, stepped forwards to receiue thē, and after many imbracings and salutations on either part, Amadis presented the Giant Balan to the king, whom as yet hee had neuer séene, and therewith set forward towards the pallace of Apolidon, wherof Oriane and

the

the reſt of the ladies hauing intelligence, the great ſorrow that ſo long time they had vſed for his abſence, was conuerted into ioy, which much more increaſed, when the king in preſence of them all, rehearſed the manner how Eſplandian deliuered him out of Arcabonnes hands, and the great Prowesſe he ſhewed againſt Matroco, Frerion, and Arcalaus their vncle. Oriane knew well the great deſire and much greefe the Quéene had, becauſe ſhee heard no newes of the king, wherefore the ſame day ſhee ſent her daniſh Gentlewoman to aduertiſe her of his arriuall, who made ſuch haſt, that within fiue dates after ſhee arriued at London, at ſuch time the Quéene ſat downe to dinner.

CHAP. XIIII.

How King *Luiſart* departed from the Ferme Iſle, accompanied of diuers knights, Ladies, and Gentlewomen, and being neere London, in a forreſt they met with foure knights, that ſent to ask four courſes with their launces againſt *Eſplandian*.

THree dates king Luiſart continued in the Ferme Iſle, and the fourth day hee determined to goe ſée the Quéene, and to the ſame end, with all ỹ company of knights, ladies, and gentlewomen, he ſet forwards towards London, and trauailed ſo faſt, that they were within a daies iourney of the cittie. And as they entred into a forreſt, where they vſed commonly to chaſe the Hart, they ſaw in the high way foure knights, well mounted & armed at all points, each his Eſquire by his ſide, bearing their ſhield and launces, for they had their helmets on their heads. And with that they perceiued a Gentlewoman comming towards them, riding on a palfrey, and being néere them, ſpeaking to Eſplandian, ſhe ſaied, Sir knight with the white armes, thoſe foure knights you ſée in the high way before you, ſend you word by me, that they would gladly know the cauſe why you beare the deuiſe of crownes, wherin

if

if you satisfie their desire, in such sort that their honours bee not stained, they will from henceforth refraine to inquire the same any more: otherwise, they giue you by me to vnderstand, it were best for you to leaue them, or else that you defend them well, as being the most honourable deuise that is in all the world. When Esplandian heard her speake in that manner, in courteous sort he answered her and said. Gentlewoman, to satisfie their request I pray you tell them, that the deuise and the armes I beare was giuen me by Vrganda, but for what cause I know not, neuertheles I bear them for the loue of her, as also that they like me wel: and if this content them not, tel them, mee thinketh the occasion of combate betwéene mee and them is so small, that for this time I would desire them to forbeare the same. In good faith (saied shee) smiling, you speak with reason, for they are knights that séeme to haue much néed of your counsell, but notwithstanding good sir, I pray you bee not vnprouided, for your excuses will not bee receiued. Gentlewoman (said Esplandian) if they assaile me, it shall bee against my wil. Truly (said she) as farre as I perceiue, the great beautie that is in you, together with the rich armes and goodly horse you ride vpon are worse bestowed then euer was any, when you are not ashamed to make an answere so little to your credite. Neuertheless, either you must forsake the way to London, and this good company, or defend the braue deuise you bear, as they haue sent you word. The way (saied Esplandian) is common to all men, and out of it (for them) I will not goe, wherefore if they assaile me, I must of force defend my self. And because the Gentlewoman was not knowne among them, they all mused who she might me, as also who the foure knights were that sent her, to whom shée returned againe. Meane time Esplandian laced on his helmet, taking his launce in his hand, ready to fight if occasion serued. Wherewith Amadis and the rest of the company were exceéding glad, doubting least the king had spoken in fauour of him, when he shewed what he had done, but they had not ridden long, but one of ỹ four knights came riding softly towards them, and about a carriers length from them, called to Esplandian and said, You sir knight that would not satisfie our desires, defend

your

your selfe from mee. Wherewith hee set spurres to his horse and Esplandian likewise, who at ỳ first encounter cast him so strongly out of his saddle, that in long time after hee could not rise againe, and therewith his launce brake: with ỳ the second knight came forwards, willing Esplandian to take another launce, for he meant to reuenge his companion. Which Amadis hearing, sent him his launce, that he willingly receiued, and being in a rage to see himselfe assailed without cause, hee ranne against the knight, and strake him so surely on the brest, that he ouerthrew him both horse and man. Well (said the king) to the standers by, iudge you if it be possible to doe better: My lord (said Agraies) I neuer saw two fairer strokes giuen with a launce, the rest I will leaue to consider of, till I know those that ranne against him. Let vs see the end (saied the king) and calling a Squire, hee sent his launce vnto Esplandian, for as then the third knight prepared himselfe to runne, and spurring their horses, set forwards so fiercely, that breaking their launces, they met so strongly, body and shields, and heads together, that Esplandian had much adoe to sit vpon his horse, and the other had such a fall, that he lay still vpon ỳ ground. Whereat the fourth knight being abashed, saied vnto himselfe, Truly, both the king and Vrganda haue good reason (as they do) to assure the valor and prowesse of this knight, seeing it is much more then they warrant it to bee: Neuertheless, I must of force trie him, otherwise I should doe both my selfe and him wrong. And with that he called Esplandian and said, Knight, Although I well know the small courtesie, that I and my companions haue shewed vnto you, yet I must not refuse to doe the same that they haue done before me, wherefore I pray you send to some of your company for another launce, that we may see who shall beare the honour of this enterprise. I will doe it (saied hee) seeing you constraine me thereunto, vpon condition that if I can, I will serue you in the like sort I haue done your companions. With that Granfador that heard them speake, gaue him his launce, which he presently charging, they met together with such force, that their launces brake close vnto their hands, neither of them remouing out his saddle, wherefore the knight of the forrest turned to

Esplandian and saied, Sir Knight, let vs yet trie one blow more, and I will quite you for this time. You might content your selfe (said hee) with that is done, but seeing you are so void of reason, I am content to trie it with you., till one of vs bee beaten off his horse. Then he sent Sergil to fetch another lance, and he brought him one somewhat bigger and shorter then those hee had before, wherewith hee stroke the knight of the forrest so valiantly, that he ouerthrew him, himselfe being constrained to imbrace his horse about the necke, or else he had fallen as the other did that lay on the ground, yet he rose before Esplandian had runne out his course and as he returned backe, he staied him by the armour and saied vnto him, Before God sir knight, you haue sufficiently shewed that in valour and prowesse you are second to none but to your selfe: but hee answered not a word, but holding downe his head (ashamed of that had happened vnto him) passed forth. With that the king came thether to knowe what knights they were that had ben ouerthrowne, among the which he knew Galaor, for hee had put off his helmet to do him honour when he saw him come, wherat the king was so well pleased, that he alighted of his horse and ranne to imbrace him, the like did Amadis, saying vnto him, with a smiling countenaunce, How now now brother Galaor, how long haue you vsed to be a Keeper of the high waies? You see (said hee) that I and my companions haue sought to trie whether this knight be of such force as we haue found him, and what hath happened you may well iudge, when Esplandian vnderstood his vncle Galaor (fearing to haue offended) hee lighted off his horse, and kneeling downe before him, asked pardon for his fault. Nephew (saied hee) it is I that haue done the wrong, and therefore I tolde the king that you are a better knight then I, and marualle not if I sought to proue it, Because I thought to doe it with mine honour, but I found the contrary, which from henceforth shal make me thinke the things foreshewed of you will bee accomplished so well, that the glory of your father, and the reputation by many knights in times past obtained, shall from henceforth bee extinguished, you hauing so easily ouerthrowne three of ybest knights in great Brittaine, and my selfe the fourth. What are they (said

the

the king?) My lord (said Galaor) the first that ranne was Sendale of Gonaste, the second Galuanes, the third Angriote d'estrauaulx, and my selfe hath done worse then they. Wherat the king and al the company began to laugh: And imbracing them, caused them to mount on horsebacke, riding towards London, where in the way the King praied them to tell him howe this enterprise was deuised. My Lord (saied Galaor) hauing vnderstode by the danish Gentlewoman (that my lady Oriane not long since sent vnto the Quéene, to bring her newes of your returne, and what had happened vnto you during your imprisonment) the valiant acts by you declared of my nephew Esplandian, wee conceiued such a iealousie against him, estéeming the honour you did him thereby, to procéd rather of fatherly loue then otherwise, that wée determined secretly to depart out of London to proue his force, as now you haue well séene: and to moue him therevnto, we sent the gentlewoman with the message you haue heard. Of my faith (saied the king) the deuise was good, and hath fallen out well. In this manner deuising of sundry things, hee came to Wirefleur, where the Quéen met him, praising God for his vnexpected return, and considering his trouble past, with the gréese shee had for his long absence, séeing him there safe and in good healthy, shee thought her selfe well recompenced with his presence. The next day in the morning they set forwards towards London, where the people receiued him with such signs of gladnesse, that most part of them wept for ioy to sée him, for there was neuer Prince better loued of his subiects thē he. Being there, Esplandian began to be weary of the place, longing to heare newes of Carmelle, that he had sent to Constantinople, as you haue heard before. And therefore euery day hee deuised meanes to get licence to depart from thence, pretending a cause of returning to the castle called La monraigne defendu, shewing the king what promise he had made to his companions, which if hee did not performe, they should haue cause to complaine of him, but the king would not in any sort graunt to his request, yet in the end, ouercome with much importunity, he was content, wherewith hee toke his leaue of all the court, and vpon a monday in the morning taking horse, accompanied onely

of maister Elizabeth, and Sergil his squire, hee toke his way towards the Ferme Isle, hoping to finde the great Serpent there, wherein they might imbarke themselues.

CHAP. XV.

How *Esplandian* riding towards the Ferme Isle, was assailed by a strange knight that watched him in the forrest.

ESplandian departed from the king, and hauing taken his leaue of all the court, as you heard before, toke the crookedest way hee could, through woods and forrests towards the Ferme Isle, thinking not to bee perceiued of any, that might hinder his enterprise. And hauing ridden three miles, he entered into a forrest, which hauing almost passed, hée came vnto a great riuer, whereupon the king had built a house, called Bellerose, where often times being on hunting, hee vsed to resort. And as he thought to passe the bridge, he perceiued on the other side a knight armed at all points ready to fight, that cried vnto him with a loud voice, and said: Sir knight, you must aske me leaue if you wil come ouer, for according to my promise, I haue taken vpon mee to kéepe this bridge, for the space of one whole yeare, wherefore if you thinke good, you may take some other way. With that Esplandian was much grieued, perceiuing that either of force he must fight, or séeke another passage, wherfore he would willingly haue excused himselfe, & said: Sir knight, I pray you then shew mee which way I were best to goe, for by me you shall haue no cause at this time to trouble your selfe. You must returne again to London (said he) for other passage is there none, vnlesse you will lose your horse and goe on foot. Rather thé I would doe so (said Esplandian) I will proue if I can win yours, and therewith lacing his helmet, toke his launce and road vnto the knight, who no sooner perceiued him comming, but setting

spurres

ſpurres to his horſe, ranne towards him, whereby they met ſo fiercely together, that both ỹ knights fell off their horſes, in ſuch manner, that maiſter Elizabeth and Sergil, thought verily they had ſlaine each other, but they ſtaied not long before they roſe againe, and laying hand on their ſwordes, there began betwéene them the cruelleſt and moſt daungerous battell that euer was ſéene: whereat maiſter Elizabeth much abaſhed, ſaid vnto himſelfe, God God, what may this meane, I beléeue for certain that ſome diuell of hell hath tranſformed himſelfe into humane ſhape, to deſtroy vs all. Meane time the two knights continued in moſt cruell fight, ſtill increaſing their mights, cleauing ſhields and armours, in ſuch ſort, that all the field was couered with péeces of the harneis, and died with blood that iſſued from their bodies, till at the laſt the knight of the bridge ſtept backe & ſaid vnto Eſplandian, Sir knight, take another way, and I am content to quite you of the combate, for you are the valianteſt knight that euer I dealt withall, and it ſhould diſpleaſe mee much, if by your wilfulneſſe you would be cauſe of your owne death. In good faith (ſaied he) I had done it at the firſt, had it not beene the feare I had, that you would eſtéeme me a coward, but knowing very wel that the honour of this combate cannot bee had, but onely by the death of one of vs, or both together, I will trie my fortune, till I bee no longer able to weld a ſword. Is that true (ſaid the knight:) Then let vs ſée to whom fortune will be fauourable. And therewith couering themſelues with that little of their ſhields that reſted in their hands, they began the combate crueller then before, as though all the day they had not giuen a ſtroke, ſo that after many cruel blowes with their ſwords, they cloſed together, and wraſtling long time, they ſought to caſt each other to the ground. But ſéeing the little auantage gotten thereby, they began againe to lay on with their ſwords with ſuch fury, that Sergil looked for no other but when they ſhould fall dead vpon the ground, not béeing able to iudge who would haue the victory. Whereat maiſter Elizabeth was ſo much diſpleaſed, that hee could not abſtaine from wéeping, ſaying vnto himſelfe, Alas what fortune is this, muſt the beſt knight liuing in the world, and in the flower of his age

lose his life at that time by so hard a chaunce: Cursed be the day that euer he met with him, that is the cause of so great losse. And to say truth, if God had not prouided for them, the father had slain the sonne, and the sonne the father, for the knight of the bridge was Amadis de Gaule, who being ouer curious of his sonnes glory would proue his force, and the better to doe it, the day before Esplandian toke his leaue, hee departed secretly from the court, and staied for him at the bridge, bearing an vnknowne armour, where after many attempts on either part giuen, Amadis perceiuing both their dangers, said vnto Esplandian: Knight, you see well you cannot ouercome mee, and I assure you, I neuer had to doe with any knight, that euer put mee to so great extreamity, wherefore I am content to let you passe. But not I you (saied he) vnlesse you tell me your name. I will not deny you that (saied Amadis) wherefore cause maister Elizabeth to come hether, for I thinke we haue both need of his helpe. Then Esplandian called him vnto them, meane time Amadis put off his helmet, so faint and weary, that hee was constrained to leane vnto a tree. But when Esplandian knew him, and perceiuing the fault he had committed, he cast forth a great crie, and saied: Alas wicked wretch that I am, and therewith fell vpon the ground, whereat maister Elizabeth and Amadis thinking him to bee in a sound, ranne to lift him vp, but it was not so, onely that it greeued him hee had dealt in such manner with his father, who said vnto him, sonne, although I am as sore wounded as possible may bee, without death, yet haue I not receiued so much hurt, as conceiued pleasure, perceiuing the valour I find to be in you, wherefore bee not discomforted. Notwithstanding he could not content himselfe, but cursed his owne life, being (as he said) the most vnhappy man that euer was borne of woman. And continuing in that greefe, ỹ blod in diuers places ranne out of his body, whereby he waxed faint, which maister Elizabeth perceiuing, and knowing assuredly, if remedy were not speedily had, they were both in danger of their liues, hee saied vnto them: I pray you for this time leaue off your sorrow, and let vs presently go to Wirefleur, not far from hence, for you both haue greater neede of rest, then of longer staying in

this

this place, wherewith he and Sergil set them on their horses, and with great pain brought them to the castle, where their wounds were dressed. Such was the combate betwéene the two knights as you haue heard, yet some write, that Amadis was so wounded by Esplandian, that in the end with a thrust of a launce into the right shoulder, and other blowes with his sword, hee was slaine in the field, which Oriane hearing, threw her selfe out of a window, and brake her necke. But it is not true, for they raigned after that both in Fraunce and great Brittaine, and had another sonne named Perion, and a doughter no lesse beautifull then her mother, that married Arquisil sonne to the Emperour of Rome. But I cannot conceiue from whence those lyers could inuent such a thing, if they vnderstand not by (death) the shadowes that Esplandian caused his fathers valiant acts to bee couered withall, by the light and pleasant shining of his owne, wherby his fathers were so much had in oblivion, that there was no more brute of them, then if they had neuer beene done. But to returne againe vnto our matter, you must note that newes went presently vnto the court, what had chanced to the two knights. Wherewith the king and Oriane much displeased, departed from London, & came to Windesleur, when maister Elizabeth began the second time to dresse their wounds. Whereby he perceiued them out of danger, and cured them so well, that within seuen daies after they could walke about the chamber, which put Oriane in better comfort then before, and it fell out well for her, for if her malancholy had longer indured she had for certain died at that time. And because the king had not as yet vnderstode the reason that mooued them to fight, one day when hee found Amadis in good disposition, hee praied him to tell him. In faith my lord (saied hee) I was desirous to haue the difference of our two forces knowne, being assured, that whatsoeuer chaunced thereby, it could not bee but to mine honour: for if my sonne bee a better knight then my selfe, his honour for the present time, will increase my glory past. Before God (saied the king) your enterprise was but rashly vndertaken, I pray you another time let vs leaue such youthfull partes for those that are but entring into arms. Beléeue me, and it pleaseth

your.

your grace(saied hée)I was neuer better beaten in all my life. It is no matter (saied the king) seeing you haue both escaped with your liues, now séeke meanes to bée healed of your wounds with as much spéede as you may, and from henceforth let vs war only against Harts and other wild beasts that are within this forrest, as my huntsmen haue shewed me this day.

CHAP. XVI.

How the King of Denmarke, *Garinter*, and *Manely*, succoured *Vrganda*, that certaine knights would haue slaine, because she aided the Empetors sonne of Rome.

You heard before of the aduentures of Esplandian, Ambor and Talanque, after they had receiued the order of knighthood, now you shall heare what became of Garinter king of Denmarke, and Manely, who sléeping as others did by the sound of fire trumpets that plaied on the shore, the next night they found themselues with their squires in a little barke, so farre out of al knowledge, that although they had landed they knew not where they were, and it was so darke, that they could not sée each other, till at the last they perceiued a fire not farre from thence, that moued them to goe thether, to sée if they could find any that would shew them in what country they were, therefore leauing their squires to kéepe their barke, they take their shields, and mounting vp a little hill, they perceiued a fire burning circle wise, in the middle whereof they saw a woman holding a yong child in her armes, and about the fire stood tenne knights all armed, that sought to take her, but by no meanes they could come néere her, she was so well defended by the fire. And as they went nérer vnto it, they heard one among the rest that said vnto her, Ya, thou false and accursed wretch, thy diuellish spirits and familiars can now no longer helpe thée, but at this time thou shalt surely die. And although Manely and Garinter had their helmets on their heads,

yet

yet the woman they so threatened, knew them well, calling thē and said: Help me my sonnes, and faile me not I pray you at this time. With that Manely and the king of Denmarke knew her by her voice, wherefore laying hands on their swords, they marched towards the tenne knights, wherof one of them stepped before the rest, asking them if they knew that wicked woman that had done him the greatest mischiefe that euer was. By God sir knight (said Manely) you lie in your throat, she is not wicked, but faithfuller for her part, then you for yours. Wherewith they ran each vpon other, and there began the combate of tenne knights against two, and although the match was not equall, Manely and the king of Denmarke setting their backes together, laied valiantly vpon them, yet in the end they could not haue resisted, but Vrganda playing her part, put out the fire, and taking her two knights aside, left the rest in the darke, striking each other as if Manely and the king of Denmarke had beene with them. Meane time Vrganda and her company got into the thicket of the wood, and hauing trauailed long, at the last the moone began to shine, when they were weary, whereby they determined to stay a while and rest themselues till day appeared. Meane time the two knights desired Vrganda to shewe them how shee came thether, and whether she knew the country. My good friends (said she) hauing long since learned by my art, that this little child son to the Emperour of Rome, and of the Empresse Leonor his wife, should bee stollen away by the Traitor that assailed you, who is sonne to Garadan, that Amadis (as then called the knight of the greene sword) put to death in the countrey of Bohemia, in defending the right of king Tasmor: As soone as you fell on sleepe in the great Serpent, I made al the hast I could vnto this place to succour it, according to my promise made (being in the Ferine Ile) in presence of Amadis and diuers other knights, where I arriued at so good a time when the villaines which you saw, came to a shepheards house, where a poore nurse dwelt, to whom they deliuered this little child to giue it sucke. And seeing it was time to put my enterprise in practise, I went out of my barke, and making as if I had ben robbed by certaine theeues, ranne towards

them, crying out and weeping bitterly, wherewith they all came forth to see what it might be, and perceiuing me in that manner, asked the cause of my greefe. Ha my lords (said I) It is so, that as my husband & I passed through this wood, wee met eight theeues, that slew him, and not content therewith, haue taken away my horse and my budget, wherein there is a great summe of money. Which they beleeuing to bee true, (not that they were mooued with compassion for my losse) but respecting their owne particular benefite, hoping to get a booty by them that had robbed mee, scattered themselues in companies to find them out, where they staied so long, that the shepheard and his wife went out of the house, and thinking to haue their parts, left mee alone with the child, that not long after I toke in mine armes, and went away. But as it fell out, the nurse came in, and missing the child, called to them for help, who running in great hast, followed mee so fast, (that had it not ben for night that ouertoke them) and the great fire you found about mee, I had neuer escaped their hands. And what would they haue done with this poore infant (said Manely?) You shall vnderstand (said she) that the sonne of Garadan hauing conceiued a mortal hatred againſt the Emperour, either because he could not haue the entertainement hee thought hee had deserued, or else greeued (as I thinke) that hee could not attaine vnto the Empire, as hee pretended: determined not onely to reuenge himselfe vpon this little child, but to kill the Emperour likewise if euer he haue the means. By God (said the king of Denmark) hee is a wicked and cruell hearted man, but assure your selfe that God will not permit it to be so. Neuertheleſſe I am in doubt this child will indure much woe, seeing you haue no meanes to giue it sucke. Let me alone with that (said Viganda) for I haue certain hearbes about me, with the iuice wherof I will nourish it, if need be eight daies together. What (said hee) will you then stay here so long? No (said Vrganda) for as soone as it is day I will returne vnto my boat that staieth here at the shoare. But madame (said they) what shal become of vs? for we are arriued here, not knowing who brought vs hether. But for Gods sake, if you haue heard any newes of our companions, let vs know it, and where wee

may

may goe to find them. My friends (said shee) you must first let destenie haue his course, and indure many hard aduentures, & when time serueth you shall haue your desires. And in that manner sometimes talking and sometimes sléeping, they passed the time away till day began to appeare, when they three together went to the sea side, where they entered into Vrgandas boat, wherein foure Gentlewomen and two dwarfes stated for her.

CHAP. XVII.

How Vrganda departed from the two knights, and being guarded by two dragons went vnto the Emperours court, to deliuer them their yoong sonne, for the losse whereof all the court was in an vprore.

FOr a time Vrganda stated with the two knights, not minding presently to ease the Emperours mind with the recouery of his sonne, in the end she caused them to returne vnto their barke, willing them from that time forwards to arm themselues against the assaults of fortune, although she séemed neuer so variable and vnconstant. For (said shée) therefore was ỳ order of knighthood instituted & appointed, that thereby it might appeare more excellent. And they were no sooner departed, but she set foot on land, and mounted on a palfrey with the child in her lappe, shee rode forward, with two dragons to guard her, one vpon her right hand, the other vpon the left, that bare her company till shée came to Triol, where the Emperour helde his court. And approching the Towne, she met great companies of knights that went to séeke the child, who séeing those horrible beasts casting fire out of their mouths, for feare they began to flie, whereat Vrganda smiled. At the last Florestan king of Sardinia comming that way, (hauing ridden a great compasse about to pursue Garadans sonne) and returning as then all weary & sore trauailed with his horse tyred, perceiuing the people to runne so fast, asked them the cause, wherewith they shewed him a farre

off what they had ſeene, but hee not abaſhed, went towards the dragons, thinking if it were poſſible to fight with them, and as he came neere vnto them, he knew Vrganda, and ſpurring his horſe, hee thought to ſalute her, but the more hee prickt him forwards, the more the horſe gaue backe, whereby he was conſtrained to light downe, and ſaluting her, he toke her by the hand, but the dragons vaniſhed away, whereat hee was abaſhed, which Vrganda perceiuing, ſaid vnto him: In faith ſir knight, they haue good cauſe to giue you place, knowing well the magnanimitie of your inuincible courage. And for my part, I eſteeme my ſelfe better guarded (being in your company) then I did before, wherfore I pray you leaue me not, till I haue deliuered this child vnto his mother, which I haue recouered from the villaines that had ſtolen it from her. Is it poſſible madame (ſaid Floreſtan) that the emperour ſhould receiue ſo great a pleaſure by your meanes: Shew me I pray you (if it pleaſeth you) how you procured the ſame: You ſhall know it (ſaied ſhe) when time ſerueth, till then content your ſelfe, and mounting on horſeback, I pray you bring mée to the citty of Triol. With that they rode together till they came to the Emperours court, where they found the Empreſſe halfe dead for ſorrow, but when ſhee heard the good newes Vrganda brought, her ſorrow turned to exceeding ioy. And for that the emperour being armed, was ridden out to ſeeke the child, as others did, ſhee ſent men on all ſides to certifie him thereof, hee hauing intelligence, thanked God with all his heart, and turned backe to ſée Vrganda, that told him in what manner ſhe found the child, as you haue heard before. Where wee leaue her, and returne to ſhew you of Manely and the king of Denmarke, who in y mean time were at ſea in ſo horrible a tempeſt, that they thought to haue ben drowned.

CHAP.

CHAP. XVIII.

Of the ſtrange aduentures that the king of Denmarke and Manely had, after they departed from Vrganda, and what paſtime they had with two great apes in an Iſland, where by chaunce they arriued.

After the king of Denmarke and Manely departed from Vrganda, they entered into their barke, where their two Squires ſtaied for them, and ſo imbarked, preſently hoiſed ſaile and put to ſea, the weather very peaceable and calme: but they had not ſailed long, when a contrary winde began to riſe, where with ỹ waters grew ſo high, and the ſea began to ſwell ſo bigge, that one while it ſeemed to mount vnto the ſkies, and againe to deſcend as low as the bottomeleſſe pit of hel, whereby their little barke, was oftentimes couered with water, hauing neither maſte, ſaile, nor cable, but all rent in peeces. And that which abaſhed thẽ moſt was, that night comming vpon them, it was ſo darke, they could not ſee the length of their boat, in which torment they continued for the ſpace of thirty daies together, till at the length it caſt them vpon an Iſland, where (being arriued about ſunne ſetting) they landed. Then commaunding one of their ſquires to keepe their boat, being armed at all points, they went into the Iſland to ſee if they could find any freſh water or other victuals, for they had not ſufficient in their barke to ſerue them for a weeke, at the laſt they found a goodly fountaine, ſhadowed with many great trees, whereby they ſat them downe, and putting off their helmets for to drinke, Argentron their ſquire that was with them, ſaied vnto them: If you thinke good, you ſhall ſtay here while I goe vp this high rocke, where (it may be) I ſhal find a houſe, or ſome country man that will ſhew vs in what place we are arriued: Goe (ſaied the king of Denmarke) but take heede thou looſeſt not thy ſelfe.

With that the ſquire left them, and toke his way through the wood, but he had not gone a long bowes ſhot, when he perceaued a great Beare comming towards him, wherewith hee was in ſuch feare, that with a lowd voice he cried out for helpe, and finding no other remedy, hee was conſtrained to climbe into a high trée. The knights hearing their ſquires crie, ſuppoſed he had néd of them, and with that they ranne in ſuch haſt to helpe him, that forgetting their helmets behind them, left them by the fountain, and they had not runne farre, but they eſpied the Bear climbing againſt the trée, wherein the Squire was defending himſelfe as well as he could, but the beaſt forſaking her firſt pray, ranne vnto Manely, being next vnto her, thinking at the firſt encounter to throw him on the ground, but he ſtepping aſide, gaue her ſuch a blow with his ſword, that therewith he cut off one of her eares with a péece of her iaw, but the Beare turned again, and taking him moſt fiercely about the body thought to ſtrangle him, wherwith he had almoſt loſt his breath, when the king of Denmarke came vnto her, and with one blow cut one of her legs cleane from the body, whereby the beaſt in great anguiſh forſaking her pray, fled into the thicket of the wood, and the king after her, and longer had followed, had it not ben for the waight of his armor, that wearied him ouermuch, wherefore returning againe vnto his companion, they two helpe their Squire Argenton to come downe the trée, who as yet for feare trembled like a leafe, whereat they both began to laugh, Manely aſking him if he were a cold, no (ſaid he) but I was in the greateſt feare that euer I had in all my life, or euer I hope ſhall haue againe, and ſurely I beléeue there are no other people in this Iſland, then diuels diſguiſed in ſtraunge formes, or elſe ſuch proper Gentlewomen, as ſhe that of late imbraced you ſo courteouſly, wherefore I am of this opinion, that for our better ſecurity, it were beſt for vs to ſtay by the fountain, or in our barke till the ſea bee ſomewhat paceſied. In truth thou ſaieſt well (ſaied the king of Denmarke) but in the meane time bee thou of a good courage and feare nothing, I knowe not what courage I ſhould haue (ſaied he) but I pray you for Gods ſake let vs be gone, vnleſſe you will ſée me die here. As farre as I ſée (ſaid

Manely)

Manely) thou wilt neuer die in fight, as long as thou findeſt meanes to runne away. Not if I may (ſaied Argenton) for if I ſhould, it were done but like a fole. In which manner talking together, they came vnto the fountaine, where they eſpied two old apes caſting their helmets (they had left behind them) one at the other, as lightly as if they had been at Tenniſe, whereat the two knights and Argenton laughed ſo hartely, that they were almoſt ouercome with laughter: for the apes had no ſoner ſpied them comming, but in great haſt they put the helmets on their heads, and climbing vp the trées, ſkipped from branch to branch, ſometimes vp and ſometimes down, like two tumblers. As God helpe me (ſaid Manely) I like theſe apes well, for they knew wée were ſo melancholy on the ſea, that they meant to make vs merry on land, yet I truſt they ſhall not carry away my armes without a combate. Wherewith they toke vp ſtones, and threw at them, but they turning about, grinned with their téeth, making mouths and mowes, ſometimes ſcratching their arſes. Wherewith the king of Denmarke toke ſuch pleaſure, that hee deſired Manely and Argenton to let the apes alone, and as then it began to be night. Wherefore they ſent their ſquire to fetch his companion, with the reſt of the victuals they had in their barke, becauſe the ſea roſe ſo high, that they doubted their barke would bee caſt on ſhoare, and breake in péeces, who ſtaied not long before they came againe, and after the knights had eaten of ſuch victuals as they had, they put off their armour, and ſlept till the next morning, when they awaked, finding their helmets lying by them, but not their armour, for thoſe newe men of warre had put them on ſo properly, that by their countenaunces it ſéemed they had ſome great combate to fight one againſt the other, in the top of the high elmes, whereof there were great plenty. But that ſport liked not the two knights, that were loath to die in that place for want of food, but made their account, either to put themſelues againe vnto the mercy of the waues, or elſe goe further into the Iſland to ſéeke meat. Wherefore making bowes of wood, which they ſtringed with their garters, and cutting arrowes to them, ſharpe at the points, they ſhot at thoſe wondy champions ſo long,

that

that at the last they compelled them to skip downe, whereby they toke them, and pulled off their armor, which done, they let them goe, not doing them any hurt.

CHAP. XIX.

How Frandalo the Pyrat sailing on the sea, was by tempest of weather, cast vpon the Island where the king of Denmarke and *Manely* were, against whom he fought, and what happened vnto them.

YOu heard before how the king of Denmarke and Manely were by fortune cast vpon the isle of apes, where their boat was cast away, they having not victuals longer then for two dates, but God holp them, for the next day as they were vpon the top of one of the highest rocks, they perceiued a ship at sea, which being driuen with the wind, not long after was cast vpon the shore hard by the place where they were. Wherwith the two knights went downe to speake with them that were aboord, and calling with a lowd voice vnto them, there appeared a man vpon the hatches, that asked them what they would. We pray you in curtesie (said Manely) shew vs who is the maister of your bark, it is (said the man) a great lord, that before you escape, will make you know how he vseth to hãdle such youths as you are. And though he doe so (said Manely) we are now in such necessitie, that it shall please vs well to indure the worst that he can doe vnto vs, to bee rid out of this hunger which we now indure, and still beginneth to assaile vs, wherefore cause vs to speake with him, & if it please you, let vs know his name. Those that haue fallē into his hands (said the man) call him the diuell of the sea, although hee is well known by the name of Frandalo, for by his valor hee hath brought in subiection the greatest part of all this sea, pilling and taking all hee findeth, and by force of weather hath beene constrained to put into this Iland, his other vessels being scattered to farre

aboord,

heare him named. Notwithstanding one thing ouercommeth him and vanquisheth his most couragious heart: which is your grace my good lady (said she) whom he loueth, honoureth, and desireth to serue while life indureth. But knowing not if his seruice would be accepted of, he durst not presume to come himselfe in person to offer you the same: although (by him that next after your selfe, may most commaund him) hee had expresse charge to present it vnto you, as bound thereto by promise. And to the end you may giue credite to my wordes, hee sendeth you this ring, which is the very same you gaue to Amadis, being in this Court, if your grace can call it to remembrance. With that Leonorine tooke it in her hand, and beholding it long time, she saied vnto the Gentlewoman: Truly this ring was sometimes mine, which I gaue vnto the best knight nowe liuing in the world. In faith (said the Gentlewoman) a better knight then hée hath sent it you againe, and that is my lord Esplandian his sonne. I neuer sawe him, that I know of (said she:) True it is, maister Elizabeth told me of a yoong Gentleman sonne to the knight with the greene sword, that not long since was made knight in the Ferme Isle, Vrganda being present, and the next day was carried away in a strange ship, of whome as then they could heare no newes. Madame (said Carmelle) I know not who the knight with the greene sword may be, but he whereof I shew you hath had such a beginning in armes, that if it be your pleasure to heare it, you will bee abashed thereat: tell it I pray you (said the Princesse. But as the Gentlewoman began to speak, one brought the Princesse newes the Emperour her father was come from hunting, and asked for her: wherewith shee knowing what pleasure her father would take to heare newes, tooke Carmelle by the hand, and led her into the Emperours chamber, and doing reuerence vnto him, she said. My lord, here is a strange Gentlewoman, (that can tell you newes of the good knight with the greene sword, and of his sonne likewise, of whome maister Elizabeth made a long discourse, and she hath ben conducted hether by two knights of the Ferm Isle, whereof one of them hath fought with Frandalo, and hath presented him vnto me, and staying your returne, I haue sent them

into a chamber to refresh themselues. Doughter (said the Emperour) both they and the Gentlewoman are most heartely welcome. My lord (saied Carmelle) God preserue your grace: & without further honour vnto him, shee stode still and held her peace, whereat all the company began to smile, thinking that want of ciuilitie caused her to forget her selfe. But not long after they changed their opinion, Carmelle beginning to speak in this maner. My lord, I haue beene nourished all my life among the best knights liuing in ỹ world, yet let not your grace find it strange, if at the first (being in your maiesties presence) I haue vsed so little honour to your grace, whereby your Gentlemen should haue cause to laugh at mee: For that want of vnderstanding howe to behaue my selfe in presence of so great a Prince is not the cause thereof, but onely the ioy I conceiue in my selfe, to bee a seruant vnto him, whom I more esteéme then any man liuing: and I only hold for my lord and maister, not knowing any worthier then he. And if it pleaseth your grace to know who it is, together with the cause of my arriuall in this countrey, I pray you send for the two knights that brought mée hether, & I will shew such things, whereat (it may be) your grace will be abashed. Gentlewoman (saied the Emperour) you shall therein doe mee great pleasure. Wherewith hee commanded a Gentleman to goe fetch the two straunge knights, who comming into the Emperours presence, hauing kissed his handes, and he welcommed them in courteous manner, he willed two chaires to bee brought, wherein hee set them, being a Prince that alwaies entertained straungers with great honour, especially if hee knew them to be of forraine countries. That done, all the knights, Gentlewomen, and ladies went nére to heare the Gentlewomans spæch, when shee turning vnto the Emperour, said in this manner: My lord, I thinke your grace hath long before this time knowne the castle, called La montaigne defendu, the which (during the life of valiant Charidagne, and since that time) you and the king of Turkie haue diuers times assailed to winne, although in vaine, it hath alwaies been so well defended by the Giants Matroco and Frerion, yet in one day a knight alone hath conquered it, & slain the two giants,

whereof

whereof I spake, with their vncle Arcalaus and Argantes the Porter of the same. And which is more, hath deliuered king Luisart, that lay prisoner therein, no man knowing it, for hée had ben surprised in great Brittaine, and secretly brought from thence by Arcabonne lady of the castle: The which lady falling in despaire, threw her selfe out of a window into the sea. And to the end your grace may knowe how all hath happened: it is so (sated shee) that Arcabonne (who as then I serued) hauing intelligence of her brothers imprisonment in the Ferme Isle, departed expressely from the castle, hoping to deliuer him, but before she got thether, he was set at liberty. Notwithstanding (she being loth to lose her labour) to bee reuenged thereof, did so much by her art, that she got king Luisart (as then hunting in the forrest) into her tent, the king thinking to succour a Gentlewoman, that as hee thought a knight would haue defloured: where he was so cruelly inchaunted, that losing all his sences, hee was transported without any mans knowledge into the dungeon of the castle, where my lord and maister found him. And continuing her discourse, she shewed in what manner Esplandian was made knight, and séeking to find the king, hee was carried by the boat of the great serpent into the Isle of the Enchauntresse, where he conquered the shining sword, and after that brought in a little barke to the foote of the rocke called La mort Ingne defendu, the spéech hee had with the Hermite, the combates with Argantes, Matroco, and Frerion, the desperateneese of Arcabonne, the determination she had to kil him, when she found him sléeping in the hermitage, ỹ loue wherwith she was sodainly surprised. And lastly, the means how king Luisart knew him: for my lord (said she) he is son of Amadis his son, and of the Princesse Oriane. And because at his departure frō his father, he gaue him in cōmandement to come & serue the Princes Leonorine your doughter, with the other ladies, according to his promise, he hath expressely sent me hether, humbly beséeching thē to pardon the slow performance of his fathers will: but to amend his fault committed, he will shortly be here to fulfill his charge as long as pleaseth thē. Gentlewomā (said ỹ Emperor) I knew his father for one of ỹ best knights liuing in ỹ world: notwithstāding

you haue shewed such strange things of his son, that I certainely beléeue he farre surpasseth him. He shall bée heartely welcome when he commeth, but if my daughter will follow my counsell, she shall not pardon his long absence till he come in person to desire the same: and let him bee assured hee shall not depart so soone from hence as Amadis hath done. At the least, we will make him so good cheare, and my doughter likewise, to whome I giue expresse commandement to doe it, that hee shall not haue occasion to dislike our company. Mean time the two knights shal remain with vs for pledges, assuring you I will giue them all the honor and good intertainement that I can deuise. My lord (said shee) the desire they had to vnderstand the things declared to your grace, hath caused them for to come hether, with whome by great good fortune I met, for Frandalo, whom he (pointing to Manely) hath most valiantly conquered, had taken mee prisoner, not farre off from the place where I first imbarked: but as fortune would, there rose so great a storme at sea, that all his vessels seperated one from the other, his ship was cast vpon an Island, wherein (by the same tempest) these two knights not long before arriued. And with that shee shewed what speech they had with Frandalo, and what passed betwéene them: Wherefore my lord, acquiting my promise made vnto them, I haue at large declared the aduentures of the good knight their companion. In faith (saied the Emperour) they haue shewed themselues right valiant knights, and made a worthy present vnto my doughter, for which I giue them thankes. My Lord (said Manely) wee humbly beseech your grace, that from henceforth you will accept his seruice, for it is his only desire, as he hath promised vs. Is that possible (saied the Emperour?) For he is the vildest villaine that euer lined on earth, and hath more wronged my subiects then euer any did. My lord (said the king of Denmarke) he will become a new man, and therefore my companion did present him to your daughter, which promised for to saue his life, which we beseech your grace likewise to performe. I am content to doe it (said the Emperour) at your requests, though he deserues it not. While they sat talking, Gasillés that staied in the forrest to looke vnto the hounds, entred into

the

the hal, and presently knew Manely & the king of Denmark, hauing seene thē in great Brittain before they were made knights, wherewith hee asked when they came thether, and being made acquainted with the Gentlewomans message, he asked her if she knew the names of the other two that stated in the castle: for seeing they are armed (saied he vnto Manely) in the like armes, it is certaine they are of your company. That is true (saied the Gentlewoman) for they were all made knights together, the one called Ambor, the other Talanque, I know them wel (said Gastilles) for Ambor is the sonne of Angriote d'estrauaulx, one of the best knights in the country of great Brittaine. In truth (said Manely) wee were in great care how to finde them out, but seeing they are in the castle called La montaigne defendu, if it pleaseth the Emperour, we will goe vnto them. I am content (said he) so you promise mee not to depart before eight daies are past. My lord (said they) wee are at your commandement. Being dinner time, the Emperor rose vp and went [illegible] the hall with ỹ two knights, and the Princesse Leonorine [illegible] Gentlewoman with her, as desirous to heare further [illegible] of the knight Esplandian.

CHAP. XXII.

What passed betweene the Prin[illegible] Leonorine and Carmelle, touching the message she had brou[illegible]

YOu heard before howe Carmelle in presence of the Emperour, shewed the great desire shee had to slay Esplandian, and when shee thought to doe it, she was so ouercome with loue, that during her life, shee determined not to loue any other, which the Princesse Leonorine (that already pretended part in him) had not forgotten, but returned with Carmelle into her chamber: with a smiling countenance shee said vnto her. Is it possible Gentlewoman (said she) you louing the knight with the black armes so well as you report, that you could leaue his company so soone? Madame

(saied shee) I was presently giuen to vnderstand hee loueth another: wherewith I comforted my selfe, iudging his hart like vnto mine own, that he could not chuse but sometimes feele the like swéet passion he caused mée indure. What hope then resteth (said the Princesse) vnto you? The same (said shée) I know to be farre different betweene him and mee, for when I am in presence, beholding the excellency of his person, I then receiue some comfort, which to him is vtterly denied, séeing that already hee indureth for her sake, that as yet he neuer saw, and that (madame said she) is your owne person, as I said before. Surely (said the Princesse) his loue is very strange, the foundation whereof I cannot well conceiue. Madame (said Carmelle) I feare ere it be long, hee will not be able to indure the great extreamitie wherein he now is fallen, onely for your sake specially, if at his arriuall here, hee find himselfe reiected of your grace, hauing no desire, but to fulfill your pleasure, whereby he may account himselfe your own, estéeming it the greatest fauour [illegible] hee can haue. In good faith (said she) I will not refuse [illegible] for all a thing, nor a greater, as occasion serues, but I pray you [illegible]née why hee calleth himselfe the blacke knight. Therefore [illegible]bone (said Carmelle) onely that vpon a night as king Lisa[illegible]alanque and Ambor, were all allépe in one chamber, they heard so pleasant a sound of musicke from the sea, that they [illegible]out of their beds to heare it, and it was so darke they could [illegible]e, but when day appeared, they espied the great Serpent at [illegible]auen, whereat they were so glad, that descending downe the hill, they went vnto the shoare, where they perceiued a Gentlewoman in a little boat comming to land, bearing in her armes a packe couered with blew Taffata: which from her mistresse Vrganda shée presented to Esplandian, saying vnto him, Sir Knight, my mistresse sendeth you these armes, and willeth you by mee to leaue the same shee gaue you, when you were in sadnesse, and to arme your selfe with these, that beare the deuise of her, which at this day is the beautifullest creature liuing in the world (as Amadis your father well did witnesse, when he set the crowne vpon her head.) And for ỹ loue of her your power and courage shall so much increase, that your

renowme

renowme shall spread throughout the world, your mind mooued with so amorous a passion, that many times you shall desire death. And opening the packet, she toke forth a white armour all set with crownes of gold, inriched with Pearles and Diamonds most sumptuous to behold. Which Esplandian (with harty thanks vnto Vrganda and the messenger) receiued willingly. This as I thinke madame (said Carmelle) is the cause why he hath ben called the blacke knight, but I suppose seeing hee hath chaunged his deuise, he will likewise change his name. The Princesse Leonorine knew thereby, that all these things were saied as touching her, wherewith shee felt an alteration in her mind, for that loue by little and little began to burne her heart, which shee had willingly couered, but Carmelle by the changing of her colour, which sometimes wared pale and sometimes red, the sundry motions wherewith swéet loue did pas[illegible] heart, perceiued it all well in such manner, [illegible] able to abstaine from sighing, as if she had [illegible]id, I pray God this beginning may prou[illegible]ith Carmelle perceiuing her maisters [illegible], the better to encrease the desire of the lady, [illegible]adame, he hath commaunded me not to stay long [illegible] till my returne he doth continue in exceeding paine, and [illegible] shall bee [illegible] hee receiue no comfortable answere from you[illegible]. Gentlewoman (saied the Princesse) I were the most vngratefull Princesse liuing on the earth if I should vse so, but tell him I pray you from me, that I giue him hearty thankes for the courtesies hee offereth me e by you, and when he once arriueth here, hee shall some know ỳ great good will I beare him. As also that I hold him for my knight, for proofe whereof, you shall on my behalfe present him with this hairelace, as being the first present that Grimanaise my grandfather gaue to his Appolidon, being but her louer. Wherewith taking a cloth of tissue from her head, she vnbound her hair, and deliuered the hairelace vnto her, and sending for a gowne imbroidered all with crownes of gold, gaue it her likewise. But (saied shee) because the two knights haue promised the Emperour not to depart from hence till eight daies are past, you shall stay for them,

them, and all together return vnto the castle called La montaigne defendu, which she willingly graunted.

CHAP. XXIII.

How newes was brought vnto the Emperour, that Armato king of Turkie had besieged the castle of La montaigne defendu, and of the charge he gaue Frandalo with Manely and the king of Denmarke to goe succour it.

IN manner as you heard before, the two knights of the Ferme Isle and Carmelle, staied at Constantinople, where there [illegible] certaine shippe, that brought a [illegible] message from Talanque and [illegible] certefie the Emperour, that [illegible] king of Turkie, aduertised of the [illegible] had besieged the castle, La montaigne [illegible] desiring him to send some aid, other [illegible] constrained to yéeld the same, not hauing victuals nor [illegible] to defend it. The Emperor hearing those newes, and considering the truce betweene him and the king of Turkes, and also that hee had not any men prepared for to send, neither Gally, Galliace, ship nor Brigandine ready for the sea, stood somewhat in amase. But considering with himselfe of what importaunce that Frontier castle might bee vnto him if the enemy should obtaine it, he determined by all meanes to hinder him from the same. Wherefore calling for Frandalo, and taking him aside, he said vnto him: Well Frandalo, you are now my prisoner, and it lieth in me either to hang you like a théefe, or deliuer you with greater riches then euer you possessed, which I promise you to doe, if from this time forwards you sweare to bee my loiall subiect, and faithfully to serue me when you are imploied. My lord (saied hee) I beséech your grace wholly to forget the faults by me committed to your Maiestie, sweating of [illegible] (if it pleaseth you to pardon my offence) you shal from hence forth

find

find a seruant of me, that in time will make you knowe by effect how much I esteeme this fauour at your hands. Will you doe it (said the Emperor) I and it pleaseth your grace (said he.) What is become of your Naule (saied the Emperour) that in times past you held vpon the sea: My lord (saied Frandalo) the winds & tempests that lately happened on the sea, hath so scattered them, that I can heare no newes of them: Neuertheless, I am of opinion, they may easily be brought together, wherewith I will doe your grace seruice, if you thinke good. Doe it then (saied the Emperor) and that with spéed, for I haue determined to raise the greatest army that euer hath been séene, therewith to driue Armato king of Turkie out of the Frontiers of my Empire, who not long since hath besieged La montaigne defendu. And while my forces are preparing, you with the two knights that of late came hether, shall goe before, and vsing meanes to assemble your men, shall in the meane time gi[illegible] s somewhat to doe. My lord (said Frandalo) God gi[illegible] doe you faithful seruice: then be you ready in the mo[illegible] to depart from hence, wherewith hee toi[illegible] bee rigged and prepared with al things [illegible] lanely and the king of Denmarke, he told th[illegible] ed newes from Talanque and Ambor touching t[illegible] montaigne defendu, and what hee had determined to do[illegible] concerning their relæfe, shewing them what had passed betweene him and Frandalo touching the same. Wherefore my good frends (saied hee) because I well perceiue the great desire you haue to sée your companions, me thinketh it were good you imbark your selues with him, who goeth before to aduertise them of the aide I meane to send them. My lord (saied Manely) it is our whole desires. In the morning (said the king) you shal haue your bark ready and furnished with all things necessary, and some other of my ships likewise to second you, attending the great army my selfe dooth meane to bring. But before their departure hee gaue them diuers rich presents, which they refused, contenting themselues with the honor and courteous intertainement hee had already giuen them, and taking their leaue of all the court, especially of the Princesse

Leonorine, they took sea, and Carmelle with them, hoping to haue her maisters great good will for the good newes she brought him. But before we passe further to shew you what became of them, I thinke it not out of our hystory to leaue Esplandian no longer at Miresleur, but shew you what became of him, being healed of his wounds.

CHAP. XXIIII.

How Esplandian healed of his wounds, tooke leaue of king Luisart and all the court to goe vnto the Ferme Isle, where hee left the great Serpent, wherein (accompanied onely of maister Elizabeth and Sergil) he imbarked himselfe to returne vnto the castle of *La montaigne defendu*.



Amadis & the Knights did Esplandian stay [illegible] after the dangerous combat [illegible] him and Amadis his father, be[illegible] fully healed. But in [illegible] the [illegible]nse of the king & others [illegible] and him, he took his way [illegible] the Ferme Isle, accompanied of [illegible] Elizabeth & Sergil his squire. And trauelling without any aduenture worthy the rehearsing, at the last they arriued at the pallace of Apolidon, at the foote whereof they found the great Serpent, wherein presently they imbarked themselues, but shee remoued not from thence till midnight following, when she began to saile so swiftly, that the next day they were out of sight of any land, in which manner they continued for seuen daies together, the eight day they discouered a goodly country, & hauing a calme wind, the Serpent put a shore, which Esplandian perceiuing, determined to land and walke along the coast, til he found some one or other, that could shew him in what countrey hee had arriued. And desiring maister Elizabeth not to depart thence before hee came againe, hee, Sergil, and their two horses entered into a little boat, and taking land, they entered so

far

far into the countrey, that they came to a little hill, at the foote whereof they perceiued a goodly meddow, and certaine houses, whereunto they went. And they had not ridden farre, but a lacquie that kept foure horses, whereof one was a Bay, and greater then the rest, came vnto Esplandian, and speaking to him in the Almaine tongue, asked him why he went to his own mischiefe: Esplandian that in his youth had learned that language, asked him wherefore: Because (said the lacquie) that at the next house my maister is newly alighted, and is at dinner, and if he sée you, you die therefore: Thy maister (saied Esplandian) And what doth he: He vseth (saied he) to kill or put in prison farre brauer fellowes then your selfe: wherefore if you will beléeue me, you shal returne againe, if you mean not to spéed as I haue told you. But Esplandian staying not, passed forward till he came vnto the doore, where he espied a Giant set at dinner, and foure squires all bareheaded waiting on the bord. [illegible] soone as the Giant saw him, hee rose vp, and leaning on [illegible], said vnto him: Thou vnhappy wretch, who hath sent thee [illegible] my presence, armed as thou art: By my great [illegible] must néeds say thou art a fole, or else art weary [illegible] hether to mee, and put off thine armour because thou shalt not haue so much paine to go on foot to thy lodging that is prepared for thée. Forwards you villaines said he vnto his Squires, [illegible] off his horse, and carry him to his fellows. Wherewith one of them (thinking to play the diligent seruant) ranne vnto Esplandian, to serue him for a Squire: but (whether Esplandian was offended, or for that hee held the left stirrop in stead of the right) hée gaue him such a blow on the face with his Gantelet, that hee felled him to the ground: whereat the Giant was in such a rage, that he scarse had the patience to arme himselfe to bee reuenged. Wherefore sending to fetch his great Bay horse, mounted thereon. Mean time Esplandian lacing his helmet, toke his sword in hand, staying for his enemy that ceased not to threaten him, who staied not long before he came, bearing a great launce vpon his thigh, and so great a cimitere hanging at his saddle bow, ý a straunge man would haue much adoe to lift it vp. But as you sée a Cocke holding vp his

head, and ſtanding ready to receiue another Cocke wherewith he fighteth, ſo Eſplandian hauing felt the iniury hee had receiued at the Giants hands, ſéeing him approch, began to ſhake his leg, ready for to charge his enemy. But the Giant called him and ſaid, Vaſſaile, Content thy ſelfe with the honour thou haſt already gotten, by putting me in ſo great choler, that without any regard I haue taken armes againſt ſo vile and wretched a thing as thou art: Flie then from hence without conſtraining me to do thée any hurt, otherwiſe thou art moſt ſure of death, for twenty knights hardier then thy ſelfe, cannot once remoue me. Eſplandian hearing his great brags, made no account thereof, but in mockery ſaid vnto him. Thoſe thou haſt already ſlaine, can neuer hurt thée, but I that come for to reuenge them, hope before that wee depart to ſend thy ſoule vnto the diuell, to whome thou haſt commended it ſo often, although it were much better for thée to take the counſell thou haſt giuen me, and ſhun thine own miſſortune, being well aſſured, that in thy great miſhapen body there reſteth nothing but a [illegible] ſeruile heart, that cauſeth thée to ſpeake in ſuch ſort a[illegible] haſt thou preſently ſee (ſaid the Giant) and [illegible], ranne towards Eſplandian, who did the like againſt him: But the Giant miſſed his blow, ſo did not Eſplandian, for with the force of his blow he made the Giant double his body, in ſuch ſort, that his Gaule brake in his body, and ranne out at his mouth, wherewith hee preſently died. They that beheld it were thereat abaſhed, ſpecially the Giants Squires, who preſently began to flie, but they had not run farre, when Eſplandian ouertooke them, threatning to ſlay them if they would not ſhewe him the place where their maiſter kept his priſoners, which they promiſed to do. And leading him along by the foot of the hill from whence hee had deſcended, they came into a narrow way full of ſtones, where ſtood a watch of twenty men all armed, each man with a hatchet in his hand to defend the paſſage. When the captain of that band perceiued the giants ſquires comming towards them, hée aſked thē where they found that vnhappy fellow, and ſaying ſo, thought to lay hands vpon Eſplandians bridle, but with a blow of his ſword hee cut his arme

in

in sunder, wherewith the rest set all vpon him. But in short time he dealt so well among them, that hée laid most part of them dead vpon the ground. But he had so many men about him, that in the end his horse was slaine, and he in danger to be ouerthrown. Yet hee behaued himselfe so valiantly, and with so great a courage, that hee remained victor, his enemies flying as fast as possibly they might: and among the rest, the laquis that he found kéeping the foure horses, who sauing himselfe in a vaut, cried with a loud voice and saied, Come forth my lord, come forth, your sonne Bramato is slaine, and all our companions likewise. With that there appeared a great old Giant with a long white beard, who séeing Esplandian with his sword bloody in his hand, and most of his men lying dead about him, he cast out a great sigh and said, O immortall Gods, wherein haue I so much offended you, that you should suffer my only sonne and all my men to be slaine in such manner by this one knight: But I hope your wraths wil not be so much increased against me, as that you will not giue me leaue to be reuenged on him. And as hee vttered those words, beeing couered with his shield, hee went vnto Esplandian, and holding his sword in hand, stroke him flatling with the same vpon the arme, in such maner that he was astonished: and with the force of the blow the sword sliding downe vpon a stone, brake in three péeces, wherewith Esplandian stepped to him, and with great dexterity stroke him so fiercely on the face, that the blood in great abundance ran out of his forehead. Whereat the Giant was in such a rage, that casting downe his shield, toke the péece of his sword in both his hands, and with all his force stroke at Esplandian that stept aside, and perceiuing the Giants arme comming towards him, with one blow cut off his hand, whereby his sword fell downe. Neuertheless he séemed not abashed, but imbracing Esplandian with his left arme, thought to crush the breath out of his body, but it happened otherwise, for as hee held him, Esplandian hauing his right arme at libertie, thrust his sword into the Giants body, wherewith he died. Thē calling Bramatos three squires that he brought thether to shew him the prisoners, hee asked where they were: My lord said one of them, on that side the vaut is the two Giants

lodgings, that you haue slaine, and vnder it are the prisoners that you seeke in a most darke prison aboue a hundred paces long, and but two paces broad, whereby the prisoners (in great number) haue no meanes to rest themselues, beeing constrained to stand vpright for the narrownesse of the place. Goe before (said Esplandian) with that the squire went forward, and Esplandian followed after, and they had not gone long, but they entred into a goodly pallace, and going lower, hee heard the lamentable voices of the poore prisoners dying for want of food, whereat he toke such compassion, that the teares ranne downe his eies, asking the squire for the keies: there they hang (said he) vpon a naile. Open the doore (said Esplandian) which he presently did, wherein they entred, and Esplandian calling the poore wretches that lamented, saied vnto them. My good friends, come all forth, and thanke God for your liberties. You may well iudge if they were glad to heare those newes, for that some of them had remained therein aboue thirtie yeares together, being in all twenty Gentlewomen, thirtie squires, and fiftie knights, among the which Esplandian knewe Gandalin and Lazinde, who by euill fortune (after the conquest of Sansuegue) trauailing the country, were met by the Giants, and kept in prison with the rest, where they indured great miserie.

CHAP. XXV.

How Esplandian commanded the prisoners he had deliuered to goe vnto Constantinople, there to thank the Princesse Leonorine the Emperours doughter, keeping only Gandalin and Lazinde with him.

THe Giants slaine, and ỳ prisoners set at liberty, Esplandian that as yet had not taken off his helmet, not long after made himselfe knowne to Gandalin and Lazinde, ỳ were no lesse abashed to see him in so straunge a place, then wondered at the great Prowesse he had shewed for their deliuery. It was then about sunneselting, and Esplandian had neither eat nor dronke of all that day, wherefore hee determined not

to

to depart thence till the next day in the morning, for hee found great store of victuals in the place: Commanding Sergil with one of the squires to go seeke the Bay horse he left at the house where hee slew Bramato, for his owne was slaine, which they presently brought vnto him, passing the night in the Giants house with the best victuals they could finde. The next day in the morning Esplandian called the prisoners that he had deliuered, asking them what they meant to doe: Sir Knight (saied they) wee are wholly bent to doe as pleaseth you. Then my friends (said he) you shal go to Constantinople, and there giue thankes vnto the Princesse Leonorine for the grace it hath pleased God to giue you by means of a knight that belongeth vnto her. And if shee asketh you my name, tell her only what manner of armes I beare, shewing her that I willed you to submit your selfe vnto her mercy. In faith (saied Gandalin) my companion and I were determined not to leaue your company so soone, but seeing it is your pleasure, wee are content to doe it. You and he (said Esplandian) shall keepe mee company till you meane to trauaile further, the rest shall doe as I required them. Sir Knight (saied hee) that shewed him the prison, they shall finde within the house all the furnitures and other things that were taken from them: shew them where they be (said Esplandian.) Whereunto he willingly obayed, which done, they all left the Giants house, the prisoners taking the way towards Constantinople, and Esplandian with Gandalin and Lazinde, armed at all points, went towards maister Elizabeth that stayed for them in the great Serpent, and as they were about halfe a mile from the Giants house, they met a knight all armed with two squires attending on him, who in courteous manner saluting Esplandian and his company, asked them what countrey men they were. Sir knight (said Esplandian) wee are all of great Brittaigne. Alas (said he) can you tell me any newes touching a thing that hath greeued me full sore: What is that (saied Esplandian) can you tell mee (saied hee) what is become of king Loisare? For I haue ben certified of a truth that hee is lost, not knowing where, how, nor for what cause. And for my part I sweare vnto you, I haue already sought for him in diuers countries, and can

heare

heare no newes at all, and I am determined neuer to leaue trauailing before he be found againe, if it be possible for mortal man todoe it. You are bound therevnto (saide Esplandian) séeing hee deserueth it, as you knowe right well: Nevertheless if it pleaseth you to put off your helmet, and make you knowne vnto vs, that haue ben bred and nourished in his house, I assure you wee will satisfie your mind so wel as touching him, that you cannot chuse but like it. My lords (saied hee, putting off his helmet) I am Norandel his sonne. When Esplandian and the rest perceiued that, they made themselues knowne vnto him, imbracing each other most curteously. Ha my lord (saide Norandel) I pray you for Gods cause, if you know any thing touching the king, hide it not from me. Uncle (saied Esplandian) about a moneth hence I left him at Mirefleur in good health God bee thanked, making good cheare: shewing him in what maner hée had deliuered him out of prison, with all that passed touching the same. I maruaile then (saide Norandel) what aduenture brought you hether. By my soule (saied Esplandian) that can I not well tell, only that I was brought hether by the great Serpent which I left at the sea side, wherein maister Elizabeth staieth for me. Then hee shewed him how hee departed from the court, his arriuall in the Ferme Isle, his imbarking to take sea, and what time they were at sea before they discouered any land, till in the end (saied hee) we espied this country, where Sergil and I toke land, in good time for Gandalin and Lazinde, as hereafter they may shew you. But you (saied hee to Norandel) tell me of your faith, how was it your chance in so good time to méet with vs? In truth (saied Norandel) the peace made betwéene Amadis and the king, I departed from the court to séek some strange aduentures that commonly are found in this country of Almaigne, where I had no soner arriued, but I had certaine newes of my fathers absence, whereat I was so grieued, that to find him out I haue trauailed the countries of Denmark, Poland, Russia, Sweathland, Hungarie, and all this country euen vnto this place, where it is said there dwels two giants, who as they are all of one nature, exercise innumerable cruelties against those they méete, the yonger of them waiting continually

about

about this place for such as passe this way. And therefore when I saw you first, I thought one of you three to be the Giant, thinking to fight with him, or lose my life therefore: which I wil yet doe if you let me passe. By God (saied Gandalin) you lost your labour seeking for the king, so shall you likewise doe if you take this enterprise in hand: Wherefore (saied Norandel,) Because (saied he) you see him here in presence that easeth you of that burthen. With that he shewed him in what manner Esplandian had fought with the Giants, and how he, Lazinde, and diuerse others were prisoners in their house, from whence Esplandian had deliuered them. Before God (saied Norandel) the newes liketh mee wel, for I neuer thought in long time any such aduenture would haue happened vnto him, not knowing he had receiued the order of knighthood. You see it is so (saied Esplandian) and maister Elizabeth can tell you more, if it pleaseth you to goe with vs. Let vs goe then (said Norandel) for I would gladly see him: With that they rode towards the sea, till they espied the great Serrent, wherein they imbarked themselues: where Norandel, Gandalin, and Lazinde, vnderstood by maister Elizabeth what had happened to Esplandian from the day hee receiued the order of knighthood. And although Norandel determined with all spéed to return into great Brittaigne, yet hee chaunged his mind when hee heard so strange and maruailous newes of his nephew Esplandian, to whō he said: My lord, séeing fortune hath brought vs so well together, I pray you let me not leaue your company till some occasion bee ministred vnto vs. Uncle (saied Esplandian) I am content, and I pray you let it be so. In that manner they passed the rest of the day in the great Serpent, minding the next day because they stirred not to take land againe to see if they could finde any more aduentures: And they had scarse fallen asléepe, but the Serpent began of it selfe to saile forward so swiftly, that by sunne rising they had lost the sight of any land, not ceasing for to saile fiue daies together before they espied land: the seuenth day when the sunne began to shine, it staied at the Isle Saint Mary, which maister Elizabeth presently knew, as hauing ben there before with Amadis de Gaule, when he fought with Landriaque: wherefore he saied

vnto the knights. In gods faith, I remember that once as I trauailed on the sea with my lord Amadis, wee were cast vpon this Iland by so great a tempest, that we thought verily to haue bëen drowned. And if then at sea wee had great feare of death, bëing landed, our feare did more increase, and that with so good cause, that I cannot chuse but tremble to remember it. What (saied Esplandian?) Can a danger so long time past brëd so great a feare as you seëme to haue? Sir (saied maister Elizabeth) some men to hide the truth, make a great matter of a small, but if you had seën as much as I then saw, and that which as yet you may behold, if it pleaseth you to goe where I was once, you shall find that I haue no lesse occasion, and there is Gandalin that can witnesse it as wel as I. I pray you bring vs thether (said Esplandian) with that they caused the horses to be vnshipt, and going to land, they mounted vp the Iland, til they came to the castle where Amadis staied certain daies to be healed of his wounds, where they found a knight that kept it for the Emperour, who being aduertised by maister Elizabeth what knights they were hee had brought thether, bad them heartely welcome, offering them all the pleasure he could shew, but they staying not there, went forwards to the place where Amadis fought with Landriaque, where the Emperour had erected both their Images so like vnto them, ỹ there wanted only life to expresse the same: Which maister Elizabeth shewed vnto the knights, and to the end (said he) you beleeue mee better another time, I pray you behold well the forme of this great diuell, who before my lord Amadis arriued had vtterly destroied this most fertile Iland. And therewith hee shewed them from point to point what had passed touching the same, as you haue heard at large set downe in the third booke of this our hystorie, whereat they were all abashed, especially to think how Landriaque could bee slaine or ouercome by one knight alone. For although this image were but a senceless thing, yet it made thē abashed, which hauing long time beheld, and visiting other places worthy memory, they returned to the great Serpent, which presently departed from the Isle, and with a good winde, in fiue daies after arriued within half a mile of Constantinople, where

it

it began to cast forth fire in so furious manner, that the saylers and others that perceiued it, fled all away, doubting the fury of that monster, wherewith the Cittizens were in such a feare, that newes was brought vnto the Emperour, who as then was talking with the ladies, whom he led vnto the towers of his pallace to see what it might be, when they perceiued the great Serpent, and the sea raging so sore about it, that it seemed a gulfe of fire, wherewith they were in such a feare, and the Emperour likewise, that he cõmanded al men to be armed, fearing it would come into the Towne, and so destroy them al. But Gastilles that had seene it oftentimes, assured the Emperour that it was ỹ ship of the knight Esplandian, which Vrganda brought first into great Brittaigne. And to the end my lord (saied hee) you shall not doubt thereof, if it pleaseth you I will goe see if the sonne of Amadis be there, and bring him vnto you. Doe so I pray you (saied the Emperour.) With that Gastilles went vnto the Hauen, entring into a Gally that hee found ready to put to sea, commanding the maister thereof to row vnto the great Serpent, but whatsoeuer hee could say, the maister would not stirre one foote, till such time hee threatned him with feare of being hanged. Wherefore hoising vp his anker, the company began to row forward, but it was impossible for them to come neare the Serpent by a good bow shot, and withall the sea it was so hie, that the waues cast them backe againe into the Hauen with so great a force, that the Gally was in danger to bee cast away. Which the Princesse Leonorine perceiuing, (who till then thought assuredly Esplandian had expresselly come thether for to see her) began to despaire of her good hope, and making her complaint, saied vnto her selfe: Alas monster, ship, Gally, or what vessell soeuer thou art, wherefore art thou now so cruell vnto me, in not suffering him that is within thée to land at this our Hauen, to the end mine eies might enioy his presence, but rather as if thou haddest conceiued a iealousie towards vs, thou vsest all meanes possible to hinder the ship wherein my cousin Gastilles saileth, not to approch neare thee, that hee might bring him hether, or at the least that wée might hear some newes of him. But in faith, all well waied and considred, I think

rher rather to haue reason, and my selfe without consideration, for that so excellent a thing ought not to bee so lightly set at liberty. Therefore it is no meruaile if thou refuse him vnto vs, fearing least thou shouldest lose him, seeing thou maist well vaunt y in thée there resteth so valerous knight, as in regard of him all others may be nought estéemed. I would to God, that wee being both together, might neuer depart out of thy body: for being with him, his only presence would breed in mée so much contentment, that I should thinke my selfe to haue attained vnto the top of all felicity: and if his loue bee such as Carmelle hath assured mee, it cannot be, but that he suffereth the like passion I now indure, by ouermuch desire to sée his person. Wherewith shee remained in such an extasie, that by the changing of her colour, it might easily be iudged her heart was not at ease, which in the end compelled her to sigh: and at the same instant to repent the spéeches she had vsed vnto Carmelle, as also of the rich gowne that she gaue vnto her. For (said she vnto her selfe) what know I, if my sweet friend séeing her apparrelled therin, would imbrace her, not for the loue of her, but for the gowne that once belonged vnto mee. And if it be so, it is not to bee doubted, but shee will by all meanes séeke to ioine her lips to his, yea and her body likewise: which would bee worse, séeing she is neither so euill fauoured nor of so bad behauiour, but it may be in a heat he would both forget himselfe and me. But out alas what said I? Truly I doe him wrong to bée so iealous of him, considering the chast loue that is betwéene them both, and therefore if it so fall out, that in respect of mee hee shall imbrace her body, beholding her apparrelled in a thing that sometimes serued me, it will bee much more glory vnto me till I my selfe may once imbrace his body, as in time I doubt not but I shall. But if Leonorine were in paine, Esplandian had no lesse, both follicited with like iealousie, for the great distrust of their not méeting at that time: and gladly would haue approched néerer to each other, had it not béene that the one was on land vnder the gouernement of another man, the other at sea within a vessell which he could not command. In the meane time the great Serpent setting forwards, made such spéede, that in very short

space

space it passed the straights of Bosphore. Wherewith the Prin-
cesse Leonorine was like to sound, but shee refrained it as much as
possible shee might, fearing to manifest that, she most desired to
keepe secret. Whereby she withdrew her selfe halfe dead into her
chamber, and making as if she desired to sleepe, threwe her selfe
on her bed, commanding her Gentlewomen to depart the cham-
ber: they being gone, she began againe to renue her sorrow, and
almost drowned in teares, said vnto her selfe: Alas, now I surely
see and well perceiue my greefe to be wholly without remedy, ha-
uing seene the thing (that in all the world I most intirely loue) so
neere vnto me, and at one instant so suddainly to depart, that it is
vncertaine whether he is gone. Ha cruell torment that still in-
creaseth in me so couertly, is it possible that from henceforth I
can so well dissemble as yet I haue done? Truly no, for if in
time past I inforced my selfe to estéeme the desire I had a singu-
lar pleasure vnto mee, nowe seeing I well perceiue my accursed
fortune to approch, and my ioy to fade, in manner as soone as it
was conceiued, I desire nought but death: which to me would be
more acceptable, then liue in so great paine, not hoping any ease.
And leauing so, shee gaue so great a sigh, that Quéene Minoresse
heard it: Who fearing shee had beene sicke, opened the chamber
dore, asking her how she did. Wherewith the Princesse perceu-
uing that discouery, to excuse her selfe the best she could, shee told
the Quéene shee dreamed. Madame (saied the Quéene) it is not
long since the Empereresse sent to see what you were doing: Is
it not your pleasure to rise and goe vnto her? Let vs goe (saied
shee.) In the meane time Esplandian with his companions, sai-
led so long, that within two dates after they perceiued the rocke
of La montaigne defendu, and not farre from them the vessels
and men of warre Brandalo had assembled, that stayed for a
wind to surprise the Turkish Army on the sea: Who perceu-
uing the great Serpent making towards them, began to arme
themselues, thinking that it had beene some monster that
came to deuour them. But Manely and the King of Den-
marke that had seene it oftentimes before, were very glad,
giuing them to vnderstand what succours they might haue

thereby, whereat they all reioiced, ſpecially when they perceiued Eſplandian, Gandalin, and the reſt, that Manely and the king of Denmarke knew, wherefore cauſing a boat to bee made ready, they with Frandalo and Argenton, the king of Denmarkes Squire (a very good marriner) entered into it, and rowing to the great Serpent, Eſplandian receiued them with great ioy, aſking Manely what fortune had brought them thether. In faith (ſaied he) it is not long ſince we departed from the citty of Conſtantinople, to diſcouer and to hinder the paſſage of victuals that are daily brought by ſea from the Bowne of Norolia vnto Armato king of Turks, who not long ſithence hath beſieged the caſtle of Lamontaigne defendu: expecting daily the comming of the Emperour with a great army to driue the Turke from thence. But we haue had ſo contrary a wind, that it hath ben impoſſible for vs to effect our charge. In good truth (ſaid Eſplandian) I would neuer haue ſought you in theſe countries, neither doe I knowe what became of you after wee fell aſleepe in this veſſell, I pray you tell it vs. Then Manely began to ſhew how he and the king of Denmarke when they awaked found themſelues in a barke vpon the coaſt of Italy, where taking land they found Virgaua, and after that by cruell tempeſts they arriued in an Iſle, where a Beare aſſailed them, in which Iſle they ſaw two great apes that ſhewed them much ſport. But (ſaied hee) wee thought to haue ſtarued therein for want of meat, for our victuals were cleane conſumed when by fortune Frandalo arriued in the ſame Iſle, with whome I fought and ouercame him. And becauſe our barke was caſt away, wee entered into his, wherein wee found a Gentlewoman that told vs newes of you, whom for your ſake we conducted vnto Conſtantinople, and from thence haue brought her backe againe. As farre as I vnderſtand (ſaid Eſplandian) you haue not alwaies ſlept, and I beléeue that neuer any knight had ſo ſtraunge aduentures at their firſt entering into armes vnleſſe it were my lord Amadis my father, which I would hardly haue beléeued, had it not ben for the ſignes and euident tokens that wee ſaw in the Iſle Saint Mary. What were they (ſaid the king of Denmarke:) We ſaw the Image of Landriaque (ſaid Eſplandian) with whome

he

he had so long and perrillous a combate. It is true (saied Argenton) that such combates against monsters, doe oftentimes strike the hardiest knights with feare, and the combate of our Apes made sorrowfull knights reioice. In good faith saied Esplandian) thou hast reason, and I like thee well for thy mirth, but I pray thee heartely returne againe, and fetch the Gentlewoman that is in thy masters ship, and bring her hether, that I may speake with her, which he presently did: and as she entred into the great Serpent, Esplandian imbracing her, asked if she had seene the emperour and the beautifull Princesse Leonorine his doughter. I my lord (said she) both of them desiring your arrival in that countrey, especially the Princesse Leonorine, with all the ladies and Gentlewomen, being fully determined not to pardon the great fault you haue committed in their behalfes, to haue deferred off so long before you come to serue them, according to the promise made by Amadis your father, as I assured thē. Yet I thinke their displeasure is not so great, but ye may well find meanes to pacifie the same. My good friend (saied Esplandian) you are heartely welcome, wee will talke together when better leisure serueth. Which he said, fearing she should haue proceeded further, wherewith the standers by might haue intelligence of the loue he bare vnto the Princesse, wherefore leauing the Gentlewoman, and turning to Manely, hee saied: In faith I cannot well excuse my selfe, but that I doe them wrong, for the first commaundement my father gaue mee at such time I receiued the order of knighthood was, that in his place I should goe and serue them, to quit the promise he had made. Neuertheles fortune hath euer hitherto giuen mee so many crosses thereby to hinder my intent, that I could neither fulfill his will, nor satisfie their expectations. While they were thus deuising, two of Frandalos Brigantines, that by him were sent to espy the enemies nauy, brought news they had seene great numbers of their Foiles and Gallies sailing to the East, to fetch victuals for the Nauie, and that the rest that remained behind would easily bee ouercome, if it pleased them to set vpon them: which the knights vnderstanding, were of opinion, that without longer delay they would assaile them, and

presently

presently therewith hoised vp their ankers, making as secretly as they could towards Armatos fléete, yet they determined not to set vpon them before the breake of day, hoping to take them slée-ping, which in truth fell out. The first that set vpon them was the great Serpent, that at her arriuall, entering among the ene-mies, cast fire so fiercely at her mouth and nosthrils, that when they awaked it put them in such feare, that losing courage with-out stroke giuen, they all began to flie: Neuertheless it could not saue their liues, but that the greatest part of their vessels were drowned by meanes of a contrary wind, that rose so suddainely on the sea, whereby it raged in such sort, that neither mast, sayle, bord, nor oare could holde, but were broken all in péeces: yet did not Frandalo lose any of his fléet, neither did the camp once moue thereat, for they were not séene of any other then the sentinell of the castle, that presently told Ambor and Talanque, wherat they receiued great pleasure, especially when they espied the great Serpent and Esplandian thereon, with whome they talked long time before hee came to land. At the last they concluded to auoid all danger, that the rampiers they had made before the gate, should for that time not bee broken, but they would let down a la-ther of cords, whereby they might mount vp into the castle, Fran-dalo hauing giuen order for the safetie of his shippes, which was presently done.

CHAP. XXVI.

How Armato king of Turkie had intelligence of the ouerthrow of his army at sea by Frandalo and his company, and what enterpri-ses happened on both parts.

WHat aid entred into the castle of La montaigne defendu, Esplandian desirous to see the enemies campe, presently mounted vpon the wals, accompanied only of Talanque and Ambor, that shewed him the tents of Armato, the Bassias, Begberbeys, and Sangiacs, whereof some were lod-ged within the Base court, which they had conquered at their first

firſt comming thether, wher with Eſplandian was much greeued, and asked Talanque how he suffered them to come so neer. Assure your selfe (said he) it was not with our wils, but we defended it as long as possible wee might, and the Portaile likewise, which at their firſt comming they assailed. But we defended it so well, that without their mine they had neuer won it, yet did it profite them but little, for that suddainly wee destroied all their mine, that had cost them fiftéen daies labour. Which Armato perceiuing, sought to begin againe, which we by diuers sallies would not suffer him to doe; but whatsoeuer we could doe, in the end their force preuailed, and wee constrained to forsake the same, and retire vnto the castle, and that in good time, for we were scarse entered into the dungeon, but they fired it, whereby the Portall fell downe, giuing vs at that time one of the most cruell assaults that euer place sustained, being so meanely guarded as it was, and assure your selfe, that there is neither lopehole nor window, but they raised ladders or some other engins against it, and with launces, fire, and sword, gaue vs so much to doe, that we were in doubt to be ouercome. Neuertheleſſe they were as wholely repulsed, for Libee gaue them such intertainement with a dramme of pouder, that hee set on fire, as they began to crie out victorie, but vpon a suddain their cry became so pittifull, that nothing but sorrow and lamentation could be heard among them, wherewith there were so many of them burnt and singed, that neuer since they durſt approch so néere, although wee haue giuen them diuers skirmishes, but for the space of eight daies we neuer issued foorth, by reason (as you know) if wee should often issue foorth, it is impossible but some of our men must of force bee slaine, and the death of one of ours would be more losse vnto vs then the slaying of a hundreth of their men would profite vs. You haue done well (said Eſplandian) for all wise captaines ought to content themselues with the sure defending of a hold committed vnto them, not hazarding themselues to losse as long as possible they may. But for the further safetie of this castle, I thinke it good wee take counsell what were best to bee done, least wee bee surprised. Wherewith they went into the chamber where Matroco died, where they met to-

gether, and (among diuers things propounded) it was concluded, that ỹ next night they would issue forth to slay ỹ enemies watch, which would easily bee done, seeing they had not any alarme in long time before. Wherefore euery man went to refresh himself, till about eleuen of the clocke at night, when Frandalo and the rest armed themselues. And as they were all assembled in the court, Esplandian standing in the middle, spake vnto them and said, My good friendes, wee are not now among the combates of great Brittaigne, where combates are fought more for fantasie, or vaineglory, then vpon any iust occasion: But this warre wee make against the proper enemies of our faith, summoneth vs not onely to doe our indeuours, but also to defend the honour and liberty of the name of Christians. Wherefore my good companions, I beseech you let euery man cast feare aside, preferring vertue before any inconuenience whatsoeuer. Assuring you (if wee doe so) that before it be day, king Armato and his army shall well find, we are not so fainthearted as he estæmeth vs. Then calling Norandel vnto him, he said: Uncle, you, Manely and the king of Denmarke with a hundred men, shall issue first to slay the sentinels, and if you could doe the like vnto their watch, our enterprise would bee brought to passe as wee desire. But whatsoeuer chanceth, set you vpon them, and feare not the repulse, for Gandalin and Lazinde shall second you with two hundreth more, by which meanes you may easily retire if you be constrained thereunto. Neuertheless, let no man stirre from hence, till Frandalo and I be first gone out, for that wee two alone will goe into their campe to see what countenance they make, and as fortune fauoureth vs, we will presently come with you. With that bee sent for two gownes of cloth of gold, and two Turkish caps, whereof he gaue one vnto Frandalo, and kept the other for himself, and being armed vnder their apparell, were let downe (by the ladder of cords) at the seaside, feigning to be some of the sea captaines, went straight vnto the campe, where they were stayed by the sentinels, but Frandalo speaking the Arabian tongue, could so well dissemble, that hee made them beleeue, they went to aduertise the great Turke of a thing of great importance, whereby

they

they let them passe. Meane time Armato king of Turky sate deuising in his tent with his familiar friendes, touching the losse of ships, whereof not aboue an howre before, he had receiued newes by one of his marriners, that saued himselfe in a small Frigate: but the Turke could not by any meanes imagine how it came to passe, seeing his spies that were newly returned from Constantinople, had brought him newes that the Empereur stirred not, neither made any preparation to assaile him. And as Frandalo & Esplandian entred the tent, they heard the marriner tell how that cruell ouerthrow happened by meanes of a monster of the sea, that came with the enemies fleet. That (said hee) put vs in such fear, with casting fire out of his mouth, nose, and eies, that thereby the most part of our men were burnt to ashes. By all my gods (said Armato) it is some diuell that enuieth our prosperitie. And if pleaseth your grace (said one of his Captaines, that had sailed in the mediteranian seas, and heard speaking of the great Serpent) there is nothing but art Magicke vsed therein, whereof I am most sure, as hauing diuers times ben certefied thereof. Wherewith they heard a great alarum, for Norandel and his company had issued out of the castle with white scarffes about their heads for to bee knowne, and had so well surprised the watch about the base court, that they had slaine them all, whereof Armato had intelligence, as also that the enemies had gotten the issue of the Portall, wherewith hee was so moued, that in a great rage with very small company he went thether himselfe, Esplandian & Frandalo following after, as if they had been of his company. But before their arriuall, Norandel had recouered the pallasadoes of the fortresse, and there sustained the whole Turkish forces, staying Gandalins comming. Now the entry of the court was so narow, that more then three men could not passe through it at once, whereby those of the castle had in manner as much aduantage as their enemies. Which Ambor, Talanque, Gandalin, and Libea made them well feele, comming likewise vpon them, for as the king arriued, they thrust them cleane out of the place, whereby they fled in great haste, till the Turke himselfe caused them to stay, and seeing him, they toke courage, turning their faces,

whereby the skirmish began much whotter then before, Armato himselfe shewing great Prowesse, when Esplandian that was stil behind him, toke him by the middle, and in dispight of them all, carried him vnto the wals of the castle, crying with a lowd voice, Bee of good cheare my companions, wee haue taken the king. At the which crie the Turkes set so fiercely on them, that had it not ben for Frandalo (who as yet had not shewed himselfe) they had recouered him againe, but he ioyned himselfe with Manely, Norandel, and the rest that sustained the force of all the enemies so valiantly, that Esplandian had meanes to put Armato in sure kéeping, and to returne againe vnto the battaile before it was ended. But it continued not long after, for that newes was presently carried to the campe, that the king was prisoner with two of his chiefe captaines, taken by Gandalin and the king of Denmarke, wherewith they were so much abashed, that by little and little they began to retire, the like did they of the castle, contenting themselues with the boty they had gotten.

CHAP. XXVII.

How Armato king of Turkie was committed vnto the custody of Gandalin, and what conference he had with Frandalo.

THose of the castle retired, as you heard before, Esplandian called Gandalin and Libee praying them to looke vnto king Armato, as also to the two Turkish captaines, and appointing the watch as time required, went and laied him downe vpon his bed, not ceasing all the night to thinke on the speech Carmelle vsed vnto him touching the Princesse Leonorine, whereby hee could not sléepe till day began to appeare, when Frandalo and the rest of his knights entred into his chamber, to talke with him, not only as touching the intertainement of their prisoners, but of other thinges that much impoxted them. And as they were in counsell together, Gandalin came

came vnto them, shewing them that king Armato desired for to speake with them, whereupon they went out of the chamber to heare what hee would say. Frandalo could speake the Arabian tongue better then the rest, for that hee had serued the king of Turkie, and hee knew him very well, wherefore Esplandian desired him to speake for all the rest. And entring into the chamber, Frandalo went first, who kneeling on the ground, kissed ỹ kings hand. With that Armato thinking hee had beene prisoner, asked him where he was taken. My lord (saied he) I am now become a Christian, and a knight of Iesus Christ, that hath done mee so much grace, not long time since to call mee to bee one of his. A Christian (said the king) is that possible? By my soule it maketh mee more abashed, then the cruell fortune that is now happened vnto mee: for that all knights following armes ought patiently to beare those hazards that they fall into, vsing necessitie as a vertue. But thou vnhappy wretch (that through feare and want of courage) hast forsaken our iust and holy law, wherefore takest thou not a rope and hangest thy selfe, as vnworthy to goe vpon the earth? My lord (saied hee) you may say what pleaseth you, as being priuiledged for the greatnesse of your estate, yet I can assure you, I neuer had so cowardly a heart as you esteeme I haue, but rather account my selfe happie to haue done that I haue done. Yet will I not refuse to doe you seruice (my honour still reserued) in any thing I can. With that Armato remembred himselfe, and thought hee did him wrong, wherefore moderating his choler, he saied vnto him: Friend Frandalo, If it greeueth mee to haue lost you, let it not seeme strange vnto you, seeing now I had greater hope then euer I haue had to bee serued by your meanes. But seeing it is so, you knowe howe I haue vsed you heretofore, now I pray you (if you may doe any thing for mee) to finde the meanes with your companions that I may bee deliuered from hence by some reasonable composition. My lord (saied Frandalo, pointing to Esplandian) This is hee that hath all power and authoritie in this place, both ouer you and mee. With that Armato loked vpon him, and perceiuing him so young without a beard, thought Frandalo saied it to excuse himselfe, wherefore hee asked

if he mocked him. God forbid I should doe so my lord (saied Frandalo) but I pray you beléeue me, for it is true, that my lord Esplandian standing here before you is he and none other that slew Matroco, Frerion, Arcalaus the inchanter, and Argantes the Porter of the castle, which hee conquered, as you haue heard tolde. By my head (saied the king) I would hardly haue estéemed him for so braue a man: but séeing it is so, I pray thee doe somewhat with him touching the thing I told you of euen now. Beléeue mée my lord (said Frandalo) there shall want no good will in me: and with that hee bad him God morrow, and leauing him with his guard, they went into the hall, where they found the tables ready couered for dinner, for it was about none time. But as Esplandian rested ill that night, so hee made but a meane dinner, not being able to withdraw his mind from thinking on the princesse Leonorine, which was the cause that the Tables being vncouered, hee went into his chamber, without any company, onely the king of Denmarke, whom he loued as himselfe, where being together, he began to shew him the cause why he sent Carmelle to Constantinople, as also what affection hee bare to the Princesse Leonorine. And to the end (said he) you bee partiepant of my ioy, I pray you let vs haue her here, that shee may shew vs what shee learned in her voyage. My lord (saied the king of Denmarke) if you saw her apparrelled in the gowne the princesse gaue her, I am assured you will scarse knowe her at the first. Will you that I send her word to bring it hether? It is well saied (saied Esplandian) with that he called a Squire, sending him to Carmelle, that as then was in company of Arcabonnes Gentlewomen: but vnderstanding Esplandians pleasure, went presently to apparrell herselfe as hee had willed her, and hauing a mantle on her shoulders because she would not be séene, went to him in his chamber, where she found him and the king of Denmarke talking together: but as soon as he espied her, he tooke her in his armes, and setting her in a chair couered with velvet, saied vnto her: My good friend, I meane to shew my companion you sée here, how much I loue and estéeme him, wherefore I pray you shew me before him what intertainement the princesse Leonorine gaue you, knowing you came from me,

me, and whether I found any fauour in her sight. My lord (saith she) as soone as I was arriued, and that she vnderstood the cause of my comming vnto her: I found her no lesse yours then you hers: whereby I may esteeme you the happiest knight liuing in the world. And know you why? She is so fayre, and of so comely personage, that vnlesse it bee her selfe none can resemble her, and of truth shee doth farre surpasse all other ladies, for being alone in her priuate chamber playing on some instrument, or singing for her pleasure, she stealeth and rauisheth the harts (seperated from the bodies of such) as either heare or see her: and if at sometimes she attireth her selfe after the Italian manner, with a rap of that country fashion, then you may see her faire and glistering haire part giuing a certaine shadow on her vermilion cheekes, the rest knit vp together, inuironing her head, shewing with farre better grace then any crowne that she could weare, bee it of stones, laurell, or the finest gold that may be found. But if that be a temptation vnto man, her two humble and modest etes (like two suns) giue them as many deaths, as they at times behold the same, and againe reuiueth them better then at the first, and all at one instant: whereat you must not be abashed, seeing that loue it selfe doth often skirmish and striue in them, thereby to yeeld both pain and pleasure vnto those that doe behold the same: and if hee touch her, he feareth to hurther, as being in most extreame passions of loue. And not without a cause, for that nature hauing made her, brake the mould, that shee might be the only perfect creature, accompanied with so many vertues, that loue findeth nothing in her but bones to gnaw vpon. And I assure you my lord, speaking vnto her of those thinges you had giuen mee in charge, I plainely perceiued her by the changing of her countenance to be charged with the like disease whereof you still complaine: for sometimes she blushed, and againe became pale, and by the words I was withall ouergone, that shee could not answere a ready word: especially when I presented her with the ring that shee once gaue to Amadis your father, as she told me afterwards: In recompence whereof shee sendeth you this haire lace, which shee will daintily weare for your sake, keeping for the loue of her, and as the

first

first Jewell her Grandfather Grimanaise gaue to the Empereſſe Appolidon, being but her louer. Expreſſely ſending you the ſame as an aſſured token of the loue ſhe beareth vnto you, and the good will ſhee will bee ready alwaies to ſhew you during her mortall life. With that ſhee toke a little bore out of her boſome wrapped in a péece of Taffata, and gaue it vnto him, which Eſplandian receiued, and taking it out of the bore, he ſighed tenderly and ſaied: Ha moſt fortunate preſent, (the firſt witneſſe of the perfect alliance that the moſt loiall louers that euer liued had together, from whom is deſcended the Paragon of all beauty) happy to haue approched ſo néere her perſon: But I much happier that vereineth it, as more affectioned to ſerue her then any other liuing on the earth: and it pleaſeth God, while life indureth, I truſt thou neuer ſhalt depart from mee, but I will kéepe thée as carefully, as I deſire ſhe ſhould hold my heart. Yet this is not all (ſaid Garinelle) but behold the recompence of my labour, and ſaying ſo, ſhee caſt the mantle from her ſhoulders, ſhewing them her rich gowne all couered with crownes of gold, which put Eſplandian in minde of that Vrganda ſent him word by her Gentlewoman, when ſhee ſent him the white armour ſet with the like deuiſe, confirming in his mind the hope that vntill then he had holden doubtfull: wherat he felt the greateſt eaſe that poſſible he might. And as they beheld the great and excellent workemanſhip, with the great and coſtly imbrodery of Pearles and precious ſtones wherewith it was all couered, Gandalin came and knocked at the doore, to ſhew thé that there were a great number of veſſels diſcouered on the ſea, and fearing them to bee ſome new ſupply of Turkes, was of aduiſe they ſhould bee ready to receiue them. Whereupon each man ranne to armes, cauſing more men to goe into their ſhippes for their better ſafetie: yet that alarme continued but a while, for that the Pennons and Banners of Conſtantinople were perceiued on their ſhips, by ſuch as they ſent out for to deſcry thē: ſome of them comming backe againe in great haſt to ſhew them that Gaſtilles as generall of the army for ỳ Emperour, was comming to ſuccour them: whereof the Turks hauing intelligence, preſently brake vp their campe, being gone farre from the caſtle

before

before any of the vessels come neare the shoare: Neuertheless those of the castle set vpon their reare ward, and if the chase had not been so great a number, that had not night come on (considering the evil order they held) there had not escaped a man of all their campe. In the mean time Gastilles with his army came vnto the mountaine, where Esplandian, ỹ king of Denmarke, and diuers others stode ready to receiue him: and after many courtesies and welcomes on all parts giuen, Gastilles asked them how they dealt with their enemies. As well as may be (saied Esplandian,) but wee could not by any meanes cause them to stay till your comming, but they are fled from hence as soone as they heard newes thereof: Then hee tolde him of the larumes and issues by them made during the siege, as also of the taking of king Armato. That is good newes (said Gastilles) God bee praised therefore, if mine vncle the Emperour had beene aduertised thereof before my departure from Constantinople, I had not found the meanes to come send to visite you, which would haue displeased mee much, neither would he haue ben at charge to furnish such a Nauie: but he was in doubt you were in great necessity, that at my putting to sea hee commanded me to make al the spéed I could, til he came in person with four hundred saile ỹ already are prepared if our forces should not be sufficient to sustaine the Turkish army: but for this yeare he shall be excused, if there happē no other aduenture. I pray you (said Esplandian) come to land, & go with vs into the castle, where wee will conferre of all things with some better leisure: Which he agréed vnto, wherewith he & some of the principall captaines of his army, entered into the knights boat, and with them went vp into the castle: where being arriued, Gastilles that knew king Armato) desired Esplandian before hee did any thing else, that hee might sée him, wherwith hée brought him to the chamber, where he sate as pensiue as any man could bee, Gastiles did him honour, as to his estate appertained. But king Armato would hardly looke vpon him, but saied vnto him: Gastilles, I maruaile much why the Emperour your maister, (contrary to his faith and promise) hath broken the peace agréed vpon betwæne vs, and for a thing so little importing him as this place doth, where-

vnto hee neuer had any right, as you well knowe. But I perceiue from whence the same proceedeth: be cause hee would euery man should knowe the little faith and lesse loialty that is in him, which I shall one day make him know full well, if euer I escape out of this prison. My lord (said Gastilles, your honour saued) the Emperour my maister hath in him all the parts that belong vnto a wise, vertuous, and hardy Prince, such as hee is, and it seemeth vnto mee (vnder your correction) that by good and iust cause he hath done no more then he might do: seeing it is euident that this castle hath ben conquered by Christian knights, whom he is bound to fauour with all the aid hee can, not onely to defend our law, or because they haue desired his aide, as being the first and greatest monarch in the world, but to sustaine the right that both hee and his predecessors haue alwaies pretended to these marches. And where you threaten to make him feele the small loialty whereof you accuse him, at other times heretofore you haue met each other with your forces, where you sped so hardly, that I rather beleeue you speake in choler then with reason, specially considering the estate wherein you are at this present. Gastilles (saied Armato,) Although I were dead, I haue sufficient number of Captaines and good Souldiours in my country to reuenge my cause, and a sonne likewise, that is not borne to indure the iniury done vnto his father: and thus much I assure thee, that if I thought him to bee other, I would slay him with mine owne hands as sone as I should see him. My lord (saied Esplandian) that Prince, Knight, or Gentleman that vseth such vnfit speech as you doe now, is commonly holden for a man of no capacity, especially when hee is in a place where humility rather then threatnings would become him better: Haue you already forgotten the prison wherein you are, and in the handes of those that haue so small occasion to wish you well? My lord, vertue is neuer better knowne to bee in man, but then when hee is in most distresse: Wherefore if vntill this time you haue not knowne what constancy doth meane, learne hereafter to discerne the same, vsing words worthy your estate, and not such nor so iniurious as you haue vttered vnto my lord Gastilles, who in this place repre-

teth the person of an emperor, (a greater lord then you) in whose mercy your life or death consisteth: for we are all his souldiours, ready to doe him seruice. The king perceiuing well that hee had done them wrong, and fearing to bee hardlier vsed then hee was accustomed to bee, saied vnto Esplandian, Sir Knight, I pray you pardon my impatience, considering with your selfe the great griefe and melancholy humour wherein I am, when I (that was wont to be feared and redoubted of al the princes in Asia) am now constrained to obay the will and pleasure of my greatest enemies, which vnto me is so extreame griefe, that I die each day a hundred times, because I cannot die. But Esplandian answered not one word, but leauing him with his gard, taking Gastilles by the hand, led him into one of his best chambers, where they supped. The next day they assembled all together, and after many matters propounded, it was agréed among them, (according to Frandalos aduise) that they should enter into Turkie, being as then in great perplexity, as well for the taking of king Armaro, as for the ouerthrow of his army, as it shall bee shewed vnto you hereafter, for at this time wee will cease to speake thereof: returning to shew you of king Luisart, that during this time, for the most part held his court in the citty of London.

CHAP. XXVIII.

How the greatest part of the knights that vsed to be at king Luisarts court, returned vnto their owne houses, and of the coronation of Amadis and Oriane at London.

YOu haue heard before of the combat betwéene Esplandian and Amadis his father, and how after long time of their abode at Miresleur, staying the healing of their wounds, Esplandian desiring to returne vnto the castle La montaigne defendu, tooke his leaue of king Luisart, the like did diuers of the knights, that as then were at the Court: as Galaor king of Sobradise, Agrairs,

Granſador, Balan, Galuanes, and Angriotte d'eſtrauaulx, ſome to ſee their wiues, others to taſt the eaſe and pleaſant reſt of their mansion houſes: whereby it happened the court was leſſe repleniſhed with knights then it had beene in long time before, eſpecially by reaſon of the newes they heard from the caſtle La montaigne defendu, whether diuers yong knights trauailed to aide Eſplandian. King Luiſart therefore ſo meanely accompanied as I ſaid before, being very old and decrepit, began to bee melancholy and to haue the palſie, ſetting aſide all Hunting, Hawking, Armes, and Thiualry, or any other pleaſure whatſoeuer: And with a remembrance of death, ſo much abhorred all things paſt, preſent and to come, that he eſtæmed them vaine and altogether tranſitory: Whereby he determined to depoſe himſelfe of all kingly eſtate and gouernment of his realme, to paſſe the reſt of his time in a ſolitary and religious manner, ſpecially when he called to mind the great perils from whence he had eſcaped, and about all his laſt moſt dangerous and cruell impriſonment. Neuertheleſſe, for a time hee kept it ſecret, vntill one night hee being a bed with the Quéene, where they lay talking of the ſickleneſſe of this world, hee diſcouered his whole mind vnto her, and how hee determined to make Amadis his ſonne king and gouernour of his country: to the end he might freely and without any interruption withdraw himſelf to his caſtle of Mireſcur, where (by Gods helpe) he meant to liue a ſolitary life. The Quéene that was one of the wiſeſt and deuouteſt ladies in her time, confirmed him ſo well in his opinion, that they agreed to returne to London, there to accompliſh their pretence. And the next day they departed from Mireſcur, accompanied of Amadis, Granſador, and others, and comming to London, after they had remained there a certaine time, the Quéene ſent for all the nobilitie: who being arriued at the court, cauſed a ſcaffold to bee made in the principall place of all the citty where the people might repaire. And as he and the Quéene both apparrelled in their roiall robes, each ſet in a chaire of eſtate, Amadis ſitting ſomwhat lower on his right hand, and Oriane on the left, were come thether a Herauld crying thrice, that all the people ſhould keepe ſilence. Ja the king with a ſtately countenance and

Princely magnanimitie turning to the people, saied vnto them. My good friends and loial subiects, before I begin to shew you the cause why I haue made you to repaire vnto this place, I will put you in mind of part of the dangers and great hazards wherein I haue often fallen since the death of my brother of famous memory king Falangris, whē it pleased God to call me vnto the gouernment of this land, and as I thinke there are yet many of you liuing that can wel remember the danger wherein both I and my country thought to fall, when by the meanes and subtletie of Arcalaus the inchanter, I was deliuered into their hands that long time before had conspired my death, from whence my sonne Amadis deliuered mee: Yet not long after by euill counsell, I made warre against him, which ended as all men know, fortune enuieus of my felicitie, afterward prepared mee such a banket, that without his helpe I had beene prisoner with king Arauigne, and vtterly ouerthrowne. And that which hath yet more astonished mee was, that when I thought my selfe sure and out of danger of all mishaps, a worse then all the former suddainely chanced vnto me, the which (considering the place wherein I was) I thought verily to haue ben the end and consumation of my daies. Neuerthelesse the Lord God regarding me in pitty, sent my yong sonne Esplandian to my sorrowfull prison, from whence hee hath deliuered mee, as no doubt you haue heard. Now my good subiects you all see mee to bee very old and white haired, hauing already attained to the threescore and tenth yeare of mine age, which maketh me think it time now to forget all worldly pleasures, and to serue God to whom I am so much bound: And for this cause I haue determined from hencefoorth to forsake all royall dignity, and leaue you my son Amadis for your king, to whome at this time I yéeld both my Crowne, Scepter, and all the right I haue vnto the gouernement of this land: praying you all as much as possibly I may, that hereafter you will bee faithfull and true subiects vnto him, as you haue alwaies ben to me. And although hee bee but my sonne in law, if I knew him vnworthy of the place, beléeue mee my good friendes, I would sooner chuse a meere stranger for my successor, then I would doe him: but there is not one among you

but knoweth well his great deserts, and of what race hee com-meth: that at this day may well bee called one of the most noble and happiest linages in all the word, as being descended from the valiant Troyans, whereof the memory shall indure for euer. He is a kings sonne, heire vnto the crowne of France, & now your Prince and Gouernour, and so I leaue him vnto you, with my daughter your Quéene and lawfull Princesse: holding to my selfe only the castle of Mirefleur, where (with Gods helpe) the Quéene and I will end our daies religiously, seruing God, as we are bound to doe. Then calling Amadis, giuing him his royall mantle, he willed him presently to put it on, the like did the queen to Oriane. Mean time the silence was so great, that nothing could bée heard among the people but cries and lamentations, mooued with pitty & compassion to sée the determination of their Prince: who being apparrelled in a simple robe of blacke cloth, tooke his sonne and the Quéene his daughter, set them in their regal seats, and in presence of all the people, set each of them a crowne of gold vpon their heads, causing them to be proclaimed by the Heralds, King and Quéene of great Brittaigne: That done, euery man departed, some wéeping, and others glad, for the aduancement they hoped from the new king, who from thenceforth began so wisely to gouerne his country, that neuer was any prince better beloued nor obaied of his subiects. King Luisart within short time after (accompanied of the Quéen and Grumedan) went vnto Mirefleur as hee had determined to doe, where they liued so austerely, helping and being present at euery houre when seruice was to be saied as readily as the yongest of the old men that remained there, for the administration and seruice to the religious women in the monaster of the deuout Abbesse Adalasta. But when king Amadis perceiued his meanes to recompence those of whome in his young yeares hee had receiued great pleasure and seruice, hee began to exalt Arban de Norgales, giuing him one of the faireſt Ilands in his country, to Gandales the lands of the duke of Brifton, to Gandalin (as then absent) hee gaue the lands of Arcalaus the inchanter, he made Angriorre destrauaulx great maister of his horse, Guilan le pensife high steward of his house, Ardan le nain

his

his chéefe carver, and married the Gentlewoman of Denmarke very richly. Not long after the Quéene was brought to bed of a goodly sonne and a faire daughter both at one birth, the sonne named Perion, and the daughter Briſenne: At whose nativitie great ioy was made throughout all the country, especially at London, where the same day one of Norandels Squires arriued, that told king Amadis howe Esplandian and his maister met together in Almaigne, where the day before hee had slaine two Giants, and deliuered Gandalin with diuers other knights, Squires, Ladies, and Gentlewomen out of prison. Knowest thou (saied the King) what way they toke afterward? My lord (saied the Squire) they made account to goe vnto the castle called La montaigne defendu, to helpe them that are therein, beeing in great necessitie: Which the king vnderstanding, sent presently for all the Pilotes that might bee found, and in all hast caused to rig and arme the greatest ship he had to saile into the East to his sonne, who in ỹ meantime (mooued thereunto by Frandalo) departed from the castle of Marroco with the Emperours army to inuade the Turks country, as in the next chapter you shall heare.

CHAP. XXIX.

How the towne of Alfarin in Turkie being assaulted, was taken by Esplandian and the rest of his company.

NOt long after the siege of La montaigne defendu was raised, and Gastilles arriued at the castle as you heard before: Frandalo had aduise by Belleris his nephewe, (that returned out of Turkie, where hee had been to sée what newes in the countrey) that Alforax sonne to king Armato, and gouernor of ỹ great Cittie of Tasifant, vnderstanding the imprisonment of his father, with the ouerthrow of the Turkish armie, was departed from the towne of Alfarin: where hee had left

left the beautifull Princesse Helisena his wife, daughter to Amphirion king of Medea, to go with all dilligence to set order in his owne gouernement, and raise more men, thereby to resist the Christians power if they entred further into ỹ countrey. Which vnderstood by Esplandian, Gastilles, Ambor, Manely, and the king of Denmarke, they determined to enter into Turkie, whereunto by many reasons Frandalo persuaded them, shewing them what meanes they had to besiege the town of Alfarin, not aboue two daies iourney from them, being hardly prouided of victuals, and no Garrison therein: Wherfore it was agreed among them, that Gastilles with his Naule of ships should depart the next euening in as secret manner as hee could, to see if he might surprise their Hauen; and that they on the other side would trauaile all night, whereby they might besiege the Towne both by land and sea, entring therein before the Turkes should heare newes thereof. And as they agreed, they put the same in execution: in such maner that Gastilles (giuing forth that he would returne againe vnto Constantinople) about fiue of the clock take ship, when hee put to sea, the moone shone bright, wherfore hoising vp their ankers, they set saile: And they had not sailed long, but he called his chief Captaines together, discouering his enterprise vnto thē, wherewith presently leauing the way to Constantinople, they made towards the towne of Alfarin. On the other side, Frandalo slept not, when he perceiued his time, (all the company being alreadie aduertised that he meant to goe by night) they issued out of the castle, euery man carrying victuals with him for the space of four daies: And they trauailed so long, that about the breake of day they came vnto a great forrest, where they stated in ambushmēt till the nert night following, when they issued forth, and about three of the clocke at night they came vnto a path that went two waies, where Frandalo caused them to stay, and calling Esplandian, said vnto him: My lord, I pray you let vs two and no more take the way that leadeth on the left hand, and Belleris my nephew shall guide the rest of our company to the mountaigne of Yarebzeh, from whence they may easily see if our Nauy be neere the citty of Alfarin: and then as they finde the enterprise goe forward,

ward, they may assaile the place, or else remaine in ambush til occasion serueth. You and I will follow on this way, that will bring vs to ỹ aduenturous fountaine, by the which lieth the great way that leadeth to Tessant, where most commonly are found diuers strange aduentures, and if by fortune wee might meete the Princesse Heliaxe, that as to morrow should depart from Alsarin to goe vnto her husband, we shall not lose our labours. Let vs goe (said Esplandian:) with that Belleris and his company went their way, and Frandalo, Esplandian, Sergil, with the Gentlewoman of Denmarke tooke the other way, who about ỹ breake of day arriued at the aduenturous fountaine, where there stode foure great copper pillers all gilded, and at each piller hong a table with certaine writings therein, the contents whereof when time serueth you shall heare declared, as also the occasion why they were set vp. Being arriued there, not farre off they perceaued a light that issued out of a Taffata pauillion that stode vpon the side of the fountaine, whereunto they approched as couertlie as they could, where they perceiued a most beautiful Gentlewoman combing of her haire, and not farre from thence twenty knights all armed kéeping watch about her, among the which was a squire holding a horse all trapped with cloth of gold. But Frandalo and Esplandian were no sooner arriued, but they were discouered, yet they fearing a greater ambush, the most part of them losing courage, began to flie away: which the two knights perceiuing, entred among them, and at their first comming ouerthrew foure or fiue of them vnto the ground, forcing them that were behind to returne againe, wherewith there began a fierce and cruell battaile, for those that first began to runne away (looking backe and perceiuing only two knights that set vpon their fellowes) were so ashamed, that they turned again to help them: neuertheless without the force of thrée Giants that held against the knights, they could not haue indured so long against Esplandian and Frandalo, but they thrée fought so valiantly with them, that the two knights were in the greatest danger then euer they were before. And as you sée a Boare coming at the mouth (followed of a troupe of dogs) set his taile against a trée, and with his

tuskes teare and rent the flesh of the boldest dogs that doe assaile him, so were Frandalo and Esplandian among the knights they had assailed, striking both on the right hand and the left with so great fury, that at one instant two of their principall enemies were slaine, so that there remained but one Giant to fight with them, with whom Frandalo made his party good, while Esplandian followed the rest, that as then began to flie. But when the Giant perceiued Esplandian returne, being in feare of death, he stepped aside and said vnto Frandalo, Sir Knight, you and I haue often beene companions in many haulty enterprises, I pray you therefore shew mée the fauour to receiue mee vnto mercy, otherwise you might bée blamed of those that know vs both, for I am your cousin Foron. Whereat Frandalo was much abashed, & could hardly bee perswaded thereunto, wherefore hee praied him to put off his helmet, and if it be true (said he) that thou art Foron, I will vse thée both like a friend and kinsman. Wherewith the Giant disarmed his head, whereby Frandalo knewe him and imbraced him, whereat Esplandian was much abashed, not knowing what had passed betweene them, with that hee went nérer vnto them, asking vpon what cause that salutation procéded. Then Frandalo tolde what the Giant was, desiring him likewise to take pittie on him: which Esplandian agréed vnto, then they thrée together went vnto the pauilion, at the entry wherof they found the gentlewoman talking with Carmelle, no more abashed at the ouerthrow of her men, then if shee had séene them tustle for their pleasures. She was apparrelled in a gowne of Damaske all imbrodered and set with Pearles and precious stones, Frandalo presently knew her, as hauing séene her oftentimes, especially the same day shee was married to Alphorax where hee tusted and did so valiantly, that she intertained him for her knight, wherfore lighting on foote, and pulling off his helmet, hee saluted her in most humble manner. Wherewith shee being abashed to sée him that she estéemed wholly to be hers, so to haue behaued himself against her guard, said vnto him: How now Frandalo, is this the seruice I loked for at your hands, hauing receiued you for my knight? The diuell take such seruants, séeing you are so fainthearted vn-

to

to her, that hetherto hath reputed you one of the moſt courteous knights that euer was girt with ſword: but now I find I am deceiued, for I ſhould rather haue ſuſpected any other then you to be a doer in this enterpriſe, whereby I cannot but bee much abaſhed. Madame (ſaid Frandalo) ſince ỳ time I became your knight, at the laſt tourney that I ranne, a lord of greater power hath intertained me into his ſeruice, whom I wil ſerue during my mortall life, ſéeing it hath pleaſed him to ſhew me ſo great fauour, being wel aſſured, that when you know him as I do, you wil eſtéem me happy, how cowardly or villainous ſoeuer you account mee now. What is he (ſaid ſhe) tel me of your faith: it is Ieſus Chriſt (ſaid Frandalo:) yet wil I neuer faile to do you all the honour and ſeruice that I can, as alſo now at this time, ſo my companion bée content, for without him I cannot doe it. Frandalo (ſaid Eſplandian) you may command mee, for I am ready to doe what pleaſeth you: Wherefore delay not to do all the pleaſure & ſeruice you can vnto this lady if it be your will. Wherewith Frandalo thanked him moſt hartely, and ſaied to Heliaxe: Madame, ſéeing bee will haue it ſo, I pray you from henceforth put all your truſt in mee, and I will not faile to be carefull for you: Mean time I pray you get vpon your palfrey, that I may bring you to a place where you may ſée farre better tourneyes then any at your wedding: afterward (if it pleaſeth God to fauour vs) you ſhall eaſily perceiue how much I eſteeme and haue in remembrance the fauours you haue heretofore ſhewed vnto mee, being but a ſimple knight, and you a great Princes to command farre better then my ſelfe: for neuer was Princeſſe more honoured and eſtéemed among her owne ſubiects then you ſhall bee of them, to whome I meane to bring you, which may bee an example vnto kings and mightie Princes, to whome God hath giuen power and authoritie, who being aduertiſed of the honourable and good intertainment made to you by vs, they may be moued hereafter to take pleaſure in intertaining the meaner as wel as the greater, conſidring the mutabilitie of fortune, as by your ſelfe it well appeareth. Frandalo (ſaied ſhe) you may make as many excuſes and faire promiſes as you liſt, yet can you not deny but you haue done mee wrong, yet

doing as you saie you will, your reputation will bee better to the world, although your faith hath failed to our gods: wherefore let vs goe where it pleaseth you. With that she got vpon her palfrey, and Frandalo bareheaded leading her horse, till they came neere vnto the towne, where they heard a great noise, that made the two knights thinke, either their enterprise to be discouered, or that their Souldiours assailed the Towne. And fearing they had ben repulsed, began to repent themselues of their long staying with the Princesse, to whom Frandalo in most courteous maner saied: Madame, Is it not your pleasure (meane time that I and my companion goe vnto the towne) to stay here for vs with this Gentlewoman and my cousin Foronis? I truly (said Heliaxa) and I will not depart from hence before I heare of you againe. With that Frandalo and Esplandian ranne in great hast towards the Towne, where they found their companions fighting with those of Alfarin, among the which were Talanque, Amboor, the king of Denmarke, Gandalin and Lazinde, that had giuen the town a hard skirmish on that side, thinking to giue them so much to doe, that in the meane time the army by sea might assaile the water gate: but they were too soone discouered, whereby they found great resistance on all sides: Neuertheless Norandel and Belleris had gotten the Barriers, and repulsed the enemies vnto the pallisadoes. Which Esplandian and Frandalo perceiuing, they lighted on foot, and being couered with their shields, their swords in their hands, passed through the preasse, and with bold courage, went so farre, that they slewe great number of the enemies: for the Alfarins to defend their citty issued out of the gates, and the Christians to withstand, did most valiantly, but the place was so narrow, they could not hurt their enemies so much as in the open field. Whereby it happened, that Frandalo and Esplandian minding either to winne or loose, stepped so farre forward, that the Alfarins entred the towne, and they after, found themselues alone within the same among their enemies, and that so farre, that had it not ben for Frandalo, Esplandian (that take no care but only to kill and ouerthrow the enemy) had ben inclosed by them, but he pulled him backe. Whereby the two knights perceaued

the danger they were in, wherefore by little and little they got vnto the steps, that went vpon the walls where they sustained many hard assalts without being hurt, although the enemy ceased not to throw Lances, Stones, Darts, and all other weapons at them they could find, none of the daring come to handie strokes, for if any aduanced himselfe to shew his prowes, it cost him his life, or els was throwne downe headlong. Meane time Norandel and his company, that had seene Frandalo and Esplandian shut into the towne, sought by all meanes to scale the wals, or else to breake the gates: but all in vaine, for they within defended it so well with Oile, scalding Water, Logs and Stones, that diuers of them were ouerthrowne, and ended their liues most miserably. And fighting in that sort, a knight all armed came from the Hauen, crying with a loud voice and said: Be of good courage my children, be of good courage, defend this quarter well, for our enemies on the sea side haue not as yet found meanes to set one man on land, and yet haue lost aboue two hundred of their men. By God (saied one of them) I see not one that standeth idle, yet can we not ouercome these two knights. Why so (said the other:) They are (saied he) entered in among vs, and wee haue ben these two houers fighting with them, but all in vaine, for the youngest of them fighteth so valiantly, that wee dare not approch them: And whith is more, hee and his companion in despight of vs all haue gotten those staires, where they now defend themselues, and that so well that we can find no means to driue them thence, although many of our men haue been slain by them, & others cruelly wounded. I am of opinion (said the knight) that wee receiue the vnto mercy, for it may bee they are such men, that is to haue them againe, the enemy will bee glad to giue king Armato in exchange, and returne againe into their country. Whereunto they all agreed, and therewith the knight that had giuen them that counsell, made signes vnto Esplandian that they would parley with them, whereby the assault ceased for a time, and the knight spake vnto them in this manner, Sir knights, you see it is impossible for you to escape from hence, and it were great pitty that two so valiant knights should die so young now in the flower of

your ages. But this wee will doe, yéeld your selues, and wee will saue your liues. Sir knight (saied Esplandian) If wee die at this time, we are quit for euer after, but so much there wanteth therof, and wee haue so good hearts and so sure a confidence in Iesus Christ, in whose quarrell we fight, that wee hope he will giue vs meanes not only to escape this danger, but to spoile the Towne and lead you prisoners with vs: Wherefore take this counsell for your selues, and yéelde you vnto vs before the wrath of God bée further moued against you. When they that stood about them heard those wordes, both great and small began to crie with a lowd voice, saying: Stay that villaine, let him die, or wee will die here at his fét: wherewith they assailed them so fiercely, that they were constrained to get vpō the highest steps. But not long after they repulsed the enemy so valiantly with stones (whereof they found great quantity vpon the Portall) that from that time forwards they had no longer stomacks to assaile them. But Norandel and the rest being without, vnderstanding the noise and the voice of their companions, whome they esteemed dead or taken prisoners, determined to set fire on the gates, while the rest assailed the towne: Wherewith euery man ranne to fetch wood, which the Alfarins perceiued, but to conclude, they could not shun it, but whether they would or not, the draw-bridge and the gates were set on fire: wherewith they were so abashed, that most part of them began to flie vnto the great temple of Iupiter, the principall place of strength within their citty, the rest staying behind, with full determination rather to die then suffer the Christians to enter the Towne. And séeing the gates burnt downe, so many of them ranne to fetch water, that not long after the Christians had meanes to assaile the towne on that side, which assault continued so long that day failed, yet could they not enter by reason of the great resistance the Alfarins made, but the two knights that were aboue did them so much hurt with blockes and stones, that not any of them durst appeare, whereby the Christians became maisters of the towne. Wherin great number of people, both men, women, and children, were put to the sword, and more had died had it not ben night, specially on the

water

water side where Gastilles and his army entred with most great fury. Neuertheleſſe fearing leaſt the Aſſarins ſhould aſſemble a-gaine, and in the night they might bee repulſed, hee commanded a retraict to bee ſounded, being well aſſured the next day to haue the towne at their pleaſure. And for the ſame cauſe he ſent to the army on land that they ſhould do the like: wherewith euery man retired, ſetting watch in thoſe places where moſt need required. The towne in this ſort being conquered, and the people gotten into the great temple of Jupiter, Eſplandian minding not to loſe the Princeſſe Heliaxe, nor the Giant Foron, that he and Frandalo left with Carmelle, deſired Gandalin and Lazinde to goe fetch them, and with them hee ſent Sergil his Squire to bring them to the place: which they preſently did, and made ſuch haſt, that they found her ſitting by a great fire that Foron had made, where light-ting off their horſes & ſaluting Heliaxe, Gandalin ſaid: Madame, my lord Eſplandian praieth you to come vnto the place where hee ſtaieth for you. My friends (ſaied ſhee) I knew him not, true it is I was brought hether by two knights, whereof one is Frandalo, that I haue knowne long time, but for the other I aſſure you as farre as I remember I neuer ſawe him before. Madame (ſaied Carmelle) hee is ſonne to the valiant knight Amadis de Gaule, whoſe fame is ſpread ſo farre about the world. Truly (ſaied Heli-axa) I haue heard of him, ſo haue you (as I thinke ſaid Carmelle) of my lord Eſplandian his ſonne: for hee alone conquered the ca-ſtle La montaigne defendu, and now lately hath taken king Ar-mato your father in lawe, and I can aſſure you hee is one of the courteous knights liuing in the world. I am much abaſhed then (ſaied ſhe) how he ſhewed himſelfe ſo vncourteous in my behalf, not ſpeaking vnto me while I was in his company, yet me thin-keth being his priſoner, hee could haue done no leſſe then com-fort mee, either with good ſpeeches or faire promiſes, whereof hee hath vſed ſo few, that while I liue I ſhall neuer thinke well of him. Madame (ſaied Carmelle) you take the matter otherwiſe then it is, for if hee refrained to ſpeake vnto you, it was by rea-ſon of the great acquaintance hee perceiued Frandalo to haue with you, vnto whome he is ſo great a friend, that hee was not

onely

onely content to giue him leaue to entertaine you, but much greater fauour would hee doe vnto him if hee can. You may say what you will (saied shee:) Neuertheleſſe, if he haue no other excuſe then that you alledge in his behalfe, hee ſhall neuer loſe the diſliking hee hath gotten at my hands. Madame (saied Gandalin) I am well aſſured hee will amend that fault when it pleaſeth you, wherefore I pray you determine what you meane to doe, for hee hath commaunded vs to doe as pleaſeth you: My friendes (saied Heliaxe) I would gladly ſleepe till it bee day, then I will bee ready to goe where you thinke good, but I pray you tell mee what noiſe it was I heard of late within the Towne. Madame (saied Lazinde) It is not yet three howers ſince the Towne was taken by aſſault. God God (saied ſhe) what miſerable fortune was that for the poore inhabitants, I thinke they are all put vnto the ſword. No madame (saied Lazinde) the greater part haue ſaued themſelues in the great Temple of Iupiter, but they will hardly eſcape when it is day, for our Generals are determined to burne the Temple. If it bee ſo (saied ſhee) that Frandalo hath any credite with his companions, and that hee that ſent you bee ſo courteous as this Gentlewoman reporteth him to bee, I hope they will take pittie on the poore people: at leaſt, if not for the loue of them, I truſt vpon requeſt for my ſake they will not refuſe it. And to the end I come not thether too late, I pray you when day appeareth, let vs preſently depart, wherewith laying her downe vpon a cloke, ſhee paſſed the reſt of the night, not greatly to her eaſe.

CHAP. XXX.

How Gandalin and Lazinde brought the Princeſſe Heliaxe and the Giant Foron into the Towne of Alfarin to Eſplandian and Frandalo, and of the honourable intertainement they had.

Heli-

HElíaxe that had not slept all that night, being greeued for the losse of the towne of Alfarin, the ordinary abiding place of Alphorax her husband, and withall the pleasantest and most delicious place of all Turkie, perceauing day to appeare, waked the two knights, making her account if shee might get into the towne before the destruction of the temple, the people that were fled into it, (by her request and humble supplication to Esplandian and Frandalo) should bee saued. With that they all mounted on their horses, and made such hast, that they entred into the town, as the Christians began to assault the fortresse, and when Frandalo perceiued the Princesse Helíaxe, hee rode vnto her, bidding her God morrow, and taking her palfry by the bridle bareheaded, brought her to Esplandian and his company that did her great honor, knowing her to be a kings doughter, and wife to so great a Prince. With that shee asked Frandalo which of them was Esplandian, Madame (saied hee, pointing vnto him) here he is ready to do you any seruice that he can, as hee hath assured mee. But when shee perceiued him to bee so yong and of so great beautie, shee was abashed to think how nature had furnished him with so many good perfections, especially of so great and incomparable force, whereof he had the commendation among the most valerous knights: wherewith shee saied vnto Frandalo, In good faith I haue heard him commended in diuers places for one of the best knights liuing in the world, and of mine owne knowledge I haue séen him doe that which I would neuer haue thought to bee in him, considering his yong yeares, so that if hee abound as much in courtesie as he doth in valour and beautie, I thinke him to bee the bravest Gentleman that may bee found: which I shall presently sée if he graunt me one request. Madame (saied Esplandian, blushing at the praises she vsed in respect of him) If I doe it not, you shall be the first that euer I refused gift vnto in all my life: and considering your great beautie and most courteous behauiour, howe should it be possible for me to disobay your will: I pray you then sir knight (said she) to pardon the poore people that are within the

Temple, and graunt them vnto mee, with leaue to send them where I shall thinke good, not hurting them any more. In good truth madame (said Esplandian) you shall not be refused for so smal a matter, and I will doe so much with the other knights, that they shall giue consent, as also to your owne libertie and the Giant Forons, to guide you where it pleaseth you, which Frandalo did most earnestly desire at our handes before you arriued here: And for his sake loke what else you will command at our hands, wee are ready to performe it with all our hearts. For the which the Princesse Heliaxe thanked him most heartely, and turning to Frandalo, said vnto him: Sir Knight, the good that you and your companions doe vnto mee, shall neuer bee forgotten on my part, but I will by all means seeke to acknowledge the same, although presently I cannot doe it: wherefore if it pleaseth you, cause your souldiours to retire, that these poore distressed people may come forth according to your promise: In the meane time I will goe comfort them, for I am in doubt most part of them are rather dead then liuing: with that she desired Carmelle to bear her company, they twa going to the Temple gate, which they found fast shut and rampired vp: then shee called so lowd, that some of them spake vnto her: but neuer did men by pardon from their Prince, brought backe againe from the Gibbet, more reioice, nor were better comforted then they when they knew her, thinking the prince Alphorax had made some agreement with their enemies. Wherefore they opened a little wicket, whereat shee and the Gentlewoman entered into the Temple, they asking the Princesse howe it was her chaunce to come thether in so good a time to succour them, that looked for no other fauour then most cruell death. My friends (saied she) I haue done so much with the Christians (by Frandalos meanes) whome I haue known long time, that they are content to let you iffue forth, your liues saued, and goe where it pleaseth you, and my selfe likewise that had fallen into their hands as well as you: wherefore chuse whether you will follow mee to Tesifant where my lord Alphorax is, who for my sake will shew you all the fauor and courtesie he may. When the poore people vnderstood the agreement made for them by the

Princesse

Princesse Heliaxe, they all agréed to goe with her, and not forsake her, giuing her most hearty thankes for the good shee had wrought them. Then (saied Heliaxe) let those that haue armour put it off, and come all forth with mee. Then she being accompanied in that manner, came vnto Esplandian, and shewing him great numbers of women and little children that stood about her, said vnto him: I pray you sir knight behold the good whereof you are the cause, and thinke what domage it had beene if these poore silly soules had suffered death for no offence, wherein you are worthy great commendations. And yet (said shée, smiling) while I liue, I shall not forget the small account you made of me when Frandalo and you found mee before my pauillion, after the ouerthrow of my knights. Wherefore madame (saied Esplandian) I marualle (saied shée) why you aske mee such a question, séeing you might well conceiue what gréefe I had in mind, yet did you not so much as once salute me, or vse word vnto mee: in good truth it was but discourteously done of you. Madame (saied hee) I beséech you pardon mee, for the fault I committed in your behalfe, was not done for want of bringing vp, but fearing to bréede some iealousie in Frandalos mind, séeing him so much affected to doe you seruice, together with the good countenaunce you shewed vnto him, although you had lost your men. This excuse (said Heliaxe) is not to be accepted, neither shal you escape so easily therewith: which shee spake with so good a countenance, that her séeming to bee offended, contented all the company: wherefore Esplandian saied vnto her, Madame, I am content to make amends for this great fault, or to doe what pennance it pleaseth you. The pennance (said she) that you shall haue shall be, that according to the promise of mercy you haue made vnto these poore people, as also of fauour in mine owne behalfe, you giue vs leaue to go vnto the citty of Tessant to my husband, that for the same we thinke the better of you. Madame (said Esplandian) you haue already vnderstood our minds, wherefore you may frély go whether it pleaseth you, and I my self will be your guide if it be your pleasure. With that Heliaxe gaue them many thankes, and taking her leaue, got vpon her palfrey, and being accompanied of Foron with a

great number of the poore people, toke the way that went to Tesifant, Frandalo going with her aboue a league and more, and further would haue gone although hee were wounded in diuers places of his body, but she desired him to go back againe. For (said she) although like a good & curteous knight you haue had ỹ means not onely to serue mee, but also to saue the life of me and mine, it may bee I shall not haue so the like to doe the same for you if you fall into my lord Alphorax hands: who as I thinke ere now is aduertised of my misfortune, whereby I am in doubt hee is already in the field with great number of men to succour me. And if it should be so, I know him so impatient, that if hee met with you (being already moued with the losse of Alfarin, as also the iniury my knights haue receiued, and my selfe likewise as hee will suppose) the pleasure that you doe me would breed a danger to your person, and to me great greefe, wherefore I pray you goe no further, but turne backe againe. Frandalo knew her counsell to be good, wherewith hee committed her to God: leauing her in the guard of his cousin Foron, and therewith returned the same way that hee came. It was then somewhat late, wherfore Heliaxe hauing trauailed vnto the aduenturous fountain, and finding her pauilion as yet standing vp, determined not to depart from thence till the next day in the morning, that shee take the way that led to Tesifant. And hauing ridden till noone, shee met the Prince Alphorax, with a great number of knights that all night had stated vpon the way to the castle La montaigne defendu, thinking those that had take his wife would lead her thether, to haue her in safe keeping, and such was their opinion that brought him newes thereof. But they met not any man in the way, wherfore they returned againe to go vnto the aduenturous fountain, much greeued when they perceiued the Princesse Heliaxe comming towards them, to whom Alphorax ranne, and imbracing him with a louing kisse, asked her how she had escaped from the enemy. My lord (said she) when I shall haue told you how, yet am I in doubt you will hardly beleeue it. And to say the truth, it seemeth fortune hath taken pleasure in one day to make mee know both the good and euill shee could doe vnto mee. Then shee shewed him of the

ouerthrow

ouerthrow of her knights, the words that passed betwéene Frandalo, Esplandian, and her : and lastly the honest intertainement they vsed in her behalfe. Truly madame (saied Alphorax) it is very strange, and I cannot imagine how these Christian dogs (hauing taken my Towne of Alfarin by assault) haue vsed so much humanity, not only to these people, but haue saued your honour, being such and so beautifull a lady as you are. But it is to bee thought, that our gods hauing compassion on me, haue preserued you, as the thing I loue and most estéeme off in this world. Yet if I liue but one yeare longer, I sweare and promise vnto you to assemble so many men together, that the citty of Constantinople and her periured Emperour shal suffer and indure much woe: in such manner, that the memory thereof shal not be extinct for one thousand yeares after my decease. Heliaxe that perceiued him enter into choler, to pacefie the same, answered him and said: My lord, you may doe it when it pleaseth you, but at this present you sée here a great number of poore desolate people, I beséech you speake vnto them and comfort them as wel as you may, for their whole trust is in you, with that Alphorax going vnto them, gaue them many gracious and comfortable spéeches, and with them returned to the citty of Tessant.

CHAP. XXXI.

How Gastilles tooke his leaue of Esplandian, and sailed to Constantinople, and of the arriuall of Palomir, Branfil, and other knights of great Brittaigne at the towne of Alfarin.

THe Towne of Alfarin brought vnder the subiection of the knights of the castle La montaigne defendu, as you heard before, Gastilles hauing prepared himselfe to return to Costantinople, went vnto Esplandian, and saied vnto him: My lord, when I departed from the Emperour, hee gaue me expresse commandement with al spéed

to aduertise him what I had done, to the end he might determine either to come himselfe in person, if occasion serued, with the army hee is already preparing, or else wholly to breake off his enterprise, for it now beginneth to bee Winter, and seeing (as it is Gods will) that your affaires on this side are in good estate, I am determined as to morrow to depart hence to Constantinople, that the Emperour vnderstanding by mee what hath passed on this side the sea, he shall not bee forced for this yeare to bee at further charges, wherof before this time I had willingly certefeed him, had it not ben the daily expectation I had to see ỹ end of this our last enterprise, which God bee thanked is fallen out as we desired. My lord (saied Esplandian) seeing the Emperour (as you say) by your returne may receiue both, pleasure and profite, you shall doe well to make hast thether: one thing I beseech you doe for me, that is, most humbly to commend me vnto his grace, assuring him, that not any subiect hee hath, is or shall bee readier to obey him then my selfe: and as touching our proceedings, for that you haue personally both seene and beene an actor in the same, you can aduertise him at large. Shew him likewise I pray you that I kéepe king Armato as his prisoner, attending his pleasure what shall bee done with him, but not the castle of La montaigne defendu, for I haue conquered the same in fauour and vnder the protection of the Princesse Leonorine, kéeping the same at this present onely to her vse and as her seruant, as I meane to continue during my life. But if it pleaseth his grace to giue the Towne of Alfarin to Frandalo, not onely thereby to increase his will and desire to serue him, but also for that hee deserueth a greater reward: so dooing, mee thinketh hee shall therein shewe the part of a liberall Prince, considering the seruice and fidelitie hee hath done and shewed in all places where hee hath beene employed: You shall tell the Emperour also, that according to my fathers will and commandement, I hope shortly to bee in Constantinople to present my selfe before his grace and the ladie Leonorine, as by the Gentlewoman Carmelle I haue giuen thē to vnderstand, wherewith I think you are not vnacquainted,

praying

praying you in the meane time, to make my excuse to them, in that I haue deferred it off so long; for in a manner, you are not ignorant what hath beene the cause. My lord (said Gastilles) the Emperour my uncle so much desireth your company, that I neuer saw man more greeued, nor woman than the Princesse my cousin, when they perceiued the great serpent passe before Constantinople, to crosse the straightes of Bosphore. I will shewe them what you say, and in the morning about breake of day, I meane, God willing, to set saile. Will you not (said Esplandian) first goe visit Frandalo, Manely, and others, that lie wounded in their beds, to know if they will send any message to the Empeperour: That I will (said Gastilles.) Goe then (said Esplandian) and I will beare you companie. With that they went to Frandalos lodging, where they were no soner entred, but the watch that stood vpon the tower ouer the water gate, discouered about three miles in the sea, a great shippe that with full saile made towards the towne: whereof they aduertised Gastilles, who presently caused two Brigandines to goe forth to see if they were friends or enemies: and they were not long before they returned againe with the great shippe in their company, wherin were Palomir, Branfil, Helian le delibere, Garuate du Val Craintif, Brauor sonne of the gyant Balan that king Amadis had newly made knight, Imosel de Burgoigne, Ledarin de Faiarque, Listoran de la tour Blanche, Trion cousin to quéene Briolanie, Tentilles le Superbe, Guille bien esteme Grodonan brother to Angriote Destrauaux, and the two sonnes of Isamie gouernour of the firme Isle, with many others that had imbarked themselues in great Britaine to goe to aid Esplandian: and comming to the castle La montaigne defendu, they had intelligence by the fishermen at sea, of the ouerthrow of Armatos naule, his captiuitie, with the taking of the citie of Alfarin, whereat they much reioyced, especially when they knew by Gastilles souldiers that not any of their companions were slaine in the assault. They being arriued at the towne, as they began to lande, Esplandian with diuers others went thither to receiue them: where betweene them were many salutations and welcomes giuen: which done, Esplandian led them

them to his lodging, where they refreshed themselues about two houres, before they went to visit Frandalo, of whome Esplandian gaue such commendations, that they desired him to bring them where he lay, which hee presently did: but when Frandalo knew who they were (beeing ashamed to see them vse such courtesie to him) could not well tel what to say: and as he entertained them, Palomir spake vnto him and said: Sir knight, I and my companie haue heard so great commendation of your valour, that there is not one of vs but would be ready to obey and serue you as our chiefe commander: wherefore, we beseech you, vse all diligence you may to be healed of your wounds, that we may presently go into the field vnder your conduction. My lords (said Frandalo) I pray you pardon me, I am well assured that my valour is none such as you report, whereby I deserue not the praise you giue me, neither did I euer any thing worthy commendation, but only by my lord Esplandians meanes. Neuertheless I hope, if God spareth me life and health, so to behaue my selfe, that all men shall know the desire I haue to doe seruice vnto Christendome, and particularly vnto euery one of you. Companion (said Esplandian) I pray you take care to be cured of your griefe: that done, wee will take order for the rest: and for that these knightes are wearie with their long trauaile on the sea, I pray you giue them leaue for to depart, and in the morning we will visit you againe. Which he said, fearing least too much talke might cause him fall into a feuer, for Gastilles before that had beene deuising with him aboue two houres together, touching the conference betweene him and Esplandian as concerning his returne vnto the Emperour. With that the knights bad him farewell, and went out of the chamber: on the other side Gastilles made all the hast he could to depart from thence the next day in the morning, and taking leaue of all his friends, the same night he entred into his ship: & when day began to appeare, he set saile with so good winde, that within eight daies he discouered ỹ city of Cõstantinople, entring into the hauen: which ỹ Emperor vnderstanding, went to receiue him, & going with him to the palace, asked him what he had done in his viage, & whether Armato were retired frõ the siege or not.

My lord (saied hee,) The good knight Esplandian and his company most humbly commend themselues vnto your grace, especially Frandalo, whom I can assure you to bee one of the best seruaunts that euer you had. With that the Empresse accompanied with the Princesse Leonorine, Quæne Minoresse, and diuers other ladies and Gentlewoman came thether, to whom Gastilles doing humble reuerence, they bad him welcome, and because hee stayed to doe Esplandians commendations to the Princesse Leonorine, the Emperour said vnto him: Truly nephew, you shall make an end, to shewe vs what hath happened in your voiage, then if it please you you may court the ladies. Wherefore I pray you tell from the beginning what you haue done. My lord (saied he) at our departure from hence wee had so good a winde, that without any let wee arriued at the castle La montaigne defendu, yet could wee not make such hast, but that Esplandian with his great Serpent, and Frandalos ships had already drowned and ouerthrowne certaine of the enemies ships, and made the rest to flie, and the next day after king Armato was taken prisoner, his army ouerthrowne and put to flight: but the sport was when I saluted the Turke, and that hee knew mee, then hee told the great rage the Turke was in, the threatnings and speethes hee vsed vnto him, the ouerthrow of the twenty knights at the aduenturous fountaine, the skirmishes and assaults at the Towne of Alfarin, the danger wherein Esplandian and Frandalo found themselues, the taking of the Towne and of Heliaxe, her deliuery with the peoples that fled to the temple of Iupiter, and how that before hee imbarked himselfe to returne, a great shippe arriued there from great Brittaigne with diuers knights therin, whose names and surnames he rehearsed, as hauing seene them with king Amadis. Further my lord (said he) the good knight Esplandian willed me to shewe you that hee keepeth king Armato till your grace shall dispose of him, as also the citty of Alfarin, but for the castle La montaigne defendu, hee saith hee mindeth not to yeeld the same to any other then to the Princesse Leonorine, in whose name hee hath conquered it, hoping as her seruaunt and no other to defend the same. When will he be here (saied the Emperour:) With all the

ſpæd hée may (ſaied Gaſtilles) as hee hath promiſed mee. In good faith (ſaied the Emperour) I would it were this day before to morrow, I haue ſo great deſire to knowe him by reaſon of the great chiualry that daily increaſeth in him, in ſuch manner, that if heretofore the knight with the Gréene Sword hath béen eſtéemed the beſt in all the world, now his ſonne diminiſheth a great part of his glory. And all being well conſidered, I thinke that Amadis hath not done more in tenne yeares time, then Eſplandian hath accompliſhed in the ſpace of tenne wéekes: But touching Frandalo, is hee ſo well diſpoſed to our ſeruice as you make report? My lord (ſaied Gaſtilles,) It is not poſſible to doe better then he hath done: wherefore, my lord Eſplandian willed mee to ſhew you, that for the better entertaining him in his procéedings, hée is of aduiſe that your grace ſhould giue him the citty of Alfarin, not knowing any man worthier then hee to kéepe it. In good truth (ſaied the Emperour) Eſplandian and his companions haue had the paines to conquer it, wherefore I am content they haue the diſpoſing thereof: Neuertheleſſe, if they reſt vpon my conſent therein, I am well content it ſhall bee ſo, and I will not ceaſe to ſhewe him greater fauour, if hee perſeuer as hee hath begun. And you daughter (ſaied hee to the Princeſſe Leonorine) what ſay you to this that my couſin Gaſtilles hath told you touching Eſplandian, that ſayeth hee kæpeth the caſtle La montaigne defendu for you onely? My lord (ſaied ſhe) I know not how you and many others eſtéeme ſo much of him, conſidering the ſmall obedience hee ſheweth to his father; for if he were ſuch a knight as hee is reported, hee had long ſince come hether to acquite the promiſe wherevnto hee is bound: which maketh mee verily thinke, the ſpéech Carmelle vſed of him, and all that hee hath ſent you by word of mouth by my couſin Gaſtilles, are onely but diſſimulations. And I for my part am not yet determined (although hee reporteth himſelfe to bee my knight) to accept him for the ſame, much leſſe to pardon him before hee comes in perſon to excuſe his fault, then I will conſider what I haue to doe. The emperor that perceaued his doughter ſpeak with ſuch a choler, & therwith to bluſh more then ordinary, could not refrain

laugh-

laughter, and saied vnto her. What daughter, doe you refuse the seruice of the best knight in all the world? I my lord (saied shee) and so should euery maister his seruant, when hee flieth from his presence, and obeyeth not his commandements no more then he hath done both yours and mine. Truly sweet heart (said the Emperour) I like you well, I would to God that nature had furnished you with a bodie like vnto your heart, if shee had, shee had made you a perfect man, and not a woman as you are. Nowe nephewe you heare my doughters answere, I pray you let Esplandian know it, that he may make hast hether, least he lose not her good will. And although the Emperour spake it as in iest, Esplandian toke it otherwise when he heard the newes by a squire that Gastilles sent vnto him.

CHAP. XXXII.

How Frandalo accompanied of fourescore Knights, issued out of Alfarin towards Tesifant, and of the taking of Eiraca captaine of the Towne.

THe knights of great Brittaigne arriued in the Towne of Alfarin, (as you heard before) Frandalo and others that were hurt being healed of their woũds, Belleris that ceased not continually to hearken after Alphorax, was aduertised by his spies, that hee continued in the citty of Tesifaunt, which hee and Branfil told vnto the rest of their company, who therewith being somewhat incouraged, very earnestly desired Frandalo to lead thē forth, and bring them to some place where they might lie in ambush to surprise Alphorax or some of his companie if they chaunced to stray abroad. Frandalo not willing to deny them any reasonable request, agreed (with the

consent of Esplandian) to depart the next night following, and to take with thē to the number of fourescore knights and no more, which Esplandian liked well, he minding to bee one. Whereupon those that were appointed for the tourney prepared themselues, and about sunne setting issued out of Alfarin, Frandalo and Belleris knowing ỹ country so well, that they needed no other guides, but trauailed streight towards Tesifant, and hauing ridden till eleuen of the clocke at night, they came vnto a crosse way, where Frandalo aduised them to deuide themselues in two companies, willing the knights (that before that time had neuer ben in Turkie) to hold close together. For (said he) the warres in these countries are far otherwise then they are in great Brittaigne, where knights vse most commonly to trauaile alone without company, and although they chaunce sometimes to ride in companies, the least occasion that happeneth maketh them seperate themselues, but here those that vse armes trauaile in great companies together, whereby the combates that are fought here most commonly are rather battailes then incounters. And more then this, if three hundred Turkes chance to surprise one hundred, thirtie, twenty, or lesse number of their enemies, they take a pride to put them to death, preferring reuenge before certaine kind of honour, that (as I haue vnderstode) is kept and obserued in the West parts, where combates are in a manner equall. Wherefore my friends (saied he) I pray you seperate not your selues, but march all in a company, assuring you that in the place whether wee goe, wee shall not faile to finde men sufficient against whome wee may imploy our forces, and shewe what valour is in vs. I know that within halfe a mile of Tesifant Alphorax vseth oftentimes to lie at a house that hee hath caused to bee made called Gruobuiach, where if it bee our good fortunes wee may chaunce to finde him, wherefore I am of aduise that we deuide our selues in two companies, my nephew Belleris shall take the left hand, and lie in ambush nere vnto the village of Jeuiniomelo, from whence hee may easily perceaue when any man marcheth out of Tesifant, and I with Esplandian and the other halfe of our company will followe

this

this way that bringeth vs vnto a valley néere to Gruobinach, where we will secretly stay if néed require, to succour each other: whereunto they all agréed: but before they departed thence, they found their enterprise to be far more dangerous than they estéemed it, as hereafter you shall heare. Belleris and his companie leauing Frandalo, trauailed so long, that about two houres before day they met fiue souldiours, whome Belleris saluted in the Arabian language, asking them of what place they were. My Lord, said they, we are going to the Diuine of Serasse. My good friends (said he) we trauaile this night to Tessiant to aduertise ỹ prince Alphorax of the great dommage and destruction the Christian dogges continually doe and within short space haue done vnto ỹ countrey round about: for they are issued out of Alfarin, & haue taken and carried away all they can find: and as yet are abroad, not ceasing to execute all tyrannie they can deuise: neuertheles, if it pleaseth him to giue vs aid, we know the place of their retrait, where we may easily inclose them, & not one of them shall escape. What are you, said the souldiours, that bring vs these newes? Friends (said Belleris) I am Roussan, cousin to Eiraca, chiefe captaine of Tessiant. We can tell you good newes of him, said the souldiours, wherewith we thinke you will be well pleased: for he is not farre from hence, being ridden out of Tessiant with two hundred knights to goe vnto Falandie, to see the same be not so lightly surprised as Alfarin was. But because he willed vs to ride before, we will stay no longer: wherewith they badde them farewell. Friends (said Belleris) the good fortune I wish you I pray God may happen vnto you. With that the souldiours passed on their way, but they had not gone farre when Belleris sent after them, and fearing they would discouer his enterprise, caused them to be taken: and therewith presently dispatched one of his Squires on message to Frandalo, to aduertise him of the enemies béeing abroad with a verie strong and huge companie: whereupon hée wished him to ioyne with them. The Squire made all the haste hée could, but before the newes came to Frandalo, Belleris met with Eiraca and his company about the village of Jentinomely, béeing vpon them before they had time to

put on their helmets. There did the captaine of Tessant shewe himselfe to be no young beginner in armes, for that like a valiant and hardy knight hee entered among the Christians, and being seconded by his men, did most valiantly defend themselues, and assailed the enemy, although at their first encounter ten of their bravest souldiours were vnhorsed and ouerthrowne. And as Euraca entered into the preasse, Norandel and he met together with such force, that Norandel was wounded in the left shoulder, but not sore hurt, and the captaine of Tessant loosing his stirrops, was throwne ouer his horse with so great a strength, that with the fall hee was forced to lie vpon the ground, and could remoue neither hand nor foote, which the Turkes perceauing, to releeue their captaine, did so valiantly, that they ouerthrew foure of the Brittish knights, who neuerthelesse rose presently againe, and with their swords in hand, thrust so many of the Turkes horses into the sides and flankes, that in short space more then twentie of the Turkes were ouerthrowne likewise, and many slain outright: at that charge Enil and Gauarte were hurt, and the rest so hardly handeled, that without Frandalos company that came to succour them, they had all beene ouerthrowne: and in truth they had almost straied too long, but the Squire that Belleris sent vnto them, could not ouertake them before they were in the valey where they should haue met. And although they had heard the sound of their blowes, yet did they not suspect any such perrill, vntill the squire had done his message, wherewith they ranne with all the speed they could vnto the place, where Belleris and his companions (being out of breath) did nothing but recule, and defend themselues against their enemies blowes, that had slaine diuers of them, but that the captain of Tessant would haue them to bee taken and presented to the Prince Alphorax: Neuerthelesse Frandalo, Esplandian, and the rest of their company, made them change opinion: for when they perceaued their companions so hardly matched by the enemy, they entered among them with such fury, that had it not beene for Euraca (who at that time behaued himselfe most valiantly) they had ouerthrown ý Turks at their first onset; but by reason of the great resistance hee made,

made, they continued fighting halfe an houre after, wherein hée maintained himselfe so well, that Esplandian could neuer take him before hée had ouerthrowne him, and pulled off his helmet, wherewith hée yéelded: meane time Frandalo and his companions being in the middle of the enemies, laide so well about them, slaying horses, pulling away shields, and doing so valiantly, that wonder it was to behold them, yet did not the Turkes once séeme abashed, but still fought most couragiously, vntil such time they perceiued their captaine taken prisoner, which caused them to flie and turne their backes: but not all of them, for there lay more than one hundred and fiftie of them dead vpon the ground, the rest saued themselues by meanes of the darke night. It was then about an houre before day: and Frandalo fearing that those of Tessant (hearing of the ouerthrow) would issue forth to cut off their passage, presently caused captaine Eiraca to be remounted, and all the Christians that wanted horses, and with all spéed rode backe againe to Alfarin, not the same way they came, but another way somewhat farther about; wherein they trauailed so long, that about sunne rising they entred into a great wode, where they alighted to refresh both themselues and their horses: and staying not long there least they should bée surprised, they made such spéed, that about sunne setting they arriued in ỹ town: meane time newes came to Tessant of the ouerthrowe of their men, wherewith Alphorax was in such a rage, that in a manner hé séemed desperate. But for this time wé haue sufficiently discoursed of martiall affaires, now wé meane to bring Loue in place, who desiring to minister some comfort to the Princes Leonorine that liued in great paine, expecting the arriuall of her friend Esplandian, caused him to depart from Alfarin to visit her in the citie of Constantinople, as in the Chapters following you shall heare.

CHAP.

CHAP. XXXIII.

Of the great griefe Esplandian had, vnderstanding by the messenger that Gastilles sent vnto him, what displeasure the Princesse Leonorine had conceiued against him.

HOw heard before how Gastilles shewed the Emperour what Esplandian had done, and what message hée sent vnto him, and to the Princesse Leonorine, as also what answere she made, which Gastilles by his Squire writ and sent vnto him, hauing charge from the Emperour so to doe, thereby to procure his spédier arriuall in Constantinople. The Squire with his letter made such hast, that hé arriued at Alfarin about fiue daies after the taking of Eiraca, and méeting Carmelle at the gate, asked her if he might find Esplandian at conuenient leisour to deliuer him a letter from Gastilles, but Carmelle being subtill, suspecting it to be some newes from the Princesse Leonorine, that might moue Esplandian, who as then séemed discontent, answered him & said: My good friend, you can hardly speake with him at this time, but follow me and giue me the letter, and I will present it vnto him, and cause him to returne you an answere. The Squire did as she willed him, and followed her to Esplandians lodging: where entring into his chamber, she found him sitting vpon his bed talking with the king of Denmarke, and deliuered him Gastilles letter, which when he read, the teares ranne out of his eyes, and therewith cast forth a great sigh, saying: O Lord: but Carmelle that beheld him, doubting the cause to be as she suspected, asked him if he were ill at ease. Ill: said he, I that I am, and so ill that I would to God I were dead: and loke I pray you, said he, whether I haue cause or not; wherewith stretching forth his hand, he gaue Carmelle the letter, and turning his face, began to make the greatest sorrow in the world. But when shée had read the contents, shée estéemed not thereof, but said vnto Esplandian: What

my

my Lord: are you abashed at so small a matter: By my soule I now perceiue very well, that the affections and loues of men are farre different and much vnlike the passions that we simple women endure, when we fall into the like extremities: and knowe you how: you men doe most commonly take pleasure to manifest and make knowen your loue either by word of mouth or outward shewes, and many times dissemble more than you meane to doe: and which is worse, how much the more the Lady or Gentlewoman you loue is of great desert, or high linage, so much more glory doe you take to make it knowne, not onely that you beare her affection, but that you are beloued and fauoured of her aboue all others: which is cleane contrary to the nature of women (I meane such as may bee tearmed wise and of good vnderstanding) for how much the greater their parentage is, so much more feare they haue to manifest their amorous passions, in such manner, that most commonly both in word, gesture, and countenãce, they outwardly denie that which they haue most deepely engraued in their hearts and mindes: and not without good cause, for that the thing which redoundeth to your praise and commendations (as you think, which is the manifesting of your loue) breedeth to them a certaine spot in their honour, which often times they can not easily deface. Wherefore it is more than expedient, to obserue this modestie and constancie in vs, not that I meane to restraine my selfe vnto this lawe, seeing that all my glory and felicitie dependeth vpon you, in such manner, that I desire no greater happinesse in this world, then that the loue and dutifull obedience I beare vnto you, should be published and made knowne vnto the world, to the end that all those that shall heare of your great valour and my meane estate, may know my great good fortune, to haue the meanes to serue you as I doe. Wherefore my Lord, in my opinion you ought to take the speeches Gastilles hath written vnto you, to be vsed by the lady Leonorine in good part and greatly to your aduantage, for I dare warrant you on mine honour, that your affections are both alike: and to say the truth, she hath behaued her selfe most wisely to dissemble the matter so well as she hath done in the Emperors presence. I deny not but she hath

some cause to be impatient, considering the message I deliuered vnto her in your behalfe, but that is easie to be cured: & although the loue shée hath borne you so long time should be wholly extinguished (which I can hardly beléeue) euen as a bone that is broken in two péeces & set togither againe, is stronger in that place than in any other part, so you being there and in her companie, shall winne that you finde broken, and by that meanes make it stronger than euer it was before. Therefore I am of aduise (that fulfilling her desire) you goe vnto her, and that as soone as possibly you may. Alas Carmelle (said Esplandian) what good or what seruice did I euer doe vnto her, thereby to haue deserued at her hands the least fauour among an infinite number I haue receiued from her: specially by the report of your owne mouth. If therefore shee hath iust occasion to be offended with me, hauing offended her so much, can I hope for any other at her handes than méere disdaine and mortall hatred? My lord (said Carmelle) I am a woman and know the nature of women better than you doe, or then all the men in the world besides, I pray you therefore beléeue me, and go and séeher, and if so be shée entertaine you not according to your desire, then neuer giue credit to my words againe. In faith my good companion (said the king of Denmark) Carmelle giueth you so good and wise counsell, that either you ought to giue credit to her speech, or els wholly driue this fantasie out of your mind, considering (as is most true) that sometimes, and very often, how much the more feruent and extreme the loue of a woman is, so much the sooner is it dead and wholly extinguished, for that their inconstancie is such and so great, that for the least occasion in the world they are ouer ready to Loue, and much more inconsiderately doe they forget the same againe: not that I accuse the Princes Leonorine of so great lightnes, but to say the truth as cõmonly we find, & for my part I know not vpon what occasion you ground your loue, wherby you should make so much accoũt of her, séeing ỳ she neuer saw you, nor you her, but are only content to conceiue well of ech other vpon a certaine renowm ỳ hath spred abroad, & set forth the great perfections ỳ are reported to be in you both: which in truth may bée compared to a fire

made

made of straw, ỹ is no sooner kindled but presẽtly cõsumed: wherfore be not then so much abashed if ỹ princes Leonorine shew her selfe at this presẽt so smally affected towards you, for those ỹ loue most déerly do often times fall into discurtesies & colones of affection, that they disdaine, or (at the least) in the twinkling of an ie, wholly forget those that for a long time they haue loued most intirely, & that for their sakes shal haue hazarded their lines in most dangerous aduentures. Did you neuer heare how Brisarde behaued her selfe in regard of Troilus, after the destruction of Troy, shée loued him so well that she would néds die in his armes: whẽ she was constrained to forsake him, the Gréekes thinking verily she would haue slaine her selfe: & yet was shée scarse issued out of Troy but she wholly forgot her loue Troilus, & transported that vehement loue she had borne him all her life, to Diomedes king of Thrace. O God: What inconstancie: what lightnes: what foundation vpon a sandy groũd was that: This vnconstant woman among other precious ornaments giuen her by Troilus her friend, had a paire of perfumed gloues, which within one houre after her captiuitie she gaue vnto her new friend Diomedes in token of the loue & amity she bare vnto him. What had Troilus said then if he had bẽn present: would he haue beléeued her: I thinke not. And what a point of honestie, I pray you, did Clitemnestra shew vnto her husband, when in stéed of welcoming him home at his comming from the siege of Troy, where he had remained ten yéers togither: she caused him cruelly to be murdered by Egistus her ruffian. But will you heare more exãples of the like matter: & as he began to procéed, Esplandian said vnto him, My good friend, I pray you do not this wrong vnto my lady Leonorine, but let me here your counsell how I may from henceforth gouerne my selfe to satisfie her desire. Go & sée her, said ỹ king, & if you think good I will beare you cõpany. Shall we go & leaue our cõpanions: (said Esplandian) ỹ wil I neuer do: wherfore: said ỹ king: are not Frandalo, Manely, & the rest of their cõpany strong inough to defend ỹ town in your absence: I am of aduise ỹ you send presẽtly for thẽ, & giue them to vnderstand ỹ by reason of certain newes you haue of late receiued, you must be constrained to leaue them for the

ſpace of eight or fiftéene daies: and in like ſort diſpatch Gaſtilles Squire, and write vnto his maſter, that you thanke him heartily for the good remembrance he hath had of you, and that with all ſpéed you will ſend a meſſenger expreſſely vnto the Emperour with an anſwere to that it hath pleaſed him to command to bée written vnto you: in the meane time, I will take order to prepare a ſhip to bring vs to the caſtle La montaigne defendu, where wée will imbarke our ſelues in the great Serpent, that will not faile (as I thinke) to bring vs vnto Conſtantinople, and determine with your ſelfe what companie you meane to take with you. My good friend (ſaid Eſplandian) doe as you thinke good, I am content to hazzard my life in your hands. It ſuffiſeth (ſaid the king) but I pray you ſpeake vnto our companions, and diſpatch the ſquire. With that Eſplandian called for inke and paper, and wrote vnto Gaſtilles as the king of Denmarke had aduiſed him. Next day in the morning Frandalo and the reſt of the companie came into his chamber as they vſed ordinarily to doe, and being together deuiſing of diuers things, Eſplandian ſaid vnto them: My good friends, I am conſtrained to leaue your company for the ſpace of fiftéene daies or three wéekes, to goe about certain vrgent affaires ỹ import me much: I will take with me my brother the king of Denmarke, Gandalin, Enil, Carmelle, and no more. I pray you thinke it not ſtrange, for if I were not conſtrained thereunto, I ſweare vnto you of my faith, I would not do it. There was not any among them that once would aſke him whether he went, but anſwering him, ſaid: That he might goe whither it pleaſed him, & that they for their parts would kéepe ỹ place till he came againe, although he ſtaid a whol yéer before he returned; by this means Eſplandian by little & little framed himſelfe to take his voiage while ỹ king of Denmarke cauſed the ſhip that brought the knights of great Britain thither, to be made ready, & vpon a monday in the morning Eſplandian & his company imbarked themſelues to ſaile vnto the caſtle La montaigne defendu, but they were no ſooner put to ſea, but the wind falling contrary, the ſea roſe ſo high & ſo furious withall, ỹ neither maſt, ſaile, nor cord could hold, but brake all to péeces: in which maner they cõtinued

for

for the space of tenne dates and as many nights, so that neither maister nor marriners could tell in what part they were, for that during that time, the clouds were so thicke and the mist so great, that it made the aire so darke and obscure, that those that were in the shippe could scarse see one the other, expecting nothing else (without the mercy of God) then the ouerthrow of their shippe: which they thought verily had happened, when they arriued at the rocke of the Enchauntresse, wherevpon they were driuen about thrée of the clocke after midnight: wherewith the saylers cast anker, and going on land, staied till day appeared.

CHAP. XXXIII.

How Esplandian and his company went vp vnto the broken pallace of the Enchauntresse, and of the straunge thinges they found there.

ESplandian and his company being on land, not knowing the place where they were arriued, caused a great fire to bee made, about the which they thought to lie downe and sleepe, but they heard such a noise from the top of the rocke, that they were all abashed: with that the winde began to cease, and the sea to ware calme, the skie shewing full of starres, and withall the moone shone so bright, that it seemed as light as if it had ben day: wherefore Esplandian desirous to know what the noise might bee, determined to mount vp the rocke, but he was counselled by his company to stay till the next day in the morning. When Esplandian knew it certainely to be the rocke of the Enchauntresse, and saied vnto the king of Denmarke: In good truth I thinke I haue beene here before, and take it to be the place whether the great Serpent brought me the same day I receaued the order of knighthood, which putteth mee in better hope of our voiage then I had before: which he saied, remembring the scroll with the prophesie that he found in the lions paw. Then he told the king of Denmarke how he conquered the sword he bare,

the death of the serpent, & all ẏ he had sæne vpon the rocke, & it is called (said he) the rock of the Enchauntresse. By God (said Gandalin) you say trew, for I remember, that pursuing after a knight ẏ led a Gentlewoman away, I found your father king Amadis & Grandafor here, & the knight likewise ẏ I sought ẏ had hiddē himselfin ẏ old pallace vpō this rock: thē he told thē frō point to point what had happened vnto him, & the great loue ẏ knight bare vnto ẏ gentilwomā he had carried away by force, but (said he) before we departed she agréed with him, & they promised mariage to ech other, although before ẏ time shée hated him most deadly: neuertheles, vnderstanding ẏ the force he vsed vnto her was only done for ẏ loue he bare her, she clean forgot her former hatred, chāging it to a most excéding loue. In good faith (saied Carmelle) as farre as I perceiue, no man ought to dispaire of any thing hée taketh in hand, no more will I during my life: which shee said in respect of Esplandian, who in time as shée thought might loue her, & wholly forget ẏ Princes Leonorine. And so long they talked, ẏ day began to apear, thē Esplandian said to ẏ king of Denmark: Cōpanion, I pray you stay here for me while I goe vp, for I wil haue no body wō me but Gandalin & Enil, & they shal go with me, not ẏ I fear any danger ẏ may happē vnto me, but only because they may help me to lift vp ẏ tomb wherof I told you euē now. My lord (said ẏ king) I pray you offer me not so much iniury, for I will not leaue you though it cost mee my life, especially in this place where I haue most great desire to sée that I neuer saw before. Séeing it is your pleasure (said Esplandian) let vs go, & let our squires bring some victuals with them, if we néed to eat before we come backe againe: which the squires did, wherwith they began to mount vp ẏ rock, and trauelled so long, that about sunnesetting they came vnto the hermitage, where ẏ great image was erected, wherof you heard before, where they stayed all night, the next day they trauelled again, & came vnto the lake ẏ ran before the old pallace, & because it began to be dark, they determined not to trauel any further for ẏ time, & to say the truth they were weary: but all night ẏ serpēts ẏ issued out of their holes to drink of the water, ceased not to hisse and passe before & about them to assaile them, which they had not

failed

failed to doe, had it not beene for the vertue of Esplandians sword, whereunto no venomous thinges might once approch or come neer. Neuertheless they rested not, but as son as they might see, rose vp & went on their way: and passing by the ruinated monumẽts, they came vnto the pallace of the enchantresse, where they found ẏ gates shut, wherat Esplandian gaue so great a blow with his fot, ẏ they opened, & they entred into the place where the shining tombe stood with the lion vpon it. Then Esplandian said vnto the three knights: In good faith when I was here before, I could not lift vp this plate, I pray you each man prooue what you can do, then I wil see if I be grown stronger in the back thẽ I was at that time: wherwith the king of Denmark assailed to doe it, but what strength so euer hee vsed, it was impossible for him, the like did Gandalin & Enil, but they sped no better then the king, wherat Esplandian began to laugh, & taking it by the two ends, lifted it vp so easily as if it had been a peece of dry wood, yet was it a peece of christall of three fingers thick, & about ten or twelue fote long: vnder it they found an azure stone, the fairest & most orient color ẏ euer was seene ẏ couered a Teader chest which smelt as swete as any balme, ẏ chest being shut with a lo[illegible] emerald stone, hauing a key of diamõds ẏ hong by it at a chain of fine gold, al most artificially cõposed: the stone takẽ vp & ẏ chest opened, they found the image of Iupiter lying therein all of massy gold, garnished with many pearles, rubies, & other inestimable rich iewels, especially a crown ẏ he ware on his head, about ẏ which were placed certain Carboncles in form of Greeke letters, with these words.

Iupiter is great god of all gods, & in his right hand he bare a table cõtaining this prophesie, Whẽ time shal come, that my art & knowledge shal faile, the hart of the Hind inclosed herein, & life restored by thẽ that were the cause of death, the Grecian sheep long time norished in plesant pastures, shal bo cõstrained to feed on a herb bitterer thẽ gal, by means of the extremity the hũgry sea wolues shal put thẽ vnto, whose number shall be so great, that they shall couer the sea in diuers places, in such wise, that the poore sheep inclosed in their great forrest, & diuers of their lambes being dead and torn in peeces, their sheepheard (hauing in a maner lost all hope of restoring thẽ againe)

with

with anguish of heart and mind, in abundance of teares shall lament their great misfortune. Then shall come the braue Lions whelpe, by whose meanes that great troope of wolues shall be driuen away and destroyed. Neuertheleſſe, hee shall take from the sheepeheard his great power, and the best beloued of his sheepe, whereupon he shal seaze, in such sort, that his strong teeth and sharpe clawes shall enter into her heart, and the entrailes of her body, the rest of the flocke resting in the power and gouernement of him and his fierce company, whereby not long after it shall come to passe, that the great deceitfull Serpent, the inchaunted sword, and this high rocke, shal sink into the bottome of the sea, and shall neuer after be seene againe of any man.

But although Esplandian vnderstode the Grecke tongue, yet could he not giue any interpretation or exposition to this prophesie, no more could any of his company: wherefore they determined not to stay long about the same, but were more busied to behold the stones and great riches they sawe within the tombe, which they determined to take with them, and return vnto their ships without staying any longer, for their victuals began to fail: wherefore Esplandian called Carmelle to take the Lion, hee and the king of Denmarke tooke the plate of christall, Gandalin and Enil the azure stone, and the Squires the Cedar chest with the Image of Iupiter. And in that sort they issued out of the pallace, descending downe the rocke, till about euening they came vnto ỹ hermitage, where they staied all night: the next day they went on till they found their ships, wherein about sunsetting they imbarked themselues: and because Esplandian would not be seene in Constantinople without the great Serpent, hee commanded the master of the ship to direct his course to the castle called La montaigne defendu, which he did. But hauing sailed about two daies & more, as the king of Denmark sat talking with Esplandian about the letter that was sent vnto him, hee asked him if he thought not good ỹ he should make a voiage vnto ỹ Princesse Leonorine to vnderstand the truth of her affection towards him. For (saied hee) it may be Galtilles hath mistaken her words, or the Emperor himselfe hath commanded him to write vnto you in such sort, ỹ therby

you ſhould make the moze haſt to goe thether: at the leaſt I ſhall knowe of her what her pleaſure is, and howe you ſhal gouern your ſelfe in reſpect of her. Ha my good friend (ſaid Eſplandian) you haue toucht me now euen at the quicke, If you would doe me ſo much fauour, you ſhall bind mee foꝛ euer vnto you: meane time I will ſtay foꝛ you in the gulfe where I found you with Frandalo, when we raiſed ẏ ſiege of the caſtle Lamontaigne defendu, Aſſure your ſelfe (ſaid the king) I will do my good will. There was belonging to their ſhip a little Pinnace, which the maiſter toꝁe with him (beſides the boat) to ſaue himſelfe and his people if any tempeſt ſhould happen, wherin the king with certain mariners to guide him entred, and taking their leaue of Eſplandian, ſailed foꝛwards with ſo good a winde, ẏ in ſhoꝛt ſpace they loſt the ſight of ẏ great ſhip. But the next night following there happened ſuch a tepeſt, that at the breake of day their Pilot knew not where hee was, & without knowledge of the place he was conſtrained to abandon the Pinnace vnto the mercy of the waues, which continued foꝛ the ſpace of foꝛty daies together, in which time they indured ſo many foꝛtunes, that it would be ouertedious to reeſount them, and wee ſhould likewiſe digreſſe from the matter whereinto wee are entered, ſo bꝛing our hiſtoꝛy vnto an end. Let it therefoꝛe ſuffice you to knowe, that their victuals being ſpent, they chanced to arriue in the Iſland of the Giant Drapheon, where ẏ king of Denmarke and his ſquire loſt their wits and became mad, by foꝛce of a water that they dꝛunk out of a fountain called The fountain of Foꝛgetfelneſſe, that ſpꝛang in that Iſle, where they were taken & kept in a cruel pꝛiſon, frō whence in ſhoꝛt time after they were deliuered by the meanes of a Gentlewoman that fel in loue with the king, and cauſed him to recouer his health, armes, hoꝛſe, and a ſhip, with all things neceſſary foꝛ himſelfe and his ſquire, and hauing done, ſhe with them put to ſea: and coaſting the countrey of Treuiſane, they came vnto an Iſland where the people of the countrey would haue burnt a Gentlewoman becauſe ſhee could not find a knight foꝛ to maintaine her quarrel: but ẏ king fought foꝛ her, and ouercame him that accuſed her, & taking the Gentlewoman with him, put to ſea againe, & ſailing ſixe daies together

along the coaſt, hée perceiued a maid out of a tower, wherein the lord of ỹ countrey kept her priſoner, for the cauſe which ſhee declared to the king out of a windowe that looked into the ſea, for whoſe ſake the king took land to fight with the lord till hée deliuered the poor gentlewoman out of priſon: ſuch were the aduentures of the king of Denmark, which are rehearſed at large in ỹ great chronicles, that maiſter Elizabeth wrote not long after the coronation of Eſplandian: wherein the proweſſe & aduentures of the Britiſh knights and others remaining at Alfarin, are likewiſe regiſtred & orderly ſet downe. For this time content your ſelues to vnderſtand the maner how & in what ſort Eſplandian and the Princeſſe Leonorine ſaw each other, how afterward Vrganda came to Conſtantinople, of ỹ armies both by land & ſea, of the cruell battaile betwéen the Turks & Chriſtians: which ended, our hiſtory likewiſe ſhall be finiſhed, but hauing many things to deſcribe, before I come to that point, we will returne to Eſplandian, that was not ſmally abaſhed at the long abſence of the King, expecting ſrō day to day ſome newes of him, that had left his company only for the cauſe you heard before.

CHAP. XXXV.

How Eſplandian hauing ſtaied Garinter king of Denmarks returne about two weekes ſpace; and perceiuing no newes of him, determined (by the counſell of Carmelle) to goe in perſon to the citty of Conſtantinople.

AFter that Garinter king of Denmarke had ſet ſaile towards Conſtantinople as it is ſaied before, Eſplandians ſhip arriued at the gulfe where he promiſed to ſtay, and there lay at anker for the ſpace of two wéekes, not hearing any newes of his deſired meſſage: wherewith he doubted either that the king of Denmarke ſhould bee drowned, or that fortune had carried his veſſel ſome other way: wherfore he thought to ſend one of his marriners to enquire of him. But before hee did it, he determined firſt to ſpeak with Carmelle, and taking her

aſide,

aside, saied vnto her: My great friend, you know for what cause the king of Denmarke left vs, & the reason of his voiage, as also the promise he made vnto me to returne again with all speed, but we can heare no newes of him at all, which maketh me assuredly beleeue either hee is dead, or that the storme hee was in hath cast him in some country so far off, that he cannot by any meanes doe as he hath promised, wherefore I pray you giue mee your aduise what I were best to doe: for those that are in the like mind that I am, although in some thinges they haue their vnderstandings whole and perfect, yet are they commonly to seeke in that which concerneth them as touching those points. My lord (saied she) seeing it is your pleasure to vse my counsel, I wil tel you truly what I thinke therein, and so much I can assure you, that if you should search throughout the world, you shall hardly finde one that can come neere mee in iudging the passion wherewith you are molested: for the same is the same that is in you, and I feele it as well as you doe, and it may be more, but the ease and great contentment I receiue by you[illegible] haue giuen mee so many remedies, that I do[illegible] and liue not, but only to cause my sorrow to [illegible] tell you truth, at such time as you began to vse speeches [illegible] king of Denmarke, I thought vpon his long absence, [illegible] thinketh it were best wee sailed vnto Constantinople, [illegible] that I haue deuised a meanes to bring you vnto the Princesse Leonorine, whereby you may both see and speake with her, without being knowne of any other then herselfe, if you thinke it good. And to bring it to passe, (hee being ariued there) it shal be necessary that all those of our ship be aduertised (if any man asketh for you) to say, that you staied in the castle La montaigne defendu, meane time you shall lie in the bottome of the shippe, and I with Gandalin and Enil, will goe vnto the Emperour, to whome I will say that you sent me to the Princesse Leonorine, to present vnto her in your behalfe, that which you haue conquered in the rocke of the Enchauntresse, and for the rest let mee alone. When Esplandian heard her speake in that manner, hee beheld her for a while, and at last saied vnto her: My good friend, I feare not death, neither can it bee

more bitter or sharper vnto me then the life I now indure: but I feare the dishonour of my lady, & the iniury that thereby I might do vnto ỹ Emperor, who by his courtesie hath so much bound my father vnto him, as if I shuld wrong him, it would be a blemish to my honor while I liue. Neuertheless, I am content to hasard my self in all the dangers you shal think conuenient: that is sufficient (said Carmelle) I pray you then be merry & make good cheare: for if euer woman accomplished the thing she tok in hand, I will bring this to passe. Wherwith leauing Esplandian, she called ỹ Patron, & willed him to set sayle for Constantinople, wherunto he obayed, & had so good a wind, ỹ within three dates after they entred into ỹ hauẽ: where being arriued, Esplandian told his men what (by the coũsel of Carmelle) he had determined to do, cõmãding thẽ expresse ly not to make it known to any man of his being there, but ỹ they should say they left him in ỹ castle La montaigne defendu. For (said he) I am not now in such estate as I would be to presẽt my self before so great a prince as ỹ Emperor is. And to the end you be not found liers, I will stay in the bottome of the ship till you returne againe: then he, Carmelle, Gandalin and Alipare together, where the gentlewoma shewed thẽ at large how the matter standing hir enterprise to passe, I will presently (said she) cause thẽ be wee brought from ỹ rock of ỹ enchauntress to the ship: the same sort we found it, vpon ỹ hatches of the ship. She will go tel the emperor ỹ I haue one of the singularest things about ỹ ship ỹ euer was seen, & therfore meanes to bring him hether, where I will shew him the lion with Iupiter, & all the rest of the furniture, which hauing seene and perused, I will tell him that you send it to the princesse Leonorine, he being gone vnto his palace, you shall goe into the Cedar chest, and so will I cause you to be carried into the princesse chamber lying in the Armis, whereof I will secretly aduertise her, and by occasion declare the matter to you, and you to hir what your intent is. Well (said Esplandian) I am content. Now I bid thee how I shall come out againe. I will tell thee (said she) to giue me the cedar chest, therein to bury the body of Maroco that died a Christian, wherein you shall be inclosed, and to morrow in the morning I will cause you to be brought hether againe. By God (said Gandalin) it is the prettiest deuise that euer I heard, & now I confesse that

that I was neuer but a fole in regard of Carmelle. Meddle you not with any thing (said shée) but rest content, let me alone to worke my will, and to the same end let vs presently begin: then Esplandian went downe into the bottome of the ship, and the gentle woman prepared the tombe as shée had determined before: with [illegible] shée, Gandalin, and Enil, landed and went vnto the Emperour, whome they saluted most honourably, but Carmelle did him no reuerence: for (as it is said before) she estéemed not of any thing, [illegible]uing how great a Prince soeuer hee were, but only of Esplandian: shée and Gandalin were knowne in Constantinople by reason of their being there before. Wherefore the Emperour receiued Gandalin very courteously, and with smiling countenance said vnto him: Friend Gandalin, although your presence hath procured great melancholly in my minde, remembring I haue often séene you here with the man, that in all Christendome I most entirely loue, whome I am vtterly perswaded I shall neuer sée againe, yet you are heartily welcome, and I pray you tell me how doth the knight with the Gréene Sword. My lord (said Gandalin) it is long since I left him to come into this countrey, neuertheless I am assured wheresoeuer he is, he is a Prince ready to doe your grace any pleasure he can. In good faith (said the Emperour) I beléeue it well, and I am glad of the honour I vnderstand hée hath receiued at the hands of king Luisart, that voluntarily hath deposed himselfe of all princely dignitie to inuest him therewith. My lord (said Enil) that is true, I can assure your Grace thereof as one that was present at his Coronation: and although I could with king Amadis the Monarch of all ỹ world, Truly when I beheld the gesture and humble countenance of good king Luisart I could not refraine weeping, for compassion I had to sée him, and not I onely, but all the people that beheld him. I pray you, Sir Knight (said the Emperor) shew me how it was, for that all wise men are bound not onely to enquire of all vertuous actions, but also to imitate them as néere as possibly they may: With that Enil shewed him at large the whole order of the same, as you heard it before. Whereat the Emperour (holding downe his head) mused for a while, and then said: I am cer-

tainly perſuaded it will be long before we find a better prince thã king Luiſart is, or one ỹ hath paſſed his young yéeres with more wiſedome and magnanimitie of courage, and as I vnderſtand, both fortune and vertue haue béen fauourable vnto him: fortune in giuing him force to ouercome and obtaine honour againſt diuers miſſortunes and hard aduentures that ſhe her ſelfe [illegible] prepared for him: and vertue, for that in the end of his dayes [illegible] hath ſet him in the way to enter into paradiſe. And leauing [illegible] courſe, hée changed purpoſe and ſpake to Carmelle, of whõ [illegible] ſelf he aſked, if ſhe were ſtill tormented with the extreame paſſions of loue towards Eſplandian as ſhe had béen in times paſt. My Lord (ſaid ſhe) if there be any chaunge ſince I ſpake with you, it is, that the loue, ſeruitude, & affection I beare vnto him, are augmented in me, and daily more and more increaſe. Whereat euery man began to laugh. In good faith (ſaid the Emperour) wée may then very wel perſuade our ſelues, that you came not to our Court to moue any of our Gentlewõmen to loue the good knight your maſter, although he ſhould expreſſely commaund you to doe it. My lord (ſaid ſhee) you iudge as in reaſon it ought to be, neuertheleſſe I take ſo great a pleaſure in ſeruing him to his contentment, that I will except no ſeruice whatſoeuer: and to ſpeake truth, my arriuall here is to aſke your Grace a gift, neither gold nor ſiluer, but onely that it would pleaſe you to goe vnto the hauen, to ſée a Preſent that my Lord Eſplandian ſendeth to the princeſſe Leonorine as her knight. In good truth (ſaid the Emperor) you require a thing at our hands, that we ſhould rather deſire at yours. Come then my Lord (ſaid ſhée) for I may not ſtay long here. With that the Emperour (accompanied of diuers Noble men) went vnto the hauen, and being there, entred into Carmelles ſhippe, ſhee ſhewed him the chriſtall tombe, then that of azure ſtone, and laſtly the image of Iupiter: whereat the Emperour ſtayed longer to behold it than the reſt, not ſo much for the richneſſe thereof, as to read the prophecie it held: and hauing read it, was not a little abaſhed: which Carmelle perceiuing, ſpake vnto him and ſaid: My lord, all this you ſée hath continued aboue two hundred yéeres in the broken palace of the inchantreſſe, yet in all

that

that time not any knight (how valiãt soeuer he were) could euer conquer the same, nor yet so much as sée it, vntill my lord Esplandian arriued there, that is become Lord and possessour of ỹ same, as you now behold. Truly (said the Emperour) it is the goodliest present that euer I saw, and worthy the greatest admiration: for although it be of incomparable riches, yet doe I estéeme it of no value in respect of the great science and wonderfull knowledge that was in her to whome it first belonged, as she maketh it well appeare by the threatnings she vsed against vs in this table: God graunt all may fall out better than I doubt it will. My lord (said Carmelle) although it be such as you estéeme it, yet doe I feare that my Lady your daughter will not make so much account thereof, that in recompence of the same she will acquite the good knight Amadis and the master that I serue, of the promise they haue made vnto her. I know not that (said the Emperour) but I am well assured, that no earthly treasure can be comparable vnto the valour & vertue of your master: neither will I euer giue my consent that Leonorine shall make that exchange, as desiring the company of Esplandian, much more than to haue all the treasures in the world within my coffers; and with good reason, for that the wickedest person liuing on the earth may be rich of gold and siluer, but not of vertue, which is not abounding vnto any but to those that séeke it: wherefore if you thinke good, carry your presents backe againe, for Esplandian can not be acquited vnto vs but only by his presence. My Lord (said Carmelle) I am commaunded to leaue them with the Princes Leonorine, whether it bée vpon that condition or not, and if it be your pleasure (séeing she is not come hither with y[illegible] cause it to be carried into her chamber. My daughter [illegible] (said the Emperour) is with her mother the Empresse about a m[illegible]ake the aire, when she commeth home you may present it vnto her, and assure your selfe she will not refuse it: not so much for the value thereof, as for the good I wish to him that sent it her, as shée knoweth full well. Wherewith hée departed out of the shippe, and béeing a land walked towardes his palace, not without much talke with his Knights & noble men, touching the excellencie of ỹ tomb.

Which

Which the more they spake of, the more they esteemed it, in such manner, that they all acknowledged never in their lives to haue seene so rich nor so singular a present.

CHAP. XXXVI.

How Esplandian was put into the Cedar chest, and with the tombe carried into the Princesse Leonorines chamber, and what conference they had togither.

THe Emperour and his company gon as it is said before, Carmelle called Esplandian, that in the meane time lay in the bottome of the shippe, and told him the manner of their procedings, as also the speech the Emperour had with Gandalin and Enil, & all what had happened, as it is before rehearsed. By my soule (said Esplandian) I was neuer in the like paine, for hearing all you speake, only the lady Leonorine, I could not tell what to thinke: but when ỳ Emperour told you she was not in the citie, beleeue me, it comforted my heart. Did not I play my part well? said Carmelle. That you did, and as well as one could wish, (said Esplandian) and if it be true which is commonly said: That a good beginning makes a good ending, I hope I shall not faile to bring my purpose to passe. And while they deuised togither it waxed night, so that the Empresse returned into the citie, which Carmelle vnderstãding, caused Esplandian presently to be layd [illegible]one in the Cedar chest, in such sort, that the a[illegible]in on all sides, and couering it with the Azure and [illegible]ames, Gandalin, Enil, and their Squires toke the tombe, and with the gentlewoman went out of the shippe and came vnto the palace, where they found the Lady Leonorine (beeing already aduertised of the goodly present sent her by Esplandian) in great deuotion staying for Carmelle, for it had beene told her, that in the euening she would bring it to her lodging: wherefore she had no sooner espied it, but she (with many

other

other ladies and gentlewomen no lesse curious to behold y same) met her in the hall. With that Carmelle (perceiuing her come) stepped forward, and doing reuerence vnto her, said: Madame, y good knight Esplandian sendeth you this present, y not long since he conquered in the rocke of the enchantresse, according to y good fortune & happy destiny aboue a hundred yeres past prædestinated of him: which he sendeth vnto you, expressly to giue you to vnderstand the great desire that daily more & more increaseth in him to be your faithfull knight. But before you proceed further, it is conuenient you grant me two requests: the one, that neither you nor any other shall looke into the tombe vntil the morning that I returne againe with the keye to open a Cedar chest, that you shall find therin: the other, that after you haue opened it you shall giue it me, to carry with me to the place, where my father keepeth his hermitage, therein to bury the bones of Matroco that died a christian, as you haue vnderstood. Carmelle my friend (said y princes) that am I content to doe: neuertheless I am inuely abashed why Esplandian deferreth the time so long before he commeth to see the Emperour. Madame (said shee) I will tell you that to morrow: meane time, I pray you, determin where you will haue our men to set downe their charge. In the great hall (said Leonorine) that my gentlewomen may see it at their ease. In faith madame, you shall pardon me (said Carmelle:) this place is too open and ouer common to leaue so precious a thing standing therein: I deme not to let them haue the pleasure to behold it, but hauing seene it, for the more safetie it shall be set into your owne chamber, whereof you and none other shall haue the keye. With that they that bare the tombe, entered into the hall and set it downe till Leonorine and the rest of the gentlewomen had beheld it long: and if Carmelle had not beene there, assure your selues it had beene better visited than it was: but she would not depart from thence till it was shut vp. Which done, taking her leaue, as shee went out she tooke the Princes aside, and giuing her the keye of the chest wherein Esplandian lay, said vnto her: Madame, I leaue you in this tombe two inestimable treasures, although their difference be great, as you may well perceiue you being alone: for it is

sure, that vnder this keepeth the thing, ỹ in all the world you most desire to séeke without staying Leonorines answer, she went out of the chamber, and with Gandalin and his company returned to the ship, leauing the princes in a maruellous doubt by reason of the words shee vsed vnto her: & therewithall so certainely persuads her selfe, that her friend Esplandian lay dead within the same, that she was constrained to cause all her gentlewomen to depart the chamber, only queene Minoresse that staied to beare her company: with that she threw her selfe on her bed, & almost drowned in teares, began to make the greatest sorrow in the world. Queene Minoresse abashed at so suddain alteration, knew not what to think, but perceiuing her griefe to increase still more & more, went vnto her and said: Madame, I pray you hide ỹ cause of this sorrowe from me no longer, for I sweare vnto you of my faith, if by any meanes I may releeue the same, I will deale therein as for my selfe. Leonorine that neuer ceased sighing, could not answer her one word, but with much importance at the last answered her and said: Alas my good friend, for Gods cause let me be in rest, and let it suffice you that you know, that I neuer was so desirous for to liue, as I am at this present to die. What Madame: (said the Queene) will you tell me nothing els: No, (said shee.) In good faith then (said the Queene) you shall do me wrong, and I shall haue good cause to thinke the loue and fauour that in times past you haue shewen vnto me, to bee altogither fained: whereat I am much grieued, séeing I haue borne such a mind to you, that I would neuer haue failed to hazard not only my honor but my life and soule both for your sake. When the princes heard her speake with such affection, she was somwhat better assured, and thereupon said vnto her: Séeing you are so desirous to know the cause, you shall heare it presently, vpon condition you shall promise me to be a meanes rather to hinder my daies than any waies to further them, séeing I am fully determined to die. You may yet well remember (said she) the first time ỹ Carmelle came hither to bring vs newes of Esplandian, sonne to the good knight with the grèen Sword, that had commandement from his father (as she said) to come hither to serue vs in his place, according to

the

the promise he had made vnto vs being in this court: & Carmele said, that for that cause onely Esplandian had sent her vnto Constantinople, to giue the Emperour and vs to vnderstand therof: but there were other matters in the wind, for shee came expressly to intreat me to be good vnto her master, who for the great loue and affection he bare vnto me, liued in the greatest paine that possible could be. Whereupon it happened, that being vanquished & ouercome with an infinite number of reasons that he made vnto me, I confirmed in my heart, that which his renowme had already imprinted in my mind; and therewith determined for to wish more good to him than to my selfe: not that I euer thought to commit any fault that might redound to my dishonour, but onely for the glory to haue so worthy a knight readie at my commandement: whereby this fire did so augment in me, that euer since I could not thinke on any other thing than vpon Esplandian, with whose loue my mind hath beene so moued, that his long absence hath almost procured my death: yet the hope I had from day to day to see him, hath made me able to sustaine my griefe with so great patience, that neither you nor any other, as I thinke, could euer perceiue it in me. But as the Sayler on the sea being in a tempest, thinking at length to arriue at some hauen for to saue himselfe, suddainly meeteth with a rocke that breaketh his shippe in péeces: so I (most vnfortunate Ladie) hoping by the presence of him I so much desire to see, to be at the end of my great sorrowe, am now fallen into the gulfe of desperation, considering the speech which Carmelle vsed to me, who speaking softly, saied in this manner: Madame I leaue you within this tombe two inestimable treasures: the one is the thing that in all the world you most desire to see: which maketh me verily thinke it can be no other thing than the dead bodie of Esplandian, and that (as it is very likely) hee hath desired at his death to be brought vnto me to waepe and lament ouer him, as I meane to doe during the terme of my life: which if it pleaseth God shall not be very long. And saying so shee cast forth a great sigh, sowning in Queene Minorelles armes: who being abashed to hear the princesse vse those words so far from my estimation the

alyue, how long time it yet should be ere she might obtaine counsell or comfort to minister vnto her: neuertheles considering the extremitie shee was in, minding to prouide for two accidents that both at one instant presented themselues, she ranne in all hast to fetch cold water, which throwing in her face, she reuiued again. Where with the Queene said vnto her, What Madame, will you shew the heluie after the hatchet? will you bee holden for a fole, and lose the reputation that is spread of you throughout ỹ world? Where is the constancie, the modestie, and the wisdome wherewith you were wont to be adorned? Must you for one word (which you vnderstand) forget your selfe so much? Suppose it were true that Esplandian should be dead, can you call him againe by this tormenting your selfe? For Gods sake be patient, and if the worst be, you may proue if it be so, and not fall into this kind of fantasie vpon your owne imaginations: Carmelle hath tolde you that the thing you most desire in all the worlde is inclosed in this tombe: is it therefore to be said Esplandian should not be alyue? Thinke you he is the first man that hath done the like for his beloueds sake? This I assure you, that although I breake ỹ tombe and all that belongeth to it, I will presently see what may bee in it. Alas cousin (said the Princes) I feare you will see it ouer soone for me, for if he be dead (as I thinke he is) assure your selfe I will beare him companie before it be day. I pray you (said the quéene) be not vnhappy before your time, but let me worke the feat: hold then (said Leonorine) here is the keye ỹ Carmelle left me: which the Quéene toke in her hand, and entring into the chäber where the tomb stood, she lifted vp the christall plate; that done, she spake aloud, and asked if any bodie were within the same: Esplandian (to whom one houre seemed a whole yéere) staying for that time, and hearing the Quéene speake, answered presently, and said: I Madame. Who are you? (said Minoresse.) Madame, said he, I am the happy or vnhappy knight Esplandian, ỹ put my selfe into this tombe, ready to receiue either death or life, as it shall please the princes Leonorine to dispose. Are you (said the Quéene) Esplandian, sonne to the good knight with the Gréene Sword, that by messages hath so often times promised to come and serue vs?

I Pa-

I madame (saide hée) and that to accomplish my word, haue caused my selfe to be brought hether in this manner. If you will promise me (saide the Quéene) and sweare not to passe my commandement in that I shall appoint you to doe, I will cause you both to sée and speake to her you desire so much to serue: That will I promise you, (saide he) and a greater matter likewise, so my lady be contẽt. It is inough (saied the Quéne) wherewith shee lifted vp the second plate, and then opened ỹ chest wherein he lay, and comming out, he vsed great reuerence to the Quéne, but as then he knew her not, till she saied vnto him: Sir Knight, it may bee you haue heard of mée before this time, I am Minoresse, that to deliuer my Lady and you from the great paine you both indure, hath taken you out of this your prison: Wherefore I pray you stay here a while, till I returne againe. With that she went vnto the Princesse Leonorine (that meane time for feare shooke like an aspen leafe:) and with a merry countenance saied vnto her: Madame, when wee haue a long and hard Winter, it is commonly séene there followeth a pleasant Summer: and after great sorow commeth exceeding ioy. You haue bewailed your knight Esplandian for dead, but neuer in all my life haue I séene a dead creature buried that was so faire, and of so pleasant countenance, as the dead man I haue found within the tombe: I pray you come and sée if I be deceaued or not. When the Princesse heard the Quéene vse those words touching Esplandian, and to laugh withall withiote, her heart leaped in her body, and rising out of her bed, without speaking any word, she ranne presently into the chamber, at the entery whereof, shee espied him shee had so much lamented: who presently knéeled downe to kisse her hands. But Leonorine was not as then disposed to vse ceremonies, but forgetting her accustomed modestie, and the grauitie required in her sexe, especially the shamefastnesse that commonly is séene to be in wise and vertuous Ladies, could not so much command her owne affections, but cast her selfe into Esplandians arms, kissing him with so great affection, as if shee had séene, loued, and knowne him all her life time. And assure your selfe, if Quéene Minoresse had not drawne her backe, and reproued her lightnesse, that at that instant those

two louers had died in the place, for that both their spirits had abandoned all their vitall parts to mæt together at their mouths, & to imbrace each other, euen to the extremity of their lips, ready to passe further. I say not but ỳ Quéene Minoresse did thẽ wrong: and likewise, if any man would accuse Leonorine of folly or inconstancy, I answere him againe that she is most easily to be excused both of the one and the other, for although shee had neuer séene Esplandian before that time, & that in reason she should haue known him better before she shewed her selfe so priuat vnto him, you must suppose (as it is trew) that loue had of long time before so well ingrauen him in her mind, ỳ she ceased not to sée him euery day with her inward eies. And as nature had studied to make her most perfect in all perfections whatsoeuer, loue had likewise taken pleasure to make her the best beloued and ỳ truest louer ỳ euer was before her time. Wherefore it is not to be marueiled, if at the first shee shewed so good a countenance to her friend, considring ỳ pain & great grœfe she had indured since ỳ time Carmelle brought hir news. These two louers being thus before each other (Esplandiã still knéeling) séemed to be so rauished ỳ quéen Minoresse could not refrain to say to Leonorine: Madame, me thinketh you should doe well to commaund the knight to rise vp & lead him into your chamber, where you may talk together while ỳ night indureth, if you think géed: but to let him knéele still on the ground, in good faith it is not wel. My good friend (said Leonorine) he hath fled from vs for almost two years together, now I mean to kéep him so néer me, ỳ he shall not easily escape away: with that shée toke him by the hand to lift him vp, but hée would not stir but said vnto her: Madame, Gastilles not long since sent me word being at Alsarin, that you were much offended with me, I pray you shew me the cause: for if I euer cõmitted fault against you, it hath ben only in louing you with all my heart, as I am bound to do. Neuertheless, if in your absse I séem to haue presumed ouermuch, pardon me I pray you, & giue me what punishment you shal thinke good. My friend (said she) your absence hath procured me so great cause of grœfe, ỳ I both pray you & command you, from henceforth not to absent your self from me long again. Madame (said Esplandian) ha-

hauing (with your leaue) made another voiage to my compani-ons, that may thinke ill of me, leauing them in their chéefest néed to come hether for my pleasure: I sweare vnto you of my faith I will neuer offend you more in ý manner, or any other way whatsoeuer. I am content to graunt you that (saied she) so you returne as soon as possible you may: and for the rest I wil ý from hencefoorth you loue me in such sort, that not any other but my self shall haue power ouer you, & that you be my knight: Now I pray you stand vp, & I will shewe you further of my mind. With ý Esplandian rose vp, and Leonorine taking him by the right hand, led him into her chamber, where she set him a chaire, and shée sat by him, there they began to shewe the paines each of them had indured, in what manner their loue did first begin, who was the meane thereof, and the end whereunto they pretended, which was their future marriage. In which discourse, they grew into such alterations, that if quéene Minoresse had not béene there as witnesse to their talke, considering the heat they then were in, I thinke not, but in time they would haue easily procéeded to a further matter. In that manner the two louers passed the night till day began to appeare: which quéene Minoresse perceiuing, went to Leonorine and said vnto her: Madame, the secretest follies are alwaies best, it is almost day, and it may bee the Empresse may send some one of her women, or come her selfe in person to visit you, for that yesternight very late it was told her you were not wel. I pray you giue this knight leaue to depart, and let vs shut him in the chest, as wee found him at the first. Alas how hard were those words vnto Esplandian, and no lesse vnto the Princesse, who foreséeing the daunger that might fall out if they were found together, said vnto him: My good friend, this happy night that hath fauoured vs so much, shall cause you if you thinke good, to remember the promise you haue made vnto mee: I pray you let mée sée you againe as soone as possible you may. And as shee ended those words, the quéene ý stood as a stout watch, heard some body come vp ý staires, wherwith being in great fear, she told ý princes Leonorine, which made Esplandian presétly go into ý other chamber, & without hauing time to take any longer farewell, laid himselfe

downe into the Ceader chest, yet Leonorine could not abstaine, but must of force kisse him before hée was shut in, and as they had laied the christall plate vpon the tombe, Carmelle knocked at the doore, and with her Gandalin and Enil, and the rest of the company that the night before had brought him thether. With that queene Minoresse opened the doore, and they entering into the chamber, Carmelle saw Leonorine that came vnto her, to whome after shee had done her reuerence, she saied: Madame, I am commanded by him that sent me vnto you, not to stay any longer here, is it not your pleasure to giue me leaue to depart, and cause the chest to be deliuered vnto mee, according to your promise? Gentle woman (said the Princesse) I haue made you promise thereof, and I will kéepe it, although I had rather it should stay together as it is, then to seperate it asunder. Take it when you will, you shal find it in ỹ same place where yester night you caused it to be set: with that the Ladies and gentlewomen being aduertised of her rising, came into her chamber, which hindered Leonorine to speak so secretly with Carmelle as she would haue done, but onely gaue her the key of the chest, which she caused to be takẽ out of the tombe: that done, Gandalin and Enil, and the two squires, tooke it vp betweene them and carried it away, Leonorine saying to Carmelle: I pray you thanke the knight (in my behalfe) that hath had mee in so good remembrance. And find the meanes, if it be possible, that (according to the promise and messages hee hath often sent vnto the Emperour, part whereof haue ben done by your selfe) he will as soone as he can, come hether to see vs. Madame (said she) I will doe it with all my heart, as she that desireth to please, serue and obay you. Faile not then (said the Princesse) and so God haue you in his keeping. That done, Carmelle followed them that carried Esplandian, leauing Leonorine accompanied both with ioy & sadnesse: with ioy, to haue seene him that she held dearer then her selfe, and with sadnesse, for his so saddaine departure. But the hope shee had of his spædy returne, eased her greefe much. Carmelle hauing brought hir purpose to passe as you heard before, desiring not to omit any thing that seemed necessary to be done: and to auoid all suspition, sent Gandalin and Enil before vnto ỹ shippes

and

and went vnto the Emperour, whome she found walking in the gallery, who no sooner perceiued her, but hée asked if the Present that Esplandian sent vnto his daughter, were yet in her ship. No my lord, (saied she) I caused it yesternight to bee carried into her chamber as I promised you, and haue left it all with her, onely that which was giuen me for my part. What was that? (saide the Emperour.) The Ceader chest: (said she) wherein (if it pleaseth God) I will cause the body of Matroco to bee buried, that as yet lieth in my fathers Hermitage. But my lord, because as this morning I determined to saile vnto the castle La montaigne defendu, to him that sent mee hether, I pray you giue me leaue to depart. Gentlewoman (said the Emperour) when you were last here, I sent him word by you, what ioy & great pleasure it would be vnto me for to sée him here, I pray you once againe shewe him what I said: Assuring him, that being here, hee shall haue of mee all honour and good entertainement we can deuise. My lord (said Carmelle) God preserue your grace and send you life; And therewith taking her leaue, she returned into her ship, where Esplandian and his company staied for her.

CHAP. XXXVII.

How Esplandian put to sea, thinking to arriue at the castle La montaigne defendu, and of the great aduentures he found.

ESplandian entered into his shippe, and Carmelle being returned as it is saied before, they determined not to stay longer, fearing to be discouered: wherfore they caused ankers to be hoised, & setting saile, made towards the castle La montaigne defendu, but fortune by a great storme and contrary wind carried them another way, driuing them along the coast of Alfarin, where the wind ceased, they sayling almost hard by the shore, and at the same instant whē they espied

among the rockes certaine horse and footmen fighting together: whereat Esplandian marueiled, and said vnto Gandalin and Enil: I pray you, seeing wee are arriued here at this instant, let vs goe see from whence the occasion of their combate proceedeth, and if we may, helpe them that haue the iustest quarrel. Let vs go (said the two knights) wherwith they presently landed, and mounting on their horses, commaunded the saylers to stay for them, and in great hast ranne vnto the place where the combate was, and approching the same, they knewe their companions by the white crosses they bare vpon their armour, and seeing them in danger, and inclosed on all sides by great number of Turkes, Esplandian spurred his horse ouer the stones, and entered into the preasse, but not very farre, by reason the Turkes kept a strait place, where he must passe, from whence at the first hee was repulsed: Neuertheleſſe in ỹ end Gandalin and Enil seconded him so well with the helpe of those that fought on the other side, that notwithstanding the great resistance the Turkes made, they inclosed them on all sides, and beat them downe: yet some of them by the swiftnesse of their horses saued themselues, whereby the Christians remained victors, not losing one man. The knights that had beene aided in ỹ manner, could not imagine which way the other three knights came: but when they knew them, neuer were men gladder, praising God of his great mercy shewed vnto thē. Wherwith Esplandian asked them how they came thether: My lord (saied Ehanle delibere,) I and my companions had so much intreated Belleris to lead vs into the country, ỹ all this night he hath ben our guide: we being issued out of Alfarin, thinking to surprise the towne of Galatia that lieth vpon the sea side not far from hence, and to the same end wée staied in ambush, but perceiuing our enterprise to bée discouered, and thinking by little and little to retire, we were inclosed in such maner ỹ if God had not holpē vs by your means, without doubt wee had all beene ouerthrowne and destroied. By the faith of a knight (saied Esplandian) if you had considered the countrey where wee are, and that the losse of one of our men is greater to vs then a thousand others, if we were in Christendome, you would not haue hazarded your selues so much: but

what

what is past, cannot bee vndone. And to the end wee spéede no worse, let vs enter into my shippe that stayeth for mee. My lord Esplandian (saied Belleris) Occasion is offered now vnto vs, and let him goe that refuseth it, when time serueth. You sée the ouerthrow of the Turkes, which is such, that I certainely beléeue, there is not one man left within the Towne. Wherefore I am of opinion, that wee ride thether in as secret manner as wee may, then if wee sée occasion, wee will set vpon the gates, and it may bee shall enter the Towne without resistance, meane time send one of your Squires to certeñe your saylers, that they saile vnto Alsarin, or else that they stirre not from thence before they beare newes of vs. This counsell liked them well, and they all agréed vnto it: with that Belleris marched on before, Esplandian and the rest following after, riding close together vpon a Cawsie, where not farre from thence they espied one sitting vpon a sharpe rocke most hideous to beholde, whereat they spurred their horses thether to sée what it might bee, where they sawe a woman so olde, impotent, and withered, that her breastes hung downe beneath her nauill, apparrelled in a Beares skinne, whereon hung her long, white, and knotted haire, where shee had liued among those rockes in all tempests and stormye weathers for the space of fiftéene yeares together. By which meanes, her naked bodie shewed like the barke of an Elme trée or some ancient Oke, whereby not one of them but began to laugh, asking Belleris if hee had heard of her before. I truly (saied he) for shee is so neare of linage to king Armaro, that shee was his great Grandfathers sister. And although that in her yong yeares shee hath béene indued with all the gifts of nature, yet would shee neuer marry, what meanes soeuer her friendes could vse, but gaue her selfe continually to studie the Art of Magicke, in such sort, that none could surpasse her in the same, whereby shee hath foreshowne long time since, that before shee died, the lande of Turkye should bee ouerthrowne, and brought in subiection vnto straungers. And for this cause shee hath caused this Rocke to bee hewen,

wherein she hath made two chambers, where continually she abideth, apparelled in the same manner you now behold her, and as it is commonly reported, she is very neare nineteene yeares of age, and that you may know her better, it is shee that caused the gilt pillers with the Tables hanging at them, to bee set vp at the aduenturous fountaine, which you my lord Esplandian (saied hee) might peraduenture see, when you found the Princesse Heliaxe, and ouerthrew her guard in that place. Truly (saied Esplandian) I would gladly know how she passeth the time, being so solitarie as she is. My lord (said Belleris) that could neuer be knowne, yet it is thought, that shee hath carried great number of bookes into the caue, wherwith she delighteth her self. I marueil (said Esplandian) why no man euer aduentured to goe into the rocke: so they haue done: (saied Belleris) but they returned againe so well beaten and cruelly handeled, that at their comming foorth, some of them died. Let vs speake vnto her (said Esplandian) and it may bee shee will tell vs no goodnesse: wherewith they went nearer vnto her, but she presently rose vp and fled into her caue, at the entery whereof shee stayed, saying to Esplandian: Knight, Aboue a hundred years before thou wast borne, I did foreshew the destruction of this countrey by thy arriuall here, therefore I chuse rather to lead this miserable and cruell life, then to fall into thy hands, and liue in miserable captiuity. With that she went in, and could no more bee seene, wherat they all began to laugh, and without longer staying went on their way, wherein they perceiued cõming towards them about sixty or fourescore knights, all armed ready to fight: whereupon doubting them to be enemies, they stood stil, causing Enil and Belleris to rise forwards to know the truth, who scouring the field, and staying vnder a touffe of corke, they perceiued one of the company to bear a red ancient with a white crosse, & ther with they knew Frandalo that marched before them, whereupon they returned to their cõpanions: who glad of those news, went to mẽt thẽ, & comming in sight each of other, Frandalo thinking to be surprised, willed his companions to stand close, & ỹ better to prouoke his enemies to fight, he sent two or three of the best horses in his company to skirmish with thẽ, but they perceauing

their

their white crosses knewe them presently to be Belleris and his company that they went to seeke, which Frandalo knowing, spurred his horse forward, much abashed to see Esplandian, whome hee verily thought to be in the castle La montaigne defendu: wherewith they embraced echother, talking of their aduentures past.

CHAP. XXXVIII.

How Frandalo and his companie of Christian knights, surprised the rowne of Galatie, and of their message sent vnto the Emperour of Constantinople by Gandalin, to craue more aide.

THe Christian knights being met togither, Esplandian asked Frandalo wherefore hee rode abroad with so great a company: My lord, said he, this morning I was aduertised, that Belleris my nephew had issued by night out of Alfarin wt certaine knightes, to see if they could meet with our enemies, and fearing they should find some ambush laid for them that would be stronger than themselues, I told my lord Norandel your vncle, by whose aduise we toke this way to followe him, but for that neither we nor you haue met with any company to prouoke vs to fight, I pray you let vs returne again the best way we can vnto Alfarin: but you my lord said he, what aduenture hath brought you hither in so good time to find vs here? What aduenture? (said he) Truly you may well tearme it so: for Gandalin, Enil, and I, thinking to saile vnto the castle La montaigne defendu, fortune by tempest of weather, draue our shippe so neere this coast, that wee might plainly behold Belleris and his companie fighting against a great number of the enemie, that had driuen them among the rockes: whereupon we landed, and entred so farre among the enemies, that in the end the victorie was ours: after that by your nephewes counsell wee were riding towardes Galatie, the which (as he assureth vs) will bee easily gotten without great resistãce, considering the ouerthrow

wée haue alreadie giuen them. Truly (said Frandalo) it may well be so, and seeing fortune most commonly aideth all hardy aduenturers, let vs goe forward, and follow me, for I knowe a way whereby I will bring you thither without being discouered. Let vs goe (saied Esplandian) and with that they followed Frandalo that went softly before them, till they came vnto a litle hill within a mile of Galatie, from whence they might easily perceiue who issued or entred the towne: where they beheld great numbers of men as well horsemen as footmen, who being aduertised of the ouerthrow of their men, went to succour them, thinking to find the christians in the place where they had fought, but they were behind them: which the two knights (they had sent out to discouer) perceiuing, ranne to aduertise Frandalo and his company, who being glad of the newes, went forward in great hast, and suddainly set vpon the gates, where slaying the watch, they entred and tooke the towne, wherein there were none but impotent and weake people to defend the same: which done, they drewe the Bridges, and went vpon the walles to keepe watch, and to behold the enemies countenance at their returne, when they vnderstood thereof, which was not long after, for a countryman leaping ouer the walles, ranne presently to aduertise them. If they were sorry it is not to be doubted, for that besides the losse of their goods, they lost their wiues and children, thinking they should all be sent prisoners into a strange countrey, whereat they were much grieued: but one knight among the rest being a man of some stomacke, perceiuing their sorrowe, badde them be of good courage, animating them in such sort, that they all determined either to loose their liues or els to winne the towne againe: and thereupon (more moued with rage than with reason) they returned to the towne, and assailed it in such furious and indiscrete manner, that a great part of them lost their liues in the assault, being repulsed and driuen away by Frandalo, Esplandian, Enil, Gandalin, Elian, Tiron, and tenne other of the most principall Christian knights; who to encrease more feare in the Galatians, issued out of the towne and slewe a great

number

number of them: but as a Cat that is inclosed and assailed (before shée beginneth to defend her selfe) seeketh by all meanes to shunne and avoid the furie of the man, and finding her selfe out of her hole, and no meanes of succour left her, becommeth so furious and bolde, that shée beginneth to assaile him, from whome shée first fledde away, and often times doth him mischiefe: So these poore people, séeing nothing but présent death before their eyes, by reason of the chase that the tenne Christian Knightes made after them, béeing wholly desperate and out of all hope of obtayning mercie, beganne to take courage againe, and in such sort, that desiring to revenge their lives, they turned their faces towards the enemie with such courage, that having set vpon the Christians, in the end Frandalo was stricken downe, Esplandian and the rest béeing enclosed in such manner, that they had all lost their lives in that place, had they not béene aided of their companions, and night that came vpon them: which was the cause they left each other: whereupon the Christians returned into the towne, and the Turkes rode towards Tessante to the Prince Alphorax, who béeing advertised of their misfortune, to comfort them, spake vnto them and said: My friends, I am not a little sorrie for your losses, whereunto (if our gods permit vs) I will take such order, and be revenged in such sort, that it shall be spoken of so long as the worlde endureth. For I hope not onely to drive these théeves out of my countrey, but to goe in person to spoyle and vtterly destroy the cittie of Constantinople, with his wicked and accursed Emperour, and all the Christian Monarchie. Which to bring to passe, it is not long since I sent my Ambassadours vnto my friends and allies, who have all given mée their promise to ayde and succour mée with their forces and powers, whereof some are alreadie arrived at Tenedo, where wée (vpon certaine matters touching our countries) are to assemble togither: and saying the time till I have meanes to doe better for you, I will give order that certaine mony shall be given you to sustain your wants: For the which the citizens of Galatia thanking him most heartily,

heartily, remaining in Tessant, where they continually lamented their great losses: on the other side Esplandian, Frandalo, and the rest of the knightes that had gotten the towne, considering with themselues, that it would be impossible for them to keepe & defend so many places with so fewe men, agréed among them to send Gandalin to Constantinople vnto the Emperour, to shew him what they had of late done to Alphorax, and won the towne of Galatie, being one of ỹ most famous hauens in all those parts, and for that cause besought him to send them Gastilles or some other of his captaines, with some forces to aid them: otherwise they should be constrained either to leaue Galatie or els Alfarin, considering their small number and the continuall alarmes that the enemies gaue them, and the better to moue him thereunto, they sent him the greatest part of the rich iewels they had conquered in the towne. But they had neither Barke nor Pinnace ready to send, wherefore they were constrained to take ỹ wherein Esplandian came thither: which at that time (as fortune would) lay still at anker staying their pleasure. Wherewith Esplandian sent Sergil to cause the ship to come thither: which done, & Gandalin ready to vnbarke himselfe, Esplandian tooke him aside, & said vnto him: Friend Gandalin, you haue alwaies béene faithfull & trustie to my father, which giueth me cause to disclose my secret vnto you before all others. When you come to Constantinople (said hee) you shall sée the Lady Leonorine, to whome you shall present my most humble commendations, shewing her, that I will not faile very shortly to accomplish my promise and her cõmandement, and withall you shall present her the two slaues that were giuen me, which I send to wait vpon her, that by their presence she may haue me in remembrance: and knowing you are not to learne how to vse your spéeches in such cases, I pray you Gandalin let me find in you that which I expect. My Lord (said he) God giue me grace to doe you seruice. Then fare you well (said Esplandian.) With that Gandalin with all his charge entred into the ship, and hauing set saile, had a good wind, that in short time after he arriued in Constantinople: where being landed, he caused two squires to beare the presents he had brought;

and

and entring into the palace, he found the Emperor talking with diuers of his Noble men: the Emperor perceiuing him, went to imbrace him, asking him where he had left the good knight Esplandian, and whether he meant not shortly to come and see him. My Lord, said Gandalin, he commendeth himselfe most humbly vnto your Grace, and hath sent you word by me, that not aboue fifteen daies past, hee, Frandalo, and others of our companie haue taken the towne of Galatie. Galatie? (said the Emperor) By ỹ faith I beare to God, that is good newes: for as I haue been informed heretofore, it is one of the richest townes in all Turkie, but I know not well how they can keepe it. Full well my lord (said Gandalin) so it be your pleasure to send them some aid: otherwise they shall bee constrained in the end, either to abandon that to keepe Alfarin, or Alfarin for that: which would bee a shame for them, and great dommage both to your Grace and all Christendome. Haue they found great riches therein (said the Emperor) or haue they lost any quantity of their men? My lord (said Gandalin) some of the enemies were slaine in the taking thereof: and with that he began to shew him the maner how it was done, and causing the cases wherein the presents were, to be opened, amõg other things he shewed him the images of Nabuchodonosor king of Assiria, of Alexander the great, and that which he most esteemed, the true and liuely representation of Hector of Troy, armed at all points, as he was when he fought against the Grecians: and surely the Emperour had reason to make so much account thereof, for that Agamemnon was content to receiue it for his part, as being esteemed to be the richest iewell in all the citty of Troy, for that Hector himselfe had caused it purposely to bee made while the Grecians lay before the citie, by one of the cunningest workemen that could be found, and set it vpon the chiefe gate of the palace of Ilion, which long time after fell into the hands of the kings of Turkie, that had erected it in the market place of Galatie, placing it vpon a high marble pillar, which Gandalin shewed vnto the Emperour, as he hard reported in the country: wherewith the Emperour was so well pleased, that hee could not refraine to say: In good truth I should not be better

pleased with the taking of the Citty of Tessfanke, then I am at this time with this godly Present, and I pray you tell ý knights that sent it, ý I thanke them for it with al my heart. My lord (said Gandalin) so they did thinke it would bée more acceptable vnto your grace thē all the vessels of gold and siluer ý they found within the Towne, part whereof they haue likewise sent vnto you, that are in this other case, which hée presently caused to bée opened, and after they had perused them, Gandalin caused the two slaues that Esplandian sent, to come néerer, presenting them to the Princesse Leonorine, saying vnto her: Madame, the good knight Esplandian not knowing what greater Present to offer you (next vnto himselfe) then these two yong maids, hée sendeth them vnto you as your slaues, to the end euery man may know, that as you are the godliest lady that euer nature framed, so is there not any creature liuing on the earth, that better deserueth to commaund such as command others, then your selfe: wherefore if you shew him the courtesie to accept them at his hands, hee will estéeme it for one of the greatest fauours that euer hee receaued. Leonorine that knew as well how to dissemble her affections as any womā liuing on the earth: And desiring to haue the same opinion, that alwaies had run of her, to continue still, with a dissembled kinde of anger, answered Gandalin and said: Sir knight, it séemeth by your words, that Esplandian is disposed to mock me, and that you estéeme me to be a woman of light credite, could you of your faith thinke me so very a child, that I should not well perceaue, (that if Esplandian were so much at my commaundement as you say) hee would not haue deferred the time so long to come hether vnto vs, were it only but to acquite the promise king Amadis his Father made vs aboue sixe or seuen yeares past. But I knowe his mind full well, hé meanes to content vs with words, and many messages that from time to time hé sendeth, together with an infinite number of excuses, but all to no purpose, wherof while I liue I will not accept one of them for his discharge: let him therefore come himselfe, and then it may bee I will beléeue that to bée in him, I haue so oftentimes heard reported. When the Emperour heard her speake in that sort, hee shewed

by

by his countenaunce that hée toke great pleasure at his doughters choler, and saied vnto her: My sweét friend, what wil Gandalin say to sée you so vncourteous towards him, that honoureth you so much: I pray you sweét heart moderate your colour, and take that hée sendeth, for if you refuse it, hée shall haue great occasion to dislike thereof: And you sée that for your sake hee doth so many valiant acts, that the good knight with the Gréene sword could neuer doe the like. My lord (saied shee) I beléeue for valour hée is not inferiour vnto his father, but for courtesie his father surpasseth him. In faith Madame (saied Gandalin) if you knew him as well as I doe, it may bée you would commend him more then now you blaspheame him, séeing that if hee hath deferred the time to come hether, it is onely because hee thinketh hée hath not as yet done sufficient in armes, whereby hee should deserue one sparke of fauour at your handes, considering your estate and the small valour that is in him, although at this day hée is estéemed the best knight that euer bare armes for these hundred yeares. Neuertheless, séeing you accuse him of that, that ought most to excuse him, I promise you of mine honor, leauing all thinges apart, presently vpon my retourne hee shall come hether vnto you, to doe whatsoeuer it shall please you to commaund him. Gandalin (saied the Princesse Leonorine) thinke not (whatsoeuer I say) that I either take pleasure or displeasure at his presence or his absence, but onely as my Father doth, and I for his sake, knowing the great loue and affection hée hath alwayes born to King Amadis his Father, and continueth the same to his sonne. But hereof am I well assured, that hée cannot so excuse himselfe, or make vs thinke other, then that herein hée hath done vs wrong. Neuertheless, séeing it is the Emperours pleasure, I will kéepe the Present hée hath sent mée, vppon the promise and assurance you haue made of his comming hether as sone as you shall bee arriued at Galatia. Truely Leonorine played her part, very cunningly herein: for hardly would it haue béen thought or once imagined, that Esplandian and shee had so faithfully giuen their handes and harts as they had done in the presence of quéene Minoresse, as you

heard before, and Gandalin for his part knew not what to think, although he had borne Esplandian in the tombe, and set him in his chamber as you likewise heard. Then the Emperour asked him how long hée meant to stay. My lord (said Gandalin) as little as I may, for it were not fit for me to liue at rest, while my cõpanions are in armes: Wherefore I most humbly beséech your grace to giue mée my dispatch as soone as possible you can. Gandalin, (saied the Emperour) I will presently send for my admirall, & wil cause men in al hast to be prepared, that within fiue or seuen daies they shall bée ready to depart. With that hee went into the Garden to recreate himselfe, and the Ladies with him: where when Gandalin perceiued Leonorine in an herbor of Mirtle trées, walking pensiuely alone, hee went vnto her and saied: Madame, my lord Esplandian commanded mee to certifie your grace, that since the time hee departed from you, and that he receiued so great fauour at your handes, his heart (that wholly is yours) hath so longed after you, that hee hath thought to die a thousand times with grééfe, for the losse of your presence. And to say the truth, I haue knowne many men troubled with the passions of loue: but I certainely beléeue there was neuer his like, nor that more wisely could dissemble it, which maketh mee greatly to doubt his person. For that it is impossible, considering the grééfe hee still indureth, together with the small comfort hee receiueth of his familiar friends, (not knowing his disease) but that hee must in short time end his daies: whereby great dommage should then arise vnto all Christendome, considering the straunge beginning of Knighthode and great Prowesse that is in him: which is such, as that if hee continue as hee hath begun, he will bring that order in greater estimation then euer it hath béene before: wherefore Madame, séeing I haue alwaies (as it may bee you are alreadie aduertised) beene a seruaunt to his father, and that I am acquainted with the nature of his sonne, and the daunger wherein hee is like to fall into, if you shewe him not some fauour, I haue presumed to shewe your Ladyship the hard case wherein he was when I left him, as also that hee hath expressely commaunded mee to assure you,

that

that his only intent and desire is to be in your presence. Yet perceiuing the danger wherin his companions do remain, he knoweth not what excuse to make, whereby he might take occasion for to leaue them: wherfore he beseecheth you to impute his long absence vnto fortune, and not to him that is born only to loue, serue, and obay you. In vttering whereof Gandalin shewed so sorowfull a countenance, that he made Leonorine ready to weepe, In which kind of office hee had so well ben exercised from his youth, that no man could surpasse him in the same. Friend Gandalin (said ỹ princesse Leonorine) I know not what you mean I should do for him more then already I haue done, nor yet for what cause you should imagine that I seeke to be the means of his death: seeing that if he were but sick, I know my selfe so feeble and impatient, that with greefe & sorow I should not be able to liue one hour after. Let it therfore be far from you, once to thinke that I would euer be any other mans then only his: and think it not strange, if in the Emperors presence, or before the world, I dissemble as I do, for I would not in any case, that the least inckling of the burning loue wherein my heart continually flameth towards him, should as yet bee once perceiued, chéefly for the great good I wish vnto him. Madame (said Gandalin) I am well assured hee will receiue an extreame pleasure to hear these newes, and ỹ he will leaue all things to come hether, if you thinke it good. That is my desire (said she) and I pray him so to do, and you to persuade him thereunto. While they were deuising, Tartarie the admiral (so called of the place of his birth) entred into ỹ garden: being a man issued of a mean house, but aduanced vnto great authority by his great wit & valiant courage, so that he commanded ouer all ỹ Grecian seas. The Emperor and hée talked long time touching Gandalins message, concerning aid to bee sent vnto Galatia, and in the end he willed in all hast to prepare thirty gallies & Foistes, with two thousand of the best souldiers he could find to man the same. The admirall Tartary according to his charge, executed his commission in such sort, that within fiue daies after he was ready with his nauie to set saile, and depart from thence.

CHAP. XXXIX.

How Vrganda arriued at Galatia, and of the danger wherein shee was by the subtletie of Melie the Enchaunttesse.

THe admirall Tartarie and Gandalin hauing taken their leaues of the Emperor, set saile, and passed the straights of Constantinople, and without any aduentures, arriued at Galatia within one week after their departure: if they were wel receiued by the Christian knights, it is not to be doubted, for their number was so small and so dispersed, that they were in doubt to bee able to kéepe that Towne, with Alfarin, and the castle La montaigne defendu. But when they saw such aid, they were in better hope, and hauing receaued the admirall, they deuided their two thousand men, as néed required. Mean time Esplandian had no small desire to know of Gandalin if he had spoken with the Princesse Leonorine, & how she did: for the which cause being in his chamber, hée sent for him. Where talking together, Gandalin shewed him from point to point what spéeches had passed betwéene the Princesse and him, not only before the Emperour, but also in the garden. And of my faith sir (saied hée) you do her wrong, considering the good meanes you haue both to satisfie her and your self: for what excuse soeuer you can make, you are not so sore charged on this side, that you may not spare some time to goe and sée her, which shee craueth at your hands. That I will doe (saied Esplandian) but I must find the meanes; take you care for ỹ (said Gandalin) and let me go slæpe, for I neuer had more néed: Goe (said Esplandian) & be here again betimes in the morning. Wherewith Gandalin toke his leaue, leauing Esplandian alone in great care how hee might find some conuenient excuse to leaue his compānions in ỹ extreamity, but God prouided for him: for ỹ same night about an hour before day as he began to slumber, he heard a most pleasant sound of musick,

which

which you must vnderstand, came out of the great serpent ỳ hee left in the castle La montaigne defendu, which at ỳ time was arriued before the town of Galatia, but little did he thinke of any such thing, or ỳ Vrganda had ben therein, because he thought her to bée in great Brittaine. This mellody continued for the space of half an houre and more, which done, he heard such a noise of trumpets Clarigals, Phifes, and Tabers, ỳ sounded so high, ỳ the sentineis of the town thought verily the enemies nauy had ben arriued before the same to lay siege vnto it: whereupon they caused an alarum in the town, each man running to the wals, being all of that mind till day, when they might behold the great serpent (wherein Vrganda was) all hung with long pennons and streamers: whereat Esplandian was so glad, that going downe vnto the Hauen, hee presently entered into a boat with Talanque, Manely, and diuerse other of the principall captaines to sée who might bee there. And rowing néere vnto it, they knew Vrganda that staied for them on the hatches, stretching forth her armes, spake vnto them & said: My good friends, you are most hartily welcome, I pray you come vp into my ship, ỳ I may imbrace you. With that Esplandian entered, and as he meant to salute Vrganda, she knéeled on the ground to kisse his féet, whereat he being ashamed toke her vp, and saied vnto her: Madame, I neuer thought you would haue takẽ pleasure to mock with me, séeing I account my selfe much more bound to you then to any creature liuing in the world. And therfore for Gods cause, if at any time I chaunce to offend you, punish mee I pray you in some sort or other. Most happy Knight, (sayed shée) The aide I hope for at your hands before manie dayes shall passe, moued mée to doe as I haue done, wherefore I beséech you take it in good part. And with that shee embraced him, and after him, Talanque, Manely, and all the rest, euery man doing her great honour, desiring her to shewe them the cause of her so suddaine comming thether. My good friends (saied shee) you shal know it at some other time when better laisure serueth: mean while I am to tell you that it is necessary for you shortly to go vnto the city of Constantinople, where you shall enter all armed & apparelled in ỳ same armor I haue brought hither for you,

and

and thus must I tell you, that if you should deferre it till another time, it would be prejudiciall to you all. Wherefore I counsel you to do it vpon the first day of the nert weeke, assuring you to be as well receiued of the Emperor, as euer were any knights, which your ease and pleasure in his compony, shall continue vntil ỹ rolling wheele of Fortune turning about, shall bring with it manie trauels, passions, and aduentures, which shal cause many greefes and sorrowes both to you and others. And the better to make you beleeue that all I say is true, I tell you that I my selfe shall fall into two of the greatest dangers of my life that euer I had, whether it bee here or in another place I knowe not. And which is worse, I cannot by any meanes auoid the same, not knowing any cause how nor wherefore it should be so, although it be in a manner ready to fall vpon mee. Madame (saied Esplandian) before you shall receiue any hurt in our presence, wee will all lose our liues to succour you. My good child (said she) mans destiny of force must bee accomplished. But I pray you let vs enter into some other talke, for this maketh mee melancholy. Madame (saied Manely) Is it not your pleasure to goe into the Towne? I (saied she) and I pray you send for Norandel, who at this present I knowe is at Alfarin, and I wil giue you as great cause to reioice as euer you had: for that within my shippe I haue brought the king of Denmarke, wounded in a combate that hee fought against Garlante Lord of the Isle of Calaste, that by force would haue taken two Gentlewomen from him. And although Garlante bee esteemed a hardy and valiant knight, yet did the king bring him in such case, that vnlesse hee had craued mercy, the king would haue stricken of his head: which he spared vpon condition, that during his life hee should neuer after iniury any knight, which Garlante sware and vowed in my presence, for that by chance arriuing there, during their combate, I heard what passed betweene tham. And because I perceiued the king to bee in danger of his person by reason of ỹ great number of wounds he had vpon his body, I would not leaue him, but caused him to enter into my shippe, and layed him in the best bed, where now hee is almost healed. Ha (saied Esplandian,) What good newes are these, of my faith I thought

verily

verily he had ben dead: wherefore madame, I pray you for Gods cause let me crave the means to see him: with ỹ Vrganda led him where he lay, but when they saw each other, Esplandian could not refraine weeping, with the great pleasure hee took to see the king. Neuerthelesse, for ỹ time they had no great speech together, neither would Vrganda permit them to do it, doubting least the king (being yet but weake and feeble) might therby bee hindered of his health. Wherefore she caused Esplandian to go forth, and entring with her into ỹ boat, they rowed to the shoare, from whence they led Vrganda to the best lodging in the town, with as much honor as they could haue done to the Quenes Briseine or Oriane, if any of thē had ben there in presence. The next day Esplandian pitying the great number of women & little children ỹ had ben kept within the town from the time ỹ it was takē, said to his companions, that it would be better to giue them leaue to depart from thence, then to hold them still, for ỹ the longer they continued in ỹ town, the more charge they put them to: & to keep them prisoners (said he) or in longer seruitude, God may possible be offended with vs. Wherfore if you will beleeue me, vsing rather mercy then rigour towards them, I am of opinion ỹ we send them al to Tessant to the Princesse Helisaxe, who wil thank vs for it, & so shal we be rid of so much charge. To this al the knights agreed, & Carnelle was appointed to execute the message, & he ỹ had seen the great number of people ỹ were about her, especially women, weeping most bitterly to behold themselues banished & driuen from their own houses, surely he could not chuse, vnlesse he were hard harted, but haue pitied their estate. But let them goe, & let vs heare what danger fell vnto Vrganda the next day after, who being welcome to the knights, took great pleasure to hear them shew of the aduentures they had found in the Turkish countrey, since the taking of Alfarin. And each man after the other discoursing what they knewe, Esplandian remembred the old woman they had seene among the rocks, where she continued, wherat he could not chuse but smile, which Vrganda espying, asked him the cause. Madame (said hee) I thought vpon the beauty of a yoong maid, ỹ I & some of our company chanced to see not far hence, being the best furnished of all

things for to beautifie her ý might be found, & ý better to describe her vnto you, I can assure you (vpon Belleris word) ý it is at the least eight or nine score years since she first could go & speake, yet hath she so fresh & gallant a colour, ý to behold her well, I cannot compare her better then vnto the barke of those great Elmes wée commonly find along the high wayes as wée ride in great Britaigne, her haire is as white as snow, and for want of combing all knotted together, which setteth her out so wel, ý to behold it spred abroad vpon a beares skin (which she weareth for a gowne,) there is not any man living ý would not bée surprised with a lodain and vehement loue, in ý beholding of her. Vrganda ý had heard of her before, & aboue all things was much desirous to sée her, because of her great skill, saied vnto Esplandian: In good faith I knowe her better then you think I do, & am wel assured, ý in her yong years she hath ben one of the goodliest ladies ý euer you saw. For shée is both doughter, sister, & aunt vnto a king, & is called Melie, who for to learn ý perfect art & science of Nigromancy, hath so much contemned the world, ý for her inheritance shée hath chosen a rocke, wherein she hath caused a caue to bee digged, where shée now remaineth & liueth in great misery, & I sweare vnto you of my faith, ý it is aboue twenty yeares & more since I determined to come & sée her, but other affaires ý touched me néerer, haue still hindered my desire. Madame (saied Esplandian) séeing you are so néere, you may do it now, & all we will be your guides. I pray you let it be so (said she) & let vs go as soon as we haue dined: which done, and the tables vncouered, euery man made preparation to goe with Vrganda to behold ý sight: but Esplandian would haue but threescore with him, who being wel horsed & armed at al points, issued out of Galatia, Vrganda on her palfrey, riding among thē, Belleris was their guide, & when they came néer vnto the caue where they had found Melie, they espied her set crosse-legged vpon the point of a rock, with that Vrganda praied them to stay, that she alone might speake secretly vnto her, which the knights agréed vnto. Wherwith she rode forward, & being néere vnto her, she said: Madame, I pray you bee not offended that I come to sée you, and offer you my seruice. Who are you? (said shee) I am (saied shée) Vrganda la

discogneue,

discogneue, ỹ haue alwayes had a great desire to sée you. Ha Vrganda, the wisest lady among all others (said Melie) your cõming hether pleaseth mée right well, light downe I pray you, that you and I may talke of such thinges as ỹe haue taken great paines to learne and vnderstand: for although you haue béene the onely occasion of the Christians arriuall here, whereby our poor country indureth so much woe, yet I cannot but excuse you, knowing the faith & duty you are bound to shew to your religion. Wherefore I pray you come nèer, and sit downe by mée. Vrganda perceiuing her to bée so old & fœble, did as shee required, hoping by force to stay her there whether she would or no, till her company were come thether, minding to giue her vnto them to bring her to Galatia, but shee met with as crafty a mate as her selfe, for the olde woman perceauing Vrganda to bée néere her, went to the mouth of her caue, and said vnto her: Vrganda, It would gréeue me that these Knights should heare our talke, wherefore let vs goe in. Whereat Vrganda made no difficulty, thinking verily, that if she might once lay hands on her, shee would vse her at her pleasure: wherewith shée followed her, but shee was no sooner entered, but Melie stepped to hir and held hir so straight by ỹ throat, ỹ shée had no means to cal Esplandian or any of the rest to help her. But they fearing the worst, ran in all hast vnto the caue, and the first that entred was Talanque, & after him Manely, and they had no sooner stepped in, but they fell downe as if they had béene dead, & their fall was so great, that Esplandian that followed them heard it, but hée had a remedye about him against all such aduentures, and that was his good sword, against the which no inchauntment what soener could ought auaile, which he first found to bée true when hée entred into Arcabonnes chamber: he perceauing his two companions in such case, being much gréeued thereat, willingly would haue relœued thẽ, but ỹ he spied Melie holding Vrganda vnder hir knée, séeking by all means to strangle her: which caused him first to succour hir, threatning Melie if ỹ she did hir hurt, she shold déerly buy it, but for all his threatnings shee ceased not to vse all the meanes shée could for to destroy her, vntill Esplandian went neare vnto her, and with his sworde thought to cleaue her head.

wherwith she began to crie, thinking to be take within the chamber where she wrought her charmes, but as she stepped vpon the threshold of the doore, Esplandian caught her by the Beares skin, and whether she would or not, held her so fast, that shee could goe no further. And as hee lifted vp his arme to kill her, hee remembred that hee should doe wrong, thinking it not conuenient for a Knight to defile his hands in the blood of a simple woman, not able to resist: and surely ỹ thought of his, moderated his colour in such sort, that he purposed not to do it, minding only to draw her out of the vaut: wherewith hee toke her by the haire, and pulled her with all his force. With that hee espied a great old Ape, with two eies burning like flaming fire, that lept vpon him for to tear his flesh, but hee gaue him such a blow with his fist betweene the eies, that he strake him dead. And passing forward, brought Melie out of her caue, and leauing her in Frandalos keeping, went in againe to see if Vrganda were aliue, where hee found her in such pain, that it seemed the soule would depart out of her body, wherat he had so great pittie, that he toke her in his armes, and set hir in the aire, the like hee did to Talanque and Manely, who within one quarter of an hour after, could not call to mind what had happened vnto thē, but were as whole and as wel as euer they were before. Wherefore they mounted on their horses, taking Melie with them that sat vpon Sergils horse, and he behind her, holding her in his armes, least she should escape. And God knowes with what ioy Vrganda shewed them what feare she had ben in, which as she said was such, that she thought verily to die. But (said shee) euen as one naile driueth out another, so the ioy I haue of my deliuery, maketh mee in a manner to forget the paine wherein I was. And with that they entered into the Towne, being almost night.

CHAP.

CHAP. XL.

How Carmelle arriued at Tessiante, and spake with Heliaxe, and of the marvellous combat which Esplandian, Frandalo, Gandalin, and Enil fought against three Gyants and twelue Turkish knights.

CArmelle trauelled so long with the women and children of Galatia, that they arriued at Tessiant, where they found both their fathers and husbands as many of them as had saued themselues, as it is said before. Esteeme I pray you what greefe they had to thinke vpon their exile, and losse of all their goods: Surely there is no heart so hard, but would haue wept with griefe to behold great numbers of men and women, with diuers litle children about them, and not hauing any meanes to giue them bread or drinke. Whereof the Prince Alphorax hauing newes, & hearing all their sorow, could not refraine to say in presence of them all. Ah immortall gods, it must néeds be, that either for some great fault of me or mine, this cruell warre is moued in my countrey: O gods immortall, let your wrathes appease, and of your infinite goodnes let it rather please you that all the mischiefe which you send vpon these impotent people fall only vpon mée that alone haue moued your indignations: if not, then I beseech you giue me grace, that to your glory I may driue these cursed Christians (enemies of your holy lawes) out of my countrey, swearing vnto you, that if you vouchsafe your aides, I will make so great a slaughter of them, that thereby your wrathes shall bée appeased, if it be so that the small indeauour I haue hither to vsed to driue them hence be the occasion of your anger towards me. Then hée asked them how they got away. My Lord (said hée that brought him newes) a faire gentle woman named Carmelle (as I heare say) hath brought them hither, and desireth to speake with you and the princesse Heliaxe. Ladie (said Alphorax to his

wife, doe you know her? I my lord (said Heliaxe) for she bare me company all that day that I fell into Frandalos hands, being very ready to do me all the pleasure and seruice that shee could deuise: wherefore my lord, I pray you let her haue that honour and entertainement she deserueth. Lady (said Alphorax) I am wel content therewith. With that some of them ran to fetch Carmelle, who being come in presence of Alphorax, went presently vnto the Princesse Heliaxe, and without salutation, said vnto her: madame, you know the lord and maister that I serue, who only hath authority ouer me, think it not therefore strange, if in any sort I haue not humbled my selfe before the prince Alphorax or to you: And to the end Madame, that you should know the cause of my arrinall here, I think the taking of Galatia is not vnknowne vnto you, whereof at this present the Christians are Lords and maisters, hauing gotten it from you by force, not finding any Garrison therein, but a number of women and little children: which my lord Esplandian hath sent vnto your grace, committing them vnto your good discretion. Assuring you (their Religion onely excepted) they are ready to doe you any seruice that they may. Carmelle (said the Princesse) this is not the first fauour they haue shewed vnto me, I am of long time so much beholding to them, that bee it in their aduersities or their prosperities, I will neuer bee vnmindfull of the same. Neuertheless, I am assured, that at this day I haue not, neither yet shall euer haue the meanes to doe it, (as I think) vnlesse that variable fortune turne her rouling wheele, and abase them as much as now they are aduaunced, then (if it so fall out) they shall full well perceaue, how much I esteeme their vertues and fauours they haue shewne vnto mee. Carmelle (said Alphorax) haue they willed you to deliuer no message vnto mee? No my lord (said shee) but I tell you plaine, they are determined verye shortly to come and visite you, in such manner, as will not greatly like you. By all my gods (said Alphorax) I will ease them of that burthen, if they make not the more haste. For I haue so many men preparing, that I meane to goe in person to Constantinople to destroye the wicked Emperour and

and all the Chriſtians. Then ſhall my wife haue meanes (if ſhee thinke good) to acknowledge the fauours towards them, which they haue ſhowen vnto her, as ſhee ſayeth. My lorde (ſaid Carmelle) Mens enterpriſes doe oftentimes fall out contrarie to their expectations, and God that is in Heauen aboue, commaundeth and diſpoſeth of all thinges as it pleaſeth him, and not as wee would haue it. Nowe Madame (ſayed ſhee to Heliaxe) I haue done the commaundement of thoſe that ſent mee hether, wherefore I beſeech you let mee be ſafely conducted to the place from whence I came. My lord (ſaid the princeſſe to Alphorax) I pray you ſhewe her ſo much fauour, for it would greeue mee much that ſhee ſhould receiue the leaſt iniurie in the world, which hee graunted vnto her: and withall Heliaxe gaue her for her paines one of the richeſt gownes ſhee had. Wherewith ſhee cauſed her to be conducted by twenty knights vnto the Towne of Galatia: where being arriued, ſhee ſhewed them what ſhee had done, as alſo what ſpæches the Prince Alphorax vſed vnto her, which Vrganda marked well, ſaying vnto the Knights: In faith my good friendes, as touching Alphorax high woordes, they are the fruits of his nature, being altogether prowd and arrogant: Neuertheleſſe, I can aſſure you, that fortune promiſeth him great matters. And becauſe it will not bee long before they doe happen, I will nowe vſe no woordes of them: Praying ſome of you to ſhewe mee ſo much fauour to retourne againe vnto Melies caue, to fetch her Bookes that wee left behind vs. Which being in my poſſeſſion, it may bee they will ſerue hereafter to doe both you and manie others pleaſure. Eſplandian hearing Vrganda ſpeake with ſuch affection, and knowing the deſire ſhee had to haue the bookes, anſwered her and ſaied: Madame, before I ſleepe I will ſee if I can fulfill your pleaſure. And without longer ſtaying, hee deſired Enil, Frandalo, and Gandalin, to beare him company: who preſently armed themſelues, and being on horſebacke without any other companye then their owne Squires, iſſued out of the Towne, leauing Vrganda with Norandel,

that

that was newly come from the city of Alfarin. The four knights rode so long till they came vnto Melies rocke, where not far from thence they found three giants and twelue knights, that with a loud voice stood at the mouth of the caue calling Melie, for the shepheards keeping sheepe in the fields (hauing scene her led vnto Galatia) ranne to tell them newes: and to know the truth they were expressely come thither. Esplandian and his company knew them well to be their enemies, wherefore they determined to giue them battaile although their number was far greater: wherefore being couered with their shields, and their swords readie in their hands, they entred among them. Esplandian met the first giant, Frandalo the second, and Gandalin and Enil the third: and Esplandian gaue his giant so great a blow, that therewith he made him take so great a leape, that both master and horse lay vpon the ground not once removing hand nor foot. But it fell out otherwise with the rest, for they hauing broken their speares vpon Frandalo, Gandalin, and Enil, their horses being lowsely bridled, bare them at least a mile from thence, before they could make them stay. With that the foure Esplandian knights were inclosed by twelue Turkes, whereof three of them at the first charge were stricken dead vnto the ground: wherewith the fight began to be most perillous and fierce, in such sort, that before the two giants could returne againe, fiue other of the Turkes were in such case, that the best of them was hurt to death, so there rested but four: which Esplandian and Frandalo left fighting with Gandalin and Enil, to meete the two giants that in great hast came towards them to helpe their companions: and as they met together neuer was there brauer fight, for Esplandian thinking vpon the princes Leonorine, gaue not one blowe but hee made the blood to follow on him that had the stroke: whereby the rocke became all bloodie, yet he found his enemy no lesse able to requite his blowes, so that in short space his shield was so hewed and cut in pieces, that there rested nothing but the lethers in his hands: whereat he was in such a rage, that rising in his stirrops, hee gaue his enemie so great a blow vpon the crosse of steele, that he strake it off, wherewith the giants eyes started in his head, which made him bowe

his

his necke vpon the horses maine, and withall let fall his sword. With that Esplandian strake him such another blowe betweene the necke and shoulders that he cut off his head: wherewith the horse ranne vp and downe the fields with his dead Giant on his backe: meane time Frandalo handled the other Giant in such sort, that hee had put him out of breath. Gandalin and Enil for their partes doing no lesse, for they two fighting against foure, behaued themselues so couragiously, that they slewe two of their hardiest enemies: yet the other two would neuer yéeld, although they were still readie to flée, especially when they perceiued Esplandian comming towardes them. And to say truth, it was not possible for them to make any resistance: yet hée staied a while, because he perceiued some of them that were stricken downe to rise againe, and take their swordes in hand: whereat he turned about, but it chaunced that his horses sote lighting betweene a cliffe stucke fast, and was forced to fall downe, whereby Esplandian was in the greatest daunger of death that euer hée had, by reason that his enemies were round about him ready to thrust their swordes into his body: a thing verie easie to be done if God had not prouided for him, and giuen strength and agilitie to his horse to rise againe with his master on his backe: who perceiuing himselfe at libertie, and hauing his sword in hande, made such execution on the Turkes, that he left not one aliue: wherewith those two that fought with Gandalin and Enil fledde along the mountaine, as if all the deuils in hell had beene behind them, and not beeing pursued saued themselues, leauing the Gyant behinde them for a pawne, to whome Frandalo graunted life, not onely because hée asked mercie, but for that hée was in a manner dead.

CHAP. XLI.

How Esplandian entred into Melies caue, to fetch her bookes, and of an assault made vpon him, Frandalo, Enil, and Gandalin, as they thought to returne againe vnto Galatia.

THe combat ended as you heard before, each man caused his woundes to be dressed and bound vp in the best manner they could: then Esplandian entred into Melies caue to fetch the bookes he sought, where hee went into a faire chamber being foure square, about the which there grewe so much Iuie, that it might verily be iudged to haue béene placed there for the hangings of the chamber: in this chamber at each corner there hung foure lampes, that burnt both night and day and neuer went forth so cunningly could the Enchantresse shew her Art in that place. And as Esplandian looked well about him, he espied through another chamber, in the middle whereof stood a great candlestaffe all of masse gold with seuen branches, and in euery branch a ware candle that burned continually: hard by it stood a Cypres table, whereon lay Melies bookes, some couered with plates of gold and grauen vpon it, others with siluer, bound and embossed round about, which Esplandian toke and carried with him out of the caue, giuing them to keepe vnto his squire, and mounting on their horses, they rode the same way they came, thinking presently to be at Galatia againe. But they were staied sooner than they looked for, for the Turkes that fled away (as you heard before) made an alarme at a little towne not farre from thence, whereby there issued twenty horse and fortie footmen, who being assured that foure knights onely and no more had ouerthrowne their men, made all the spéed they could to inclose them, specially those that were wel horsed: Frandalo and his company perceiued them a farre off yet could they hardly shunne them, but of force must fight, or els

endure

endure the shame to flie away. Wherefore Esplandian was in mind to trie their fortune, and to send one of their squires in all hast vnto Galatia, to aduertise them of the danger they were in, that they might succour them: whereto Frandalo would not giue consent, shewing what great paine and trauaile both they and their horses haue endured all that day, as also the great number of their enemies in regard of them, in such sort (said he) that if we take vpon vs for to fight with them, I am in doubt, that thinking to winne honour, we shall be counted rash and presumptuous fooles. What then: (said Esplandian) will you endure the shame to flie away: In good truth (said he) for my part I had rather endure the hazzard of life or death, what euer shall happen. Then we will doe thus (said Frandalo:) my squire shall runne vnto Galatia to aduertise Talanque and the rest how we staied behind. Meane time, I know a bridge not farre from hence, whether we will goe and defend the same, till our aid shall come, where we cannot be assailed by them all at once: otherwise thinke with your selfe what meanes we haue to resist so many men both on horse and foot, that come purposely to assaile vs. Let vs goe then (said Esplandian) wherewith leauing the way on the right hand, they turned to the left, as Frandalo ledde them: and they had not ridden very farre but they came vnto a little riuer somewhat deepe, ouer the which there stode a bridge, where they had no sooner arriued, but they were presently charged by their enemies, especially by one of the Turkes that was most braue and sumptuous, and best mounted of them all, as being their captaine: who bearing a great launce in his hand, began to crie most vehemently in the Arabian tongue vnto Esplandian and his companions, saying: You dogges, you flye away, but by our gods it shall cost you all your liues: wherewith Enil that heard his threatnings better than the rest, turned his face, and set spurres to his horse, the Turke and hee meeting so fiercely togither, that Enil was hurt in the right arme, and the Turke thrust cleane through the body, wherewith hee fell presently starke dead vnto the ground: Which set his companions in such a rage to see their champion thus suddainly slaine, that they

thought to inclose Enil, but he found meanes to recouer the bridge: surely whosoeuer had seen the great prowesse of those four champions, might with good reason esteeme them as they were, specially Esplandian that stroke not one blowe in vaine. And although they were but fewe in comparison of their enemies, yet they did twice or thrice ouerthrow diuers of the Turkes that seemed boldest to aduenture forward, in such sort, that had it not beene for the footemen that came vpon them, the horsemen had but little preuailed: whereat it is not to be marualled, because the greatest part of them were citizens, altogither vnexpert in armes, and fitter to banket at a table than to guide a horse or breake a lance: whereby in lesse than a quarter of an houre the foure knightes had done them great hurt: and so much, that neither the horsemen nor footmen durst once set forward to enter vpon the bridge, till one of them determined to make proofe, thereby if it were possible to inclose them round about. This Turkes name was Tluacam, a valiant and hardy knight, as he well shewed before the combat ended: for although the water was deepe and the other side hard to clime vp, yet he waded through, and at diuers times bare eight more of his companions ouer: which Frandalo and the rest perceiuing, they were constrained to deuide themselues, Esplandian and Enil staying at the end of the Bridge where the combat first began, Frandalo and Gandalin standing at the other, and God knowes what trouble they had, for Tluacam desirous to winne honour or to lose his life, with his lance in hand, charged Gandalin in such sort, that both man and horse had like to fallen to the ground, and withall he brake his speare: wherfore taking his sword in hand, striking on both sides, and thinking to be seconded by his fellowes, put his horse in such a fury, that whether he would or not the bare him to ỹ middle of the bridge: where thinking to stay, the horses feet slid from him, whereby both hee and his master fell into the riuer and were drowned: whereat the Turkes gaue so great a crie, that they seemed madde, and bowing downe their heads thinking to acquite their losse, vsed all the force they could on both sides the bridge to enter vpon the foure knightes: who sustained their assault so brauely, that the

Turkes

Turkes at last were forced to recule, whereof nine were throwen into the water, but Esplandian and his company were so weary, that in a manner they could fight no lenger. With that they perceiued their aid in all hast comming towards them: the occasion why they staied so long was because Frenace, Frandalos squire, that went to seeke Manoly and the rest, thinking to find his master where he left him, had led them thither, but not finding them there, supposed them to be gone vnto the bridge: and to say truth, they arriued in very good time, for that Esplandian and his three companions were almost cleane out of breath: but when they perceiued their aide, neuer did poore prisoners that were set at libertie more reioyce, nor were better pleased: and the Turkes on the contrary side neuer more astonished, yet they held close together, determining rather to reuenge their deathes than once to yéeld vnto their enemies: so that before the Knightes of Galatia could enter in among them, they gaue them much to do, although in the end they ouercame them, whereby not one escaped aliue, to carry newes vnto their friends. Enil at the first onset had béen sore wounded, as you heard before, wherefore hée caused his wounds to be searched: the like did the rest of the hurt knights. Which done, they set forward to Galatia, contenting themselues for that day with the victory it had pleased God to send them. And comming to the gate, they found Vrganda readie to receiue them: who knowing how all had past, and the daunger wherein Esplandian had béen, iestingly saide vnto him: In faith my Lord, said shée, if I were afraid of death when I fell into Melies hands, I beléeue you were not in much better case since that I saw you last, as I vnderstand by those that know what dommage you were in. Madame (said he) I know I am a mortall man, and that my life and death are in the hands of God, as it pleaseth him to dispose, and I confesse vnto you, if wée had not béene succoured, that in the end we could not haue endured: yet am I well assured, that before it had come to passe, we had laid so many enemies on the ground, that the rest should haue had greater cause to lament their losse, than boast of their conquest. Vrganda perceiued by Esplandians words that he liked not her speech,

whereupon shee said vnto him: My Lord, pardon me I beseech you, and excuse the indiscretion of a woman, specially in mée, who at this present had forgotten my selfe. Madame (said Esplandian) you may command me, and likewise set me forth for a coward, hardy, or any other what it pleaseth you to tearme me. In which manner talking togither, they came vnto his lodging, where master Elizabeth (newly come from Alsatia) visited his wounds, and the rest likewise that had cause to vse his helpe.

CHAP. XLII.

How the Knights of great Brittaine that were at Galatia imbarked themselues with Vrganda in the great serpent, to saile vnto Constantinople, and what happened vnto them.

THe knightes that had béen hurt at the last encounter, for the space of fiftéene dates after were forced to kéepe their chambers vntill their woundes were healed: during which time, Vrganda toke great pleasure in reading Melies bookes which Esplandian caused to bée brought vnto her: wherein shée found such wonderfull conjurations and deuises of Magicke Art, that she was abashed how shée that had had them so long time in her possession, knew no more than yet shée did, estéeming the Enchantresse Lady to haue béen the perfectest scholler that euer studied in that art, as it well appeared by her bookes. Now the time approched wherein it was expedient (according to the destinies appointed) that Esplandian and his companions should goe vnto Constantinople: wherefore as soone as their wounds were healed, Vrganda caused them to bée assembled, and standing in the middest of them all, she said vnto them: My good friends, knowing part of the prosperities and aduersities which the heauens foreshewe vnto you all, I came hither specially

ſpecially to ſée Eſplandian and you, of whome I haue receiued great pleat pleaſure, perceiuing at my arriuall the loue and amitie that is among you, with the great deſire you haue to accompliſh the order of knighthood: not for the glory and recompence of this world, but onely for the increaſing of our faith and the ſeruice of God, that ſhall reward you for it: and to the end you may continue in this forwardnes, and that the thing which I pretend, may happily fall out, I will from henceforth not only imploy my perſon but my Arte, which hath pleaſed God to lend me, wherewith I will aduiſe you what I ſhall find conuenient and neceſſarie for the augmentation of your honours alreadie ſpread throughout the world: which to begin I am of opinion, that you all imbarke your ſelues with me in the great ſerpent, that ſhall bring vs vnto Conſtantinople to the Emperour, for without him it is impoſſible that this great enterpriſe you haue taken in hand can come to good effect: as alſo that hee himſelfe before many yéeres are paſt, ſhall be found in marueilous neceſſitie, and ſuch, that he ſhall account himſelfe moſt happie to haue your aid: and with good reaſon, for that in the end both hee and you ſhall ouercome thoſe hazzards according to your deſires. Then ſhall you plainely knowe, that this that I foreſhew vnto you is moſt true. While Vrganda vſed theſe wordes, all the company ſtood ſtill intentiue for to heare her: and had it not bæn that they eſtæmed her words to be moſt true, they had doubted of the threatnings ſhée vſed againſt the Emperour, he bæing ſo great and puiſſant a Monarch. Neuertheleſſe the iſſue of that trouble which ſhée aſſured vnto them, gaue them ſome eaſe and contentation of minde: in expectation whereof, they made account in the meane time to proue their ſtrengths and forces, that thereby their valour and magnanimitie might be further ſpread abroad. And as touching their voiage to the Emperour, as Vrganda gaue them direction, it was onely the thing whereunto Eſplandian did aſpire, hoping that if the warres were openly proclaimed in the Grecian Empire, and the Emperours daunger ſo imminent, to ſhewe ſuch valour and prowes in martiall exploits, that hee would not onely free and acquite his father

of

of the promise he had made to serue the Ladies, but constraine the loue that the princes Leonorine bare vnto him, in such sort, that he might obtaine her for his wife: which caused him to speake for all his companie, assuring Vrganda that not one of them but was readie to obey and goe where it pleased her. My friends (said she) then I pray you to morrow in the morning cause your horses to be shipped in my shippe, and for armour take you no care; I will prouide you thereof so well, that each man shall find himselfe content: let it suffice you to imbarke your selues and set saile: for often times an enterprise deferred ouer long, falleth not out as mē desire it should, not for want of good and wise counsell, but by the negligēce of those that are appointed to execute the same. Thus was their voiage to Constantinople agréed vpon, in such sort, that all the knights of great Brittaine entred into the great serpent, taking with them Frandalo, Molie, and the captaine of Tessant that had bēen taken prisoner, as you heard before, leauing the Admirals souldiers for garrison in the towne. Which done, the ship went forward of it selfe, sayling towards the castle La montaigne defendu, where being arriued they toke Armato king of Turkie and his two captaines with them: for Vrganda willed them so to doe: and fiue daies after, the great serpent arriued within halfe a mile of Constantinople, where she staied. Then Vrganda caused her knightes to be armed with the armour shée had brought, which were white, with a red crosse both before and behind, most comely to behold. They were in all fortie knights, whose names are as followeth: Esplandian, Frandalo, Norandel, Talanque, Manely the wise, Ambor of Gandel, Grauate of the fearfull valley, Gandalin, Enil, Trion cousin to quéene Briolanie, Brauor sonne of the giant Balan, Belleris, Elion le delibere, Licoran of the white Tower, Listoran of the siluer bridge, Landin of Sarlaque, Imosil of Burgondie, Ledadrin of Ferraque, Sarquiles cousin to Angriotes, Palomir, Branfil, Tantiles the proud, Galbron sonne of Isamel, Carpin his brother, Carin of Carante, Attalio sonne of Oliuas, Bracele sonne of Bandoyuas, Garamante sonne of Norgales, Amphinio of Almain, Brandonie of Fraunce, Penatrie of Spaine, Flamene his brother, Culspicio of Bohemia,

Amandario

Amandario of litle Brittaine, Silueſter of Hungaria, Manely of Swethland, Galfarie of Italie, Galiot of Scotland, Amandalie his brother, and Calfeur the glorious. Being arriued, the ſhippe was preſently eſpied by the citizens which they knewe, hauing ſéene it before when it put them in ſuch feare, as you haue heard, but hoping for him that vſed ordinarily to saile therein, they all ranne vnto the walles, and along the ſhore to ſée him land: wherwith the noiſe and rumour was ſo great, that the Emperour had newes thereof béeing as then talking with the ladies. Thoſe newes pleaſed the Princes Leonorine ſo well, that ſhe no ſoner heard the great ſerpent named, but ſhe roſe vp and went vnto the windowes to ſée if ſhee could eſpie her loue Eſplandian: but the ſhip was ſomewhat too farre off, neither did it moue from the place whereas it lay. Wherfore fearing to be deceiued as ſhe had béen before, ſhe began to change colour: which Quéene Minorelle perceiued, and ieſting ſaid vnto her: Madame, doe you make this pitifull countenance to diſſemble the toy you haue conceiued, or for feare I ſhould beguile you of him that commeth to ſée you? How now couſin (ſaid ſhe) how long haue you learned to mock? In faith I neuer thought vpon the firſt of thoſe two points, and much leſſe am I in doubt of the ſecond, for you know as much as my ſelfe, and yet I am not ignorant that when the great ſerpent was there where I now behold it, he whome we expect came not thither, wherefore I feare (and with good reaſon) that wée ſhall now be ſerued in like ſort: and as ſhe ended her ſpéech, the ſhippe came within a bow ſhot of the hauen where they might perceiue one of her ſides to open, from whence they put out a boat, and not long after they ſaw Carmelle and two other gentlewomen come forth, the two gentlewomen playing moſt ſwéetly vpon two inſtruments, which they did till they arriued at the ſhore: from whence they went vnto the Emperor, who knowing Carmelle, had better hope to ſée Eſplandian than euer he had before: & going vnto her to aſke what newes, ſhe made no more reuerence vnto him than ſhe vſed at other times to do, ſaying vnto him: My lord, Eſplandian my maſter (that you ſo much deſire to ſée) is now arriued before the town in ỹ great ſerpent with diuers other knights

his friends and allies, and Vrganda la disogneue, desiring you to shew them the fauour to stay in your pallace, where they meane to come and visit your grace. Truly Carmelle (said the Emperor) I neuer heard message in al my life that pleased me so wel, I am content to do as they desire, although I was determined to méet them, and to giue them that entertainement they deserue: But séeing they will haue it otherwise, I will satisfie their desires. That is sufficient (said Carmelle) we will then retourne to them againe, to certefie your graces answere. Goe (said the Emperor) and tell them from me, that they shall be most heartily welcome. With that Carmelle with the two Gentlewomen departed towards the Hauen: meane time, whosoeuer had beheld the Princesse Leonorine, might easily haue iudged the alteration of her heart, it was so full of ioy, that without Quéene Minoresse ỹ caused her to refraine, she would peraduenture haue done done something whereby her honour had been blemished, minding to leaue the Empresse her mother, and goe to méete Esplandian, whose absence had procured so great sorrow in her mind. But the Quéene as a wise and discréet lady persuaded her so much, that shée stayed at the window, whereby her alteration might not be perceaued. Carmelle staied not long, but went into the boate, rowing to the great serpent, where being entered, there were presently two boats more put forth, that brought horses to land, which don, they returned again to fetch the knights, & those ỹ would went forth, and among them six gentlewomen, three of thē sounding ỹ recorders, thē ceasing, the other three plaied on ỹ lute and vials, in that manner being landed & mounted on their horses, they entred into the Citty, ỹ sixe Gentlewomen marching first, after them ỹ two Turkish captaines ỹ were taken at ỹ siege of the castle La montaigne defendu, then ỹ captain of Telisant, next followed Armato, & with him ỹ princesse Melie, apparelled in ỹ beares skin as shée had ben taken, then followed ỹ forty knights two in a ranke, armed horse & man in one sort of armour, in ỹ middest of them road Vrganda, talking to Esplandian and ỹ king of Denmarke. And as they approched ỹ pallace, ỹ Emperor, ỹ Empresse, and the ladies met thē, where ỹ emperor comming to Vrganda, did her as much

honor

honor as if she had ben ỹ greatest quéen in the world. Mean time the knights being among the Ladies, gaue occasion to bee found no lesse courteous, then prompt & valiant in armes, specially Esplandian, who comming to the princesse Leonorine, knéeled on the ground to kisse her hands, but shee réfused it, making ỹ whole cõpany beléeue, she was offended with him for delaying the time to come vnto the court as he had promised. Which the Emperour perceiuing, could not refraine to smile, and sated vnto her: How now daughter? Is this the good entertainement you shewe vnto your knight, and ỹ thankes you giue him, for comming expressely hether to serue you? I pray you call to mind, that he deserueth a better countenance, were it only for his fathers sake, to whome you are so much beholding. My lord (said shee) ỹ is ỹ cause I am so much offended with him, for if he resembled ỹ knight with ỹ grén sword as much in curtesie as in countenance, he had not stayed so long to obay his fathers wil, & to satisfie ỹ requests ỹ you & I haue made vnto him by Carmelle and others, as your grace knoweth. Before God (said ỹ emperor) you say true: yet I could neuer haue ben persuaded you would conceiue displeasure so long time, considring what he hath done, & ỹ rich presents he sent to you. My lord (said she) if he hath done any thing for me, it was without my cómandement. I had rather he had done lesse in those things, & ỹ hée had ben more obedient to his fathers wil & mine. Madame (said ỹ emperor to Vrganda) you sée in my daughter how great ỹ choler of an angry woman is. My lord (said she) she hath reason so to do, for ỹ Esplandian obeying his father, ought to confirm himself both to her wil & yours. And hauing failed therin, all he saith ỹ he hath done for her sake, may be accounted nothing, although I am assured, ỹ the remembrance of my lady your daughter hath made him (being in fight) enter into such danger, that it was most strange howe hee could escape. Wherefore Madame (said shee to Leonorine) he deserueth pardõ for the same, & so I pray you grant him. While Vrganda spake, ỹ Princes beheld Esplandian with so great affection, that in a maner shée liued and died in him: and he for his part by hir felt in what sort loue vseth those he holds in his power. Wherby she cõtinued a long time without answering Vrganda,

not for any euill will to her in vſing of thoſe ſpæches, but rather fæling ſuch alteration in her mind, that ſhe trembled like a leaf. But in the end ſhe remembred her ſelfe, and ſaied vnto her: Madame, ſæing it is your pleaſure that I remit his offence, I am content to doe it, vpon condition, that if hæ forget himſelfe as hæ hath done heretofore, you ſhall beare the puniſhment for him. With that ſhe toke him by the hand, and made him riſe vp, changing ſpæch, becauſe the Empreſſe (that in the meane time talked with the king of Denmarke) came thether, whereby Eſplandian was conſtrained to leaue the Princeſſe, and ſalute her. The emperor al that while had giuen no entertainement to king Armato, as knowing him not, but when they ſhewed him which was he, he imbraced him and ſaid: My lord and brother, I beſæch you pardon my ignorance, in not entertaining you before this time, as not knowing you, but I will amend the fault when you think good. My lord (ſaied Armato) I am now (as it pleaſeth fortune) in place where you may command me, yet I pray you call to mind who I was, and what I may bee, and doe for me as you would I ſhould do for you if your caſe were mine: Conſidering with your ſelfe, that the like hard fortune may fall on you, and that it is no leſſe vertue to intertain the vanquiſhed courteouſly, then to ouerthrow the puiſſant enemie. With that the Emperour led him into his pallace, the reſt following after him, and when they were in the hall, hee left them with the Empreſſe to ſpeake vnto Frandalo, and taking him aſide, ſaied vnto him: Frandalo, to let you knowe howe well I do account of the great good ſeruice you haue done for mæ, I will that from henceforth you ſhall bee my chæfe ſtandard bearer, in which place I nowe eſtaplish you. For the which Frandalo thanked him moſt humbly, accounting himſelfe moſt happye to haue ſo great authoritie.

CHAP.

CHAP. XLIII.

How Norandel and Queene Minoresse fell in loue one of the other, and what conference they had together.

THe Emperour being among his Knights, making them all the cheare and honour that hee could deuise. It happened that the Princesse Leonorine and Quéene Minoresse séeing the king of Denmark and Norandel together, called Carmelle, and asked her who they were. My Ladies (saied shée) you haue séen him that hath the least beard here before, (which is the king of Denmarke) for hee came hether with Frandalo, the other is Norandel king Luisarts sonne, estéemed for one of the hardiest knights liuing on the earth. I pray you (said the Princesse) desire them to come hether, that wée may speake with them. With that Carmelle called them vnto her, and as they were before the two Princesses, the more they beheld the excellency of their beauties, the more they marualled at it, and not without cause, for next vnto Leonorine there could hardly be found in all Gréece one that matched quéene Minoresse, especially in comelinesse and good behauiour, but if shee had some perfection in her, nature had not forgotten her selfe in forming the two knights, especially Norandel, who till that time had neuer felt the stings of loue, no more had Quéene Minoresse. Neuertheless, that little théefe surprised them so couertly, that hee bound them both, making them captiues one to the other, in such manner, that after many Questions and Answeres propounded they drew themselues apart, leauing the king of Denmarke talking with the Princesse Leonorine, the Quéene asking Norandel what hee thought of the Princesse. Madame (said hæ) although I haue heard her estéemed for one of the goodliest ladies in ý world, yet did I neuer thinke her beautie had beene such as now I sée it is, although you are little behinde her in that respect, whereby I

might eſtéeme my ſelfe moſt happy if I had ben aſléepe that day I enterpꝛiſed to take my iourney hether. Wherfoꝛe (ſaid the q̃éen) haue you had ſo ill intertainment in this court: No madame (ſaid he) but there is one hath ſtollen that from me which I haue moſt carefully kept during my life. The Quéene not knowing what he meant, was thereat abaſhed, aſking him what it was, & whether he knew the théefe. I madame (ſaied he) and it reſteth in you to do me iuſtice, if it bée your pleaſure: foꝛ you & none other haue that whereof I ſpeake. In good faith (ſaied the Quéene) you ſhall pardon mee, foꝛ I haue nothing of yours that I can remember. Madame (ſaied Norandel) ſince the time I firſt did knowe what belonged to a man, I kept my liberty, not alienating it to any one: But comming hether (I had no ſoner ſet mine eie on you) but I found my ſelfe of a fréeman a bondſlaue and captiue to your ladiſhips good fauoꝛ: which I beſéech you afoꝛe me, in recompence of ỹ liberty you now haue taken from me. Truly ſir knight (ſaied ſhe) you haue at this pꝛeſẽt run too fas aſtray, foꝛ if you beheld me as you ſhould, you had not found me ſuch a one as you ſay, & wold haue ben twice aduiſed to vſe ſuch ſpéeches as you do. Neuertheleſſe, I will not take them at your hands (being a ſtranger) in ſo euill part as mine honour doth require, and I think likewiſe you ſpeake farre otherwiſe then you meane: which ſhe ſaid to vndermine him, thereby to ſée if Norandels woꝛds were ſpoken from the heart, who hearing that ouerthwart anſwere, was much aſtoniſhed, but being moued with loue, anſwerd her and ſaid: Madame, pardon my boldneſſe I beſéech you, but I ſweare vnto you, by the faith of a knight, that I haue diſcouered the ſecret of my heart: and if you will not beléeue me at this time, I hope in time to come to doe ſo much, that you ſhall well perceiue what great deſire I haue to bee your knight, if it will pleaſe you to graunt mee ſo much fauour to accept mee foꝛ the ſame. When Quéene Minoreſſe perceaned him ſo earneſt, as that in vttering thoſe woꝛds hee ſhewed great affection, ſhee eſtéemed in her minde to haue ſufficient argument that might perſuade her to beléeue his woꝛdes, wherewith ſhee anſwered him and ſaied: My lòꝛde Norandel, If you doe as you pꝛomiſe, I well beléeue that you

ſay:

say: and for the accepting you to bee my knight, mee thinketh I should doe wrong to refuse so small a fauor to so courteous a gentleman as you are: wherfore I both grant it and desire it of you. With ỹ she took a litle ring (she commonly wore) off from hir finger, giuing it vnto him for a witnesse of their new confirmed alliance: And had it not ben ỹ ỹ Emperor was ready to go to supper, they had no sooner left talking, but ỹ Empresse went in, whereby quẽn Minoresse was constrained to follow after, taking Melie & Carmelle wt hir, to whom she did al honor & good intertainmẽt she could deuise: supper being don, & ỹ tables vncouered, ỹ princes Leonorino ỹ had seen Norandel & quẽn Minoresse talking wt so great affection, doubted some feathers in ỹ wind, wherefore taking her aside, said vnto hir: Cousin, I beleeue ỹ knight ỹ intertained you so long, told you some news out of great Brittaine, or somthing els ỹ pleased you ful wel, I pray you fair lady tel me what it was, for you were very earnest to harken ther vnto. How now madame: (said she) since when I pray you, did you learn to mock: cal you ỹ mocking (said she) which is don in earnest: I pray God ỹ mockery I mean to you may fal out as I desire it wold: thẽ shal I at ỹ least haue as good aduãtage at you, as you haue had at me, which wold please me wel, not so much to haue a cõpanio in mine own estate, as to yeeld you in exchãge ỹ like pleasure I haue receiued at your hands, whẽ you first were made acquainted with ỹ loue betweẽn Esplandian & me. Wherfore fear not to vtter your mind vnto me, otherwise I wil from henceforth haue you in a iealousie, for that you haue already done, or yet would doe. Madame (said ỹ quẽne) rather thẽ you should do so, I wil declare to you ỹ secretest thing I know. The knight (said she) whereof you speak, (I know not by what means) hath so captiued my mind, ỹ I feel ỹ thing in my self which I neuer thought could haue happened to me. And as they ỹ are molested with a cõtinual ague, do find ỹ tast of water better thẽ ỹ hope of life to thẽ: so I likewise, ỹ was accustomed not only to cõtemn the force of loue, but blame al such as yeeld to his might, (estæming their estate rather voluntary then forcible) finde my selfe so much surprised, ỹ if God help me not, I am in the greatest danger ỹ euer poore woman was. What (said the princesse) think you my lord Norandel is of so hard a heart, and little courtesie, as

that

that hee would disdaine the loue of so faire and comely a Lady as you are? Doe you perceiue by him, that his mind is placed elsewhere? No madame (saied she) but to the contrary, hee protested to be wholly mine, without any further aduantage, then that I haue accepted him for my knight. Truly (saied Leonorine) I am glad thereof, and if you had done otherwise, he might iustly haue complained, and you much more to haue refused so great a good, when it is offered without dissimulation: else if it bee otherwise, it is no good, but rather a curse. I am of this opinion (saied shee) that my lord Norandel would rather die a thousand deathes then beare that mind: Wherefore determine I pray you to vse him well, assuring you, that I will not faile to succour you in what I may, and will doe for you as you haue done for mee. So long they talked together, that the Emperour and his company risen from the table, came to see the ladies. Neuertheless, neither the Princesse nor Queene Minoresse could haue the meanes to entertaine their friends, but onely with a looke, whereby (their hearts panting in their bellies) were somewhat eased: when night approching, euery man withdrewe him to his rest, but when Queene Minoresse found her selfe alone, and in her bed, she began to think vpon the speeches that Norandel vsed vnto her, sometimes determining to assaie, if by any meanes shee could driue the same out of hir mind, and then presently changed thoughts, and saied vnto her selfe: Alas, was there euer greater constancy in a woman, then that I alwaies had vntill this time? Must I nowe of force yeeld vp the fort, that against so many hard assaults I held inuincible? Alas, I nowe perceiue it is of force, wherefore it is better presently to seeke for remedy, then to consume thus secretly as I doe. But what? if I chaunce in this sort to yeeld vnto mine owne desire, (poore soule that I am) then doe I manifestly perceiue the danger wherein I fall, and the thraldome that I bring my selfe into, from whence while I liue, I shall neuer escape. Wherefore it were far better for mee to bridle mine owne affection, and command that which commandeth me, then do that which hereafter I might repent. With that shee held her peace, and tourning on each side, like one not well at ease in body nor in mind, she had no

sooner

sooner resolued one thing, but presently dissolued it againe, so great was her inconstancy therein. Neuertheless, hauing well debated with her selfe al the pleasures or displeasures that might chance thereby: In the end, with a lowd voice shee vttered these words: I know not what may come to passe, but Loue promiseth me great things: Wherefore if the worst fall out, and that from henceforth I forget my selfe, hee shall beare the blame, and not I, that will doe nothing but vnder his protection: In which opinion, she fel asléepe, and the next day Norandel and she finding meanes to talke together, they confirmed their loue in such sort, that they determined to vse the same more by wisedome, then by passion: which those that are in like case, ought to follow, thereby to attaine vnto the point of their desired ioyes, which in times past before, was commonly called the gracious gifte of Mercy.

CHAP. XLIIII.

How Vrganda declared vnto the Emperour the signification of the Prophesie that was found in the tombe, and of two dragons that carried her with king Armato and Melie vp into the aire, and set them in the middle of the citty of Tesifant.

AD heard before howe Carmelle in her ship, shewed the Emperour the tombe that Esplandian had conquered in the Rocke of the Enchauntresse with the image of Iupiter, and the Prophesie he held within his hand, which the Emperour remembred so well, that hee neuer ceased to thinke thereon. Whereby, the next day after the arriuall of that noble company in the citty of Constantinople, he calling to mind that there could no person be found in all the world better able to resolue his doubt, then Vrganda was, caused her to goe into the closet, where the Empresse with the Princesse Leonorine, Queene Minoresse, and no more, stayed for her: they fiue being together, the Emperor caused the image

of Iupiter to be brought thither: which done, he said vnto Vrganda: Madame, I pray you doe me so much pleasure as to declare (if it be possible) what are the meaning of the letters that this Image holdeth. With that Vrganda read it, and having considered thereof, she said vnto the Emperour: My lord, the great knowledge and skill that this Idol hath foreshowen shall in time to come be lost, is alreadie happened: for as you know, the power of Iupiter and of other gods, hath bëen suppressed and abolished by the comming of Iesus Christ: and as touching these wordes, The bondslaue of the bond of slauerie shall be buried here, and life restored by him that suffered death. These are hard and obscure tearmes, yet will I declare them to your Grace as well as possibly I may. With that Leonorine and quëene Minoresse thought she would haue spoken of the knight Esplandian that had bëen put into a Cedar chest, as you heard before: wherewith they bëing surprised with a deadly feare, began to behold each other in most pitifull manner: which Vrganda well perceiuing, intending to ease their mindes, continued her discourse in this manner: My lord (said shee) this prophecie was written concerning Matrodo lord of the castle La montaigne defendu, who as you knowe was alwaies a Pagan till his latter day that he became a Christian, whereby long time he continued a bondslaue of the bond of slauerie: for such ought the sea of Idolatrie to be named: but Esplandian perceiuing his repentance, suffered him to be buried in the hermitage, where as yet Carmelles father doth remaine: who since that time hath so much honoured the giants body, that shee hath buried his bones within the Cedar chest, ỹ your madam (said she to Leonorine) if you do remember, gaue vnto her: & touching these lines which containe these words, That life shal be restored by him that suffered death: that is likewise to be vnderstood of him, for that losing this transitorie life, he hath obtained the eternall in Abrahams bosome: so great grace hath he receiued at ỹ hands of God by the merit of his sonnes passion, in whome he did beleeue, as I said before; & so my lord (said she) you haue heard what I can say as touching this strange prophecie. I but (said the Emperour) what meanes the rest: My lord (said she) I can tell you

no

no more of it than can my lady your daughter or queene Mino-resse, but so much can I assure you, that in short time you shall see it come to passe: and if in any point it concerneth you, the best is it will all fall out to greater good of your soule, than to any power or worldly glory: wherewith for this present I pray you content your selfe. I truly (said the Emperor) & so will I alwaies do: for so my soule be well I esteeme not the misery or torments of my bodie. And with that he left Vrganda with the Empresse, & went into the hall, where great number of knights & gentlemen staied for him: with whome hee passed the rest of the day in all pleasant delightes: meane time fortune by little and little began to play her part, and to spread the nets wherewith she meant to inclose that troupe, thereby to worke the enuie and great tribulations that afterward fell vpon them: the beginning whereof was such as you shall here. About a mile without the citie, the Emperor had built a sumptuous pallace, called Vaelbeniatnof, as like to that of Apollidon in ỹ firme Isle as well could be deuised: which place was compassed with a parke furnished with all things requisite for mans delight, whither hée meant to lead the ladies, with Esplandian and his companie, as also king Armato, to feast them in the same, and for that purpose within thrée daies after their arriuall, they departed from the citie of Constantinople, and went to Vaelbeniatnof, going into the parke, wherein they found the hunters, and at their first entrance a great Hart was singled out, which in the end after long chace was killed almost before the ladies: & going further, they espied a bore so fiercely hunted by dogs, ỹ they made him turn, & with his tuskes strooke ỹ dogs, ỹ none durst set vpon him: but at the last one of the hunters strake him in the throat, & so he died: so long this sport endured, ỹ supper time drew on, wherfore the lords & ladies entring into the palace found the tables couered, & sitting downe, were serued in most sumptuous maner: & hauing supped, they began to daunce, which continued till midnight, minding ỹ next day to begin their sport againe: but fortune minding to beare a part, did so trouble the feast ỹ she gaue them well to vnderstand, how she can worke in all things at her pleasure: for the next day about euening the

knights and ladies being in the Parke, some talking with those to whom they bare affection, and cõtenting their mind with such deuises as loue to passe the time in pleasure, put into their heads, others running about and taking pleasure to gather floures, and doe as most delighted them. Melie (from whõ till then they could not heare one word) went vnto Vrganda, & before them all spake vnto her and said: Madame, I maruell (if it be so that your learning and skill be such as is reported) why you make no sport vnto this company. Melie (said Vrganda) where you are present I will not vndertake to doe it before you, but you should rather doe it, being well assured, that the Emperour would bee thankfull for the same. If it pleased him (said she) I am content, vpon condition, that after me you do the like, or better if you can. Truly (said the Emperour) it is but reason: and I pray you both to doe it. My lord (said Melie) then command Vrganda to lend mée a booke that I was wont to haue, whereon the picture of Medea, (& her name written ouer it) dooth stand, then shalt you beholde some of mine art, and if Vrganda neuer knew it before, she may learne it now of me. In good faith (said Vrganda) that will I not deny you: with that she called one of her Gentlewomen, willing her to fetch the booke: meane time Melie tooke king Armato by the hande, and making as though she would speake a word with him, they walked a while together, then they sat them downe hard by the place where the empresse and the ladies were talking with ech other, and staying til the thing Melie had requested, were brought thether, which not long after Vrgandas Gentlewoman brought vnto her, she hauing it in her hand opened the booke, and then began to read, making certaine signes with her eies lifted vp to heauen and calling Vrganda, praied her to come thether, saying she shold sée ỳ shee neuer had séene before. Vrganda not doubting any treason by Melie prepared, went and sat downe by her, and next her king Armato, so that she sat betweene Melie and him, where Melie began to turne the booke, shewing them certaine prophesies, and other strange deuises, which continued not long but the aire began to be couered with a round blacke cloud, and therewith it seemed so darke, that they could not see eath other, at the last the

cloud

cloud opened, and they beheld two horrible dragons comming downe out of the cloud, hauing with a waggon, and staied right before Vrganda, who by Armato and Melie was so straitly embraced, that whether shee would or not they thrust her in, and they after her. Wherwith the dragons seeing their waggon charged, fleive vp into the aire, and carried them away, Vrganda crying for helpe, but all in vaine: for in lesse than the twinckling of an eye she was out of sight: wherwith there was such noise among the company, that Esplandian, Talanque, Ambor, Manely, and the rest of the knights that came thither with her, ware neuer to rest aboue one night in a place before they found her out: so that the same day taking their leaues, both of the Emperor and others that by them were left in sorrow, they entred againe into the great serpent, but before Esplandian went, he spake vnto the princes Leonorine, beseeching her not to take in euill part his enterprise taken in hand for the loue of her, to whome he found himselfe so much beholding, promising her that presently (hauing found Vrganda) hée would returne againe. My good friend (said shée) me thinkes you should doe this at better leysour, and not in so great hast as now you doe: yet am I well content to doe as pleaseth you: but forget not I pray you (said shée) to returne againe as you haue promised. Which Esplandian vowed vpon his faith: meane time Norandel and quéene Mincrelle (as much greéued as might be) knewe not what countenance to holde, hauing their hearts so seased with care, that the Quéene was constrained to withdraw her selfe into her chamber, and lay vpon her bedde, shutting the doore: whereby Norandel had no meanes to take his leaue, but imbarked himselfe, charged with an infinite number of greéfes and sorrowes: with that the great serpent began of it selfe to set forward, and within two dates after arriued at the castle La montaigne defendu.

CHAP. XLV.

How the two Dragons set Vrganda, Melie, and king Armato in the middle of the citie of Tesifant, and of the great armie that Armato prepared to enter into Greece.

The Dragons bearing Vrganda, Melie, and king Armato in the aire, flewe so swiftly, that before day they were right ouer the citie of Tesifante, where they set downe their charge: that done, they flewe away, and neuer were seene againe: king Armato was exceeding glad when he perceiued himselfe to be in place whereas he might commaund, and went vnto his pallace, where finding the guard, he made himselfe knowen vnto them, that presently went to aduertise the prince Alphoran, who much abashed at those newes, start out of his bed, and casting a furred gowne vpon his shoulders, ranne to imbrace his father, who seemed to be so changed, not onely because his beard was longer than he vsed, but by reason of the great greefe and melancholly he had so long endured, that the prince began to weepe, and say vnto him: My Lord, you are more than heartily welcome, for Gods cause I beseech you tell vs how vnfortune hath beene so much your friend to deliuer you out of the misery wherein you haue continued so long, to my no little griefe. Sonne (said he) Melie can tell you better than my selfe, for she is the only meanes of my good hap, and hath brought with her Vrganda discogneus, (of whome heretofore you haue heard.) And as he left speaking, Melie and Vrganda entred into the hall, whereat the rumor of the kings returne was so great within the Citie, that all the people ranne vnto the palace for to see him, being as glad of his arriuall, as Vrganda sorry to see her selfe in such a place, and that which greeued her more, was that Melie in presence of them all, spake vnto her and said: Vrganda, two things moue me to saue thy life: the one, for that in my captiuitie

tiuitie thou hast not once suffered a euill word to be vsed to me, neither permitted that any man should doe mee harme: the other because I certainly know that king Armato hath by thy means receiued all the good intertainement he had, during his hard imprisonment. Neuerthelesse, the mischiefe thou hast procured vnto this country (being the only cause the Christians entered into the same) is sufficient to make thée indure perpetuall imprisonment: wherein by mine art I will so straightly inclose thee, that thy Art shal nought auaile thée euer to get forth. But although that sentence might well abash Vrganda, yet shee shewed such constancy, ỳ she neuer changed colour, determining wt her selfe to indure whatsoeuer should fal out, wherfore she said vnto Melie: Madame, you may do with me as pleaseth you, but in reason you ought not to vse me otherwise then you your selfe were vsed whē I had the like authority ouer you, as you haue now of me, otherwise you shal do wrong both to your selfe & me: To me, ỳ am olde & ancient, putting me in prison, wherewith you threaten me, (not hauing offended you,) & to your selfe, in preferring cruelty before the curtesie ỳ hath ben found in you wherevnto Melie answered hir not a word, but commanded her to be shut into a great tower stāding in the midst of ỳ citty, ouer ỳ which she wrought such coniurations, ỳ Vrganda knew without Gods help, it would be impossible for her euer to come forth: yet she liued in hope, considering ỳ mutability of fortune, & ỳ king Armato himselfe had ben actually deliuered, who continued certaine daies in his great Citty of Tessant, without making any shew to bee reuenged. But in the end he sent Embassadours to all the Princes in the East ỳ were his allies and confederates, desiring them to enter into armes, not onely to driue the Christians out of Galatia, Alfarin, and other places that they had vsurped in his country, but to destroy Constantinople with all the Christian monarch, and therefore wrote a letter vnto them, the contents whereof doe follow.

Armato, by the prouidence of our immortall gods, called to the gouernment of the puissant country of Turky, the frontier & Bulwark of al ỳ Pagan land, to all caitifes, kings, Lords, admirals & gouernors of ỳ countries scituated in ỳ east parts, sendeth greeting.

greeting, being returned out of prison, from whence we are now deliuered, I thought good to giue you to vnderstand, that not long since there is a knight come out of the South into the marches, descended (as men say) of the race of Brutus the Troiane, to whome for our iniustice (as it is verie likely) our gods haue giuen power to conquer the castle La montaigne defendu, slaying Marroco and Frerion, two of the best Knightes in all the East parts: and which is worse (the number of the Christians increasing more and more) they haue sought all meanes to destroy our holy lawe: which to prevent, we entred into armes, and hauing raised a mightie armie, thought to driue them out of our quarters: but hauing long time continued siege before the castle La montaigne defendu, and brought it to such extremitie, that they had no victuals to sustaine themselues, he of whome we were most in doubt, the first beginner of those warres, found meanes by the aid of a villaine named Frandalo (that sometime belonged vnto vs) to enter therein, and by subtiltie to take vs prisoners, in such sort, that our army being ouerthrowne, we remained prisoners in their handes, where they haue holden vs in straight keeping almost for the space of a whole yeere together: meane time our fortune continuing worse and worse, they haue by treason seazed vpon the townes of Alfarin and Galatia, two of the best portes in all our Realme: which they had neuer taken in hand without the aide of the traiterous and disloyall Emperour of Constantinople: who for to aid and succour them, hath falsly broken the truce concluded betweene vs, and raised so many men, that without your aides, we are in danger to fall into their hãds, a thing that would concerne you much, seeing we (as you know) are the frontire and rampart to you all. Wherefore in the name of all our gods, wee pray and desire you, that not onely for the safegard of our lawe, but for the profit and vtilitie of all the East countries, you will assemble your forces in so great number, that thereby we may driue these Christians out of our countrey, and conquer the Empire of Constantinople, euen to Fraunce, and the countries of great Britaine; which will be both easie and profitable vnto vs. These letters written and the messengers

dispatched,

dispatched, they made such hast, ý before ý end of July following, there were so many men assembled at the port of Tenedos, that the Christians had newes thereof, as hereafter you shall heare. One day among the rest as Belleris, Talanque, and Manely being issued out of the castle La montaigne defendu, hoping to take some Turke in the way to Tessant that might tel them newes, not only of king Armaco, but of Melie & Vrganda, as day began to appeare came vnto the aduenturous fountain, where they beheld ý pillers of brasse, ý pauilion, & ý field bed ý Heliaxe had left there, with a great serpent lying therein, which presently began to run away, and the knights after, thinking to kill her, but their horses durst not go nére her, yet she began to complain and weep as bitterly as a womã trauelling wt child. Wherewith there appeared four men wel mounted & armed at al points, ý cried out and saied: Sir knights, depart from hence & trouble not our gentlewoman in this sort, or it shall cost you your liues. And scarse had they ended their speech, but they ran each at other, ý straunge knights breaking their speares in such maner vpon the Christians, ý Manely and his companions thought they had run against thẽ with long strawes. Yet could not one of thẽ couch his launce, but ran their course without once touching thẽ. Mean time, the serpent entred into a hole, and could no more be séene, & as they turned their horses to run another course, the four knights would not abide, but flying away, cried vnto them and said: Sir knights, our Gentlewoman is safe, for ý rest contẽt your selues if you think good. Get you hence to al the deuils (said Talanque) and ill fortune might he haue ý followeth after you. With ý they thrée returned vnto the fountain, not without great laughing at their aduenture. And as they were before the pauilion, they perceiued a knight that watred his horse, to whó Belleris riding, asked him his name: What haue you to do therwith? (said he.) So much (said Belleris) that either you shal tell me presently wt good will, or els shal fight wt me. You shal faile in the one, but not in the other: for although you bée thrée, yet am I well content to proue what the knights of great Brittaine can doe. Whẽ Talanque heard him speake so boldly, he could not refrain to say: By God sir knight, that shall you proue

without delay, & setting spurs to his horse, ran fiercely against the other that refused him not, but strake him so sure, ỹ he ouerthrew him to ỹ ground. Which Manely wondring at, set forward to reuẽge his friend: but if ỹ first sped ill, he sped no better, no more did Belleris: all three rising vp againe, ashamed at their fals, which minding to amend by dent of swords, the other knight fled along the wood, crying so lowd, that they might heare him saie: Sir knights, another time sit better on your horses, and trouble not your selues to follow me, if you meane not to lose your way. In Gods name (said Talanque) what may this mean, shall wee haue no better fortune all this day, I thinke wee are inchaunted. Let vs mount vpon our horses and follow after him, that wee may knowe whether God or all the diuels in hell haue determined to crosse vs in this iourny. Wherewith they mounted, determining to follow after ỹ other, but they heard a lamentable voice, wherfore they stated to see what it might bee. With that they espied a woman with her head vndrest, crying out for helpe: And after her ran a lion ready to deuour her: whereat they being moued with compassion, thought to step betwæn thẽ, but the lion began so horribly to rore, ỹ the horses stricken with fear, bare their masters aboue two long bows shot from thence: meane time, ỹ woman and the lion vanished away, whereat Talanque and Manely more abashed then before, asked Belleris if euer hee heard of such aduẽtures. In good faith (said he) those ỹ are desirous to see strãge things, must repaire vnto this fountaine: For there are manie (& such as yet you haue not seene) ỹ wonder it is to hear, & wil you know how it commeth to passe: Melie had deuised thẽ long time since, wherfore it is not to be maruelled. No more I doe not (said Manely:) neuertheles, were it not for ỹ enterprise we now haue takẽ in hand, by the faith of a knight (said he) I would not depart from hence before I had seene them all. That shall bee at another time (said Belleris:) let vs now keepe on our way, ỹ wee be not discouered. With ỹ they held on the left hand, alwaies riding toward the citty of Tessant: & hauing ridden about fiue miles space, they met ten men on horseback all vnarmed, leading two Gentlewomen, one of them being somewhat faire and well apparelled

led. But the ten men were in so great fear, y leauing the Gentlewomen, they ran and saued themselues not being pursued, for the three knights staied wᵗ the gentlewomen, of whom they hoped to hear such newes as they desired. And in effect, after they had somwhat assured them, they asked them what newes of king Armato, and whether he were stil prisoner. My lords (said the eldest Gentlewoman) it is not long since hee escaped out of the Christians hands, and is returned vnto Tessant with Melie, that hath shut Vrganda in a tower, from whence she shal neuer depart without her leaue. That is good newes for vs then (said Belleris:) and what hath king Armato done since his returne? Doth he not (saied he) meane to bee reuenged on them that kept him prisoner so long? I truly (said she) for all the kings, Souldans, Califfes, and admirals of the Pagan law, haue promised him to arriue at Constantinople, and to destroy all Christendome. And as it is saied, the most part of them are already arriued in the isle of Tenedos. In good faith (said Belleris to his companions,) considering the speeches of these Gentlewomen, I am of this opinion, that we meddle no longer with them, but returne vnto our hold. Whereunto they both agreed, and letting the Gentlewomen depart, made so great hast, that about two houres after sunnesetting they arriued at the castle La montaigne defendu, where they shewed their companions what aduentures they found in the aduenturous fountaine. And at our departure from thence (said they) we found tenne men on horseback leading two Gentlewomen, by whom wee haue for certaine vnderstood, that Vrganda is straightly shut vp in one of the towers of Tessant, and so inchaunted therein by Melies conjurations, that she is like neuer to come forth, as also that the Pagan kings assemble themselues together in the isle of Tenedos, to ouerrun the Emperour of Constantinople, and all the Christians country.

CHAP. XLVI.

How the Pirate Crescelin, nephew to the admiral Tartary, brought certaine newes to Esplandian of the great army that the lordes of the east parts prepared to come vnto Constantinople.

THe repoꝛt that Belleris, Talanque, and Manely, vsed to their companions as touching the great preparation the Pagans made to inuade the Empyꝛe of Constantinople and all Chꝛistendome, caused them to thinke thereon, in such soꝛt, ỹ they toke counsell to determine among themselues, whether it were better foꝛ thẽ to augment the garrisons of the castle La montaigne defendu, Alfarin, and Galatia, oꝛ goe to Constantinople to aide the Emperour. And as they were in debating of the matter, Crescelin nephewe to the Admirall of Grece, (that not long beforꝛe had stollen tenne Gallies from the Emperour to roue vpon the sea) came to aduertise the knights, that as he sailed into Phꝛigia, he had discouered in the Ile of Lenedos, so many Gallies, Foistes, and other vessels, of the enemies, that the sea seemed couered therewith, who without doubt assembled to ouerrun the Emperour & destroy all Chꝛistendome: wherefoꝛe (said he) I thought to let you vnderstand the same, not onely because you might pꝛouide foꝛ them, but also to desire your fauours to entreate the Emperour in my behalfe: assuring you, that if hee pardon the offence I haue committed against his maiesty, I will hẽceforth be vnto him so good seruaũt, that he shall like it well. My lord Crescelin (saied Esplandian) I haue alwaies heard ỹ emperoꝛ repoꝛted to be one of the best pꝛinces liuing in ỹ woꝛld, & most easie to bee appeased, whẽ wꝫ reason men reconcile themselues vnto him: wherefoꝛe I am assured, ỹ if he know you mean faithfully to serue him as you pꝛotest, ỹ he wil not only foꝛget your fault, but do you much moꝛe good thẽ to others of his mẽ:

and

and the better to incite him thereunto, I am of this opinion, that with your ships you presently returne to the goulfe Propontide, & there (if it be possible) shall find the means to take some Turkish gally, thereby to know the truth of their intent: and if you will, Belleris shall go with you, and according to your reports, we will determine what were best for vs to do, whereunto the pirat willingly condiscended: so that the same day he put to sea, and with Belleris they coasted the countrey of Thrace vnto Solombre, where staying secretly at the entrie of the goulfe, they continued certaine dates to bring their enterprise to passe: meane time Esplandian not being idle, & thinking vpon the newes that Crescelin brought, was of aduise that Frandalo & all the other knights of great Brittain should returne to Constantinople to aid y Emperor (which he desired them to do:) & I (said he) with the king of Denmarke, Gandalin, and Enil, with the garrison of this place, will stay the returne of those that are gone to Tenedos, and hauing spoken with them, either we will remaine here still, or presently follow you. Esteeme I pray you, if this opinion of Esplandian were liked of by Norandel, for that from the day he left queen Minoresse, he had not shewen a pleasant countenance, but was so melancholly that euery man wondred thereat: and although the rest were not infected with the like disease, yet was there none that started backe, but all agreed to Esplandians mind: whereupon without long delay, they imbarked themselues with so good a wind, that the seuenth day after they arriued at Constantinople, whereof the Emperour being aduertised was exceeding glad, going to meet them at the hauen: and hauing embraced them one by one, not seeing Esplandian in their company, bee asked where they left him: with that the knights told him what intelligence they had received by Crescelins means from out of Asia, the great danger prepared against him by the kings of the East, how hee and Belleris were returned to see the countenance of the enemie, and to know more certaine newes: and lastly, what the occasion was why Esplandian stayed behind in the castle La montaigne defendu, with the king of Denmarke, Gandalin and Enil. The Emperour hearing these newes, was much abashed, yet like a stout

and

and valiant prince dissembled what he thought, and not long after (minding to prevent all inconveniences) in all hast caused Constantinople and his other townes, places, and hauens of the sea, to be prouided of victuals and munition as hee thought meetest for them: meane time sending forth his captaines throughout all his Empire, to assemble men in all places, that might be readie when occasion serued. Thus did the Emperour take care to prouide for his affaires: and Norandel meane time to gouerne Minoresse, who minding to trie him like gold within the fornace, one day among the rest shewed him a harder countenance than vsually she did, fayning she had receiued newes that he loued a ladie in great Brittain: wherein Norandel by all meanes sought to excuse himselfe: but the more he seemed constant, so much more did the Quéene make him beléeue shée thought the worse of him: wherewith he was in such perplexitie, that hee could not chose but say: In faith madame, as farre as I perceiue, you meane to end my daies, for the wrong you do me is so great, that it can not well be iudged but by such as know your crueltie: and yet the affection I beare you is so great, that neither I nor any other can well expresse the same, if presently they doe not shew the beautie and perfection wherewith nature hath adorned you. Therefore estranging me from your wonted fauour, I perceiue my life begin to shorten, wherewith I am not grieued, were it not, that dying, I should lose the meanes to doe you seruice, but not the benefite of loyaltie: for whether I liue or die, the same shall still accompanie my soule vnto the place of rest. Which wordes when Norandel had vttered, the tears trickled downe his cheekes. Whereat Quéene Minoresse tooke such pitie, that forgetting her dissimulation, with a smiling countenance shée answered him and said: My good friend, I now beléeue you well, and therefore I pray you pardon my indiscretion: for so it is, that this that I haue done, hath béene onely to auoid the meanes that should procure you to attempt the same. Now I well perceiue your constancie (according to my counsell at your last departure hence) remember I beséech you how necessarie dissimulation is to such as are infected with the like disease: I meane, it should not bee

betweene vs two, but before the world that they perceiue it not. Madame (said Norandel) I will not if I may offend your Grace, knowing mine owne constancie so well, that impossible it were for me to withdrawe my loue from you, as also not to serue and honour you, yea though you should reward mee with the greatest cruelties that all such as loue & are not loued, might endure. Whyle they thus deuised togither, the Princesse Leonorine (that serued them as a watch) entertained Frandalo and the rest, and making as if she knewe not the cause of Esplandians returne to Constantinople, shee asked it of them, fayning to be displeased at the same, but they excused him: in like sort they did vnto the emperour, as you heard before.

CHAP. XLVII.

How Crescelin and Belleris returned to the castle La montaigne defendu, with a ship that they had taken from the Turks, by whome they vnderstood the enemies pretence.

NOt long after that Crescelin and Belleris departed from the castle La montaigne defendu, sayling as secretly as they could along the coast of Phrigia, fortune fauoured them so well, that a Brigandine sayling to Tenedos, charged with Turkes, fell into their hands, whereof they left but foure aliue: by whom they certainely vnderstood, that the armie of the Princes of the East was to depart from thence within a moneth or fiue weekes after at the furthest, and sayle to Constantinople, which they hoped easily to surprise, hauing by their espials had intelligence that the Emperour made no preparation to withstand them. Which hauing heard, they returned without longer stay to giue aduise vnto Esplandian, who fearing that the Emperour would not be able to withstand their might, determined to vse the ayde of all his feiendes, minding to send

Gandalin

Gandalin and Enil vnto them, with letters to the same effect: especially to his vncle the Emperour of Rome, to whome hee wrote as followeth.

My lord, the danger I see prepared against all Christendome, constraineth me to send this messenger vnto you, by whome at large your Grace may vnderstand how great and puissant an armie all the Kings and Potentates of the East (enemies of our faith) haue lately raised, by the persuasion of Armato king of Turkie, therwith to ouer-runne not only the Empire of Grece, but all the land of Christendome, and wholly to extinguish our faith and holy lawe. And for that all those of whome you hold the place, haue alwaies bene the true defenders of the Christian faith, as also that the case toucheth you so nere, I am of this aduise (my lord) that you ought to spare neither mony nor men, but to assemble your forces in all hast, and prepare your vessels to aid and succour the good prince, who is the frontier (as you knowe) both vnto you and all the potentates that hold the law of Christ. I write the like vnto the king my father, and to the most part of all the Christian Lordes, to whome I send Gandalin. And for that Enil hath in charge to certifie your grace by word of mouth, what it shall please you to demand, I will not trouble you with many lines, beseeching you to giue credit vnto him, as to my selfe. The like he wrote to the king of Sardaigne: which two messages Enil had in charge: to whome he gaue ample instructions and remembrances of all the aduertisements and secret intelligences he had receiued from the Turkish coast: not onely of the number of men both on horse and foot, but also of the multitude of their vessels and other warlike instruments: commaunding Gandalin to goe with him till he came vnto Cicilia, where he should prouide shipping to saile into great Brittaine to Amadis his father, and from thence to France vnto king Perion, then to Sobradise to Galaor, likewise to king Bruneau, to Quedragant, Dragonis, and Gosquilant: to whome he sent like seuerall letters: Gandalin carrying them likewise the same instructions that Enil had vnto the Emperour, commaunding them expressly to assure them all, that he would not depart from the castle La montaigne

defendu.

defende, before their arriuall there, but meant to keepe it while breath was in his body. Gandalin and Enil had so good and prosperous a weather, that in lesse than fifteene dales after their departure, they passed the countrey of Scotline, and landed at Saragource, where Gandalin hired a Brigandine to execute his charge. And to the end you may vnderstand what effect their messages did worke, I will leaue Gandalin coasting the Mediterranean Sea, and entring into the Ocean, and speake of Enil that arriued at Ostre, where as then he found the Emperour accompanied with king Floreſtan, deuising onely of hawkes and hounds: but when they espied Enil, presuming he brought some ill newes, they asked him where hee left Esplandian: Enil knowing how to behaue himselfe, kissed the letters, and gaue one to the Emperour, the other to the king of Sardaigne: which hauing read, and perceiuing them to be of credit, tooke him apart where hee discouered vnto them all you heard before. With that the Emperour leauing Enil with king Floreſtan, went vnto the gentlemen and knights that then were present, and said vnto them: My friends, wee must all to the warres: my nephew Esplandian hath aduertised me (by this gentleman expressely sent vnto me) that the king of Turkie and all his allies are in armes, and haue raised a mighty armie to assaile my brother ỹ Emperor of Constantinople: but I vow to God (if he giue me life & helpe) that before the moneth of September next ensuing, I will be there with such a force, that I will make him twice repent how hee so rashly dooth assaile, and learne him to defend himselfe. Wherefore let euery man bee ready, for I will goe my selfe in person: and calling king Floreſtan he asked him if hee would goe with him: My lord (said he) to morrow I will send to all my ports & hauens, that all the ships of war that can be found may be in a readines: meane time I will in all parts assemble men to doe as my nephew Esplandian hath required. My Lord (said Enil) my lord Esplandian hath written by Gandalin to king Amadis and other of his frends, whome he hath desired to ioyne with you, so ỹ I hope about one time all your armies wil be ready, & that without long staying for yach other, you will assemble all togither. Truly (said

king Floreſtan it was well deuiſed. With that diuers captaines were diſpatched into ſundry places to giue order for their men, and to ballace, rigge, and prepare veſſels for their voiage into the Eaſt. Gandalin on the other ſide coaſting the Iſles of Maiorque and Minorque, leauing Guinea and Barbarie, paſſed the ſtraits of Gibraltar, and had ſo good a wind, that in ſelue daies without ſtaying in Spaine, hée arriued in great Brittain with king Amadis, who as then continued in London, and preſented him with the letter that Eſplandian ſent, ſhewing him likewiſe his charge by word of mouth, the good and euill aduentures that he had had ſince he departed from Myreſleur, and among the reſt the ouerthrowe of the Turkiſh armie on the ſea, the taking of king Armato, the occaſion why the ſiege roſe vp before the caſtle La montaigne defendu, the arriuall of Gaſtilles, the taking of Alfarin, and of the captaine of Teſifant, the ſurpriſing of Galatia, the loſſe of Vrganda: and laſtly all what you haue read at large in the chapters going before. And to the end my lord (ſaid he) that order may be had to prevent the inconuenience he foreſeeth to be prepared againſt all Chriſtendome (if it be not ſuccoured) he hath expreſſly willed me to ſhew you, that he hath had certaine intelligence, that all the kings of the Eaſt parts haue ſworne and promiſed, togither to ouerrunne all Chriſtendome: which is verie likely, conſidering the great preparations and aſſembly of men they haue alreadie made in the Iſle of Tenedos: whereby is ſuch, that as our ſpies report, they are at leaſt fiue hundred ſayle of ſhippes, and about foure or fiue hundred thouſand men. God will helpe vs if it pleaſeth him, ſaid king Amadis, for my part, I will doe what poſſible I may, and will likewiſe aduertiſe king Perion my father and my brother Galaor. My lord (ſaid Gandalin) I haue alſo charge to trauaile vnto them, and likewiſe vnto Gaſquillan, Don Bruneau, Quedragant, and others, to whome Eſplandian hath written in like ſort as he hath done to you, and hath expreſſly giuen me in charge to ſée king Luiſart, and doe his humble commendations vnto him. It is great reaſon (ſaid the king:) neuertheleſſe I am of this opinion, that before my mother ye queene you doe not once declare the occaſion of your comming, but giue

her

her to vnderſtand that all is well, but not vnto the king, if you find him alone: for he is a man (as euery one well knoweth) to take all things with patience as they ſhall fall out: and becauſe my ſonnes affaires require no delay, I pray you Gandalin after you haue refreſhed your ſelfe a day or two, goe on your iourney as you haue in charge. So Gandalin that day remained there, during which time Quéene Oriane talked long with him: the next day he departed to ſée King Luiſart and Quéene Briſenne at Wireſleur, who knowing he came of meſſage from Eſplandian, were exceéding glad: the Quéene although ſhée were wiſe and verie aged, yet could not change her womans nature, but before the king ſpake any word aſked him for her ſonne: but Gandalin (accuſtomed readily to deuiſe excuſes, as hée had béen inſtructed by king Amadis) tolde her that he had left him in the firme Iſle not well at eaſe by reaſon of his long trauell, but not ſo ill (ſaid he) as that he could not haue taken paine to come hither & ſée you, but he feared leaſt his ſickneſs would encreaſe: wherefore he thought it better for him to kéep his chamber a while, than to entertaine a long and enuious ague for a long ſpace: which the quéene eaſily beléeued: and for the hope ſhe had ſhortly to ſée him, ſhe made no account thereof: neuertheles, the ſame euening Gandalin tolde king Luiſart all that you heard before, wiſely excuſing himſelfe of the ſpéech he vſed before him vnto the Quéene, as king Amadis had giuen him charge: wherein king Luiſart commended him, & for the reſt he promiſed to thinke theron while he trauailed vnto thoſe with whome he had to doe. In this ſort Gandalin being diſpatched, returned to king Amadis, who in the mean time (perſuaded by quéen Oriane) wrought a marriage for him, as you ſhall heare. You haue read in the beginning of our hiſtory of the ſeruices the gentlewoman of Denmarke did for them, and the things wherein ſhe & Gandalin had béen exerciſed: wherefore it was reaſon, that hauing béen partakers of their youthful toies, ſhe ſhould alſo taſt ſome of their proſperous fortunes. Wherefore quéene Oriane moued king Amadis to make a marriage betwéen them two, but he thought the match vnfit, becauſe the gentlewoman was already aged, & Gandalin being yong and luſty: neuertheles,

as all women that are wise and of a quicke conceit, can bring their enterprises to effect, the Quéene found meanes to get the kings consent: whereby Gandalin was no sooner come fro Myrefleur but he took him aside, & said vnto him: Gandalin, the quéene is desirous to haue you stay with vs, not only for the loue she knoweth I beare vnto you, but also for the good thée wisheth you. And for this cause she would haue you marry with the gentle woman of Denmarke, whome she loueth, & will doe much both for her & you, if you consent thereto: you know her long time since both to be wise, good, & vertuous, and for my part I pray you and counsell you thereunto. Gandalin would gladly haue excused himselfe, and to say the truth, he was too yong for so old a match: neuertheleſſe hauing from his infancie learned to confirme his will to ỹ of Amadis, he was content to doe as pleased him: in such sort, ỹ in lesse than thrée daies after the marriage was celebrated and ended. Meane time king Amadis toke the letters and instructions that Gandalin should carry to Gasquillan and king Brunetu, and sent them by a gentleman of his named Handro, cousin germain to the Countesse of Flaunders, desiring them as much as possible they might to aide his sonne in his so good a cause: but the next weeke following Gandalin more affected to the seruice of Esplandian than to court his wife, departed from thence to trauaile into Fraunce vnto king Perion, and from him to Sobradise to Galaor. Meane time king Amadis sent for all the pilots, maisters, and mariners of his countrey that he could find, commending king Arbain of Morgales to take care for all things requisite for the enterprise & charges of such a viage, both for men and vessels. In this manner did the affaires touching these wars proceed through the greatest part of Europe, while all the kings in the East by little & little assembled themselues together, as you shall heare.

CHAP.

CHAP. XLVIII.

How the great citty of Constantinople was besieged by the princes of the East, and of the salies that were made by those of the citty to keepe them from the same.

THe army of the Pagan kings daily assembling in the Ile of Tenedos, ỹ emperor mean time fortified his citty of Constantinople both with men & victuals in ỹ best manner he could, comanding those ỹ had charge of his army by sea to cause all his vessels to come into the Hauen of the town, which he caused to be barred with a chaine, that on that side he might be out of danger. Thẽ hee sent diuers brigandines vnto Natolia, to discouer the Pagans army, and bring him certaine newes: Meane time, the countrey people reaped all their corn, and brought it to the citty. Within eight daies after the Brigandines ỹ were sent forth, discouered in the straights of Hellespont the great fleet of the Turkes ỹ lay at Abidos, where they stayed a certaine time to take in victuals and other munitions necessary for their ships. Whereof ỹ emperour being aduertised, caused his men to muster, giuing Frandalo charge of the Dragon gate, so called, because ỹ at the foundation of the citty, when it was named Bisance, there was found a marueilous Dragon vnder the foundation of ỹ gate, which dragon was bound, chained, and norished, so long time, ỹ it was thought most straight. Norandel had charge of the gate called Liquine, & Gastiles his nephew ỹ that called ỹ Well, so named of a great & profound well that stode hard by it. And causing the other gates to bee rampired vp, prouided for all things as a wise & valiant captaine should do in such a case. With that a Grecian that had bentake by the Turks, came into ỹ citty, and assured the for certaine ỹ the Soudan of Liquie was himselfe in person with king Armato, and almost all the kings of the east, hauing two hundred Gallies, as well great as small, fifty great ships, thirty galliots, and one & twenty cafords, that are ships not much vnlike to gallies: besides thirtie foistes and diuers bri-

gandines, barkes, galions and sciffes, wherein they had laid their victuals & other munitions: and for their number of footmen, they might be about some three hundred and fiftythousand men, saying likewise, that Alphorax had the cheefe charge at sea, and Armato on land, and that their determination was never to depart from Constantinople, till they had destroied it, and from thence would go to Rome, & further if they could. The first day after, this great army (passing the gulfe of Propontide) came into the straights of Constantinople, entering in the great sea, where they remained during the siege, robbing all the countrey about, where first they staied a weeke before they landed any of their men: meane time, certain gallies and small ships set forward to make an alarum in the hauen, from whence (to their great losse) they were repulsed, for ẏ fire of the principallest of them were sunk in the sea. Nevertheles, the next day following they began to land, & in great numbers thought to win the gate; there were many braue blowes both with sword and speare giuen on both parts, and many a valiant man ended their daies, & became meat to fishes. There ẏ knights of great Brittain shewed thẽselues not to bee vnacquainted with such dangers, & who so had beheld Norandel, Frandalo, Manely, & Talanque repulse the enemy, ẏ thought to aduance themselues, might easily iudge with what desire they fought. But what shuld I stand longer to describe this conflict? To conclude, ẏ gate was defended, & the enemies repulsed from the same, yet their number was so great, ẏ notwithstanding the valour of the Emperours men, they landed & lay within two bowes shot of the city, they of the city being forced to retire. The Pagans being on land, deuided themselues into four parts, in such sort, ẏ the city was so well besieged, that not a man could enter or come forth without their leaue. Wherefore king Armato presently caused great number of ladders to bee prepared, the most part of them double, hoping before the woorke were ended, to assault, take, spoile, and destroye the City. But they within slept neither night nor day, but made artificiall fires, with all other things requisite for such a charge. The Pagans stayed not long to execute their purpose, so that upon a munday in the morning, they came in great fury to set fire

on the gates, and to scale the Town, although for ẏ time they lost their labors, & many of thẽ their liues, where in the end they were cõstrained to retire to their no litle shame & great confusion. And in their retraict, Norandel with four or fiue hundred men, issued at a postern gate, & set vpon them behind, which put thẽ in such fear, ẏ they drawe them to their tents. Yet not being content with this first repulse, they determined on friday after either to die, or enter into the town. And the day appointed, ran vnto ẏ wals, where the number of ẏ assaylants was so great, & the assault giuen in so many places both by sea & land, ẏ if God had not prouided for them, it is most certain ẏ town had ben takẽ: especially on Frandalos side, for the most part of his men fled away from their guard: whereby it happened, ẏ more then a hundred Turks mounted on the wals, but they staied not long, for ẏ the emperor (who during the assault staied in the midst of the city with the rest of all his power to aid such places as had most need) aduertised therof, marched to Frandalos quarter, and with such force repulsed the enemy, that hee made thẽ glad to get them thence, in such sort, ẏ they receaued no lesse losse at the second assault then at the first. It is true, ẏ ten of ẏ knights of great Brittain were slaine at ẏ conflict, which much greeued their companions, specially for ẏ losse of Ledarin, of Feiarque, of Trys, and Imosil of Burgundy. This second assault hauing had such issue as you heard before, Armato went to counsell with all ẏ other kings and princes to know what they shold do, where it was concluded to keep their tents, and so inclose ẏ town: for to get it by assault, they knew ful wel they shuld but lose their labors wherfore they ment no more to try ẏ same: but many times made skirmishes with ẏ citty to their no litle losse. Thus they passed a-boue a month without doing any thing worthy ẏ rehearsing, till one day among ẏ rest, a gentle womã belonging to the souldan of Liquie came on message to the gate ẏ Norandel had in charge, of whõ she asked if ẏ knight of the great serpent were among them. Wherfore? said Norandel. I bring him (said she) a letter from the chef and most courteous knight in all Asia. Norandel desirous to vnderstãd the contents of the letter, said hee was the man. Then loke vpon it (saied shee) at your leisure: And if you thinke it

good.

good returne an answere: with that shee turned her horse, and rid the same way that shee came. Which done, Norandel openes the letter, the contents whereof are these.

Rodrigue great Soudan of Liqule, friend to the gods, and enemy to their enemies, defendar of the Pagan law: to thee that callest thy self knight of ỹ great serpent, greeting. Know thou that ỹ cause of our long voyage by Sea to enter into these countries, hath beene in hope to bee reuenged of the outrages that my vncle Armato king of Turky hath receiued at the hands of thee and thy cõpanions, not hauing once offended thee: and although we are most sure of ỹ destruction of the wicked emperor ỹ fauoureth thee in thy so wicked and damnable enterprises, and that before long time be past, both hee and his shall end their liues by our hands, yet should I be much greeued, that this misfortune should happen vnto thee, before I haue proued my body against thine, because of the renowme ỹ is spread of thee throughout the world. Wherefore chuse whether thou wilt accept of the combate betweene vs two alone, of twenty to twenty, a hundred to a hundred, or of greater number as thou thinkest good. Sweating vnto thee, by all our gods, that those thou shalt bring with thee for that cause, shall receiue no more displeasure then my self, vnlesse it be by such as are ordained to fight with them, according to the agreement we shall make. Wherefore make mee an answere worthy such a Knight, that thereby thy honour be not stained.

Norandel hauing read this letter, shewed it to his friends, who were all of aduise to graunt the Soudan his request. But Norandel would determine nothing before hee made the Emperour acquainted, vnder whose conduct during the siege, he had submitted himselfe: whereupon hee went to speake with him, and hauing shewed him the contents of the letter that hee had receiued in Esplandians name, and the counsell of his companions, the Emperour asked him what hee thought therein. My lord (saied hee) if it pleased you, that I and nine others which I will chuse, shall vndertake this combate, you shal doe vs great fauor. My good friend (said the Emperor) you see the estate wherein I am, and the time wherein I ought to keepe, not onely you and others wherein I

put

put my whole affiance, but the meaneſt ſouldiour in this Cittye. Neuertheles, I will ſo much agrée vnto your will, that if you and your companions thinke it good, I am content you do it. My lord (ſaid Norandel) both I and they moſt humblye craue it of your grace. Wel then (ſaid the Emperour) If it pleaſeth God, you ſhal win honour thereby, as you haue done before in many as perrillous aduentures as this is. Norandel thanked the Emperour, and the ſame day cauſed his Knights of great Brittaigne to bee aſſembled together, by whoſe aduiſe there was an Aunſwere framed to the Soudans letters, the contents whereof doe follow.

The knights that are ſeruants to Jeſus Chriſt, being at this time with the Emperor of Conſtantinople, for the defence & augmentation of the Chriſtians name, to thée Rodrigue Souldan of Liquie, like gréeting thou haſt ſent vnto the knight of the great ſerpent: a gentlewoman that ſaith ſhee belongeth vnto thée, that hath giuen vs a letter directed vnto him, the contents whereof are in two points. In ẏ firſt, ẏ complaineſt of the enterpriſes he hath made againſt thine vncle king Armato: in the other thou ſhewest a deſire ẏ haſt to proue thy perſon againſt his, or a greater number againſt a greater, as he ſhal think it good. But for ẏ the knight thou writeſt vnto at this preſent is not here, nor in place whéras he can return thée anſwer, we thought it conuenient in his behalf to ſatisfie thy requeſt, & to accept the offers thou haſt made vnto him: aſſuring thée, ẏ here is the ſon of a king, & nine other knights with him ẏ wil fight with thée and as many more of thine, if thou be content therwith: Aduiſe thy ſelf thẽ herein, & hauing receiued thy anſwere, with ſafe conduict ſafely to go and come, we wil not faile to be in the place where you ſhall appoint.

This letter ſealed vp, Norandel gaue it to one of his ſquires to bear it to the ſoudan, who made him anſwere ẏ he deſired only to proue his body againſt the knight of ẏ great ſerpent & none other. But (ſaied he) if thoſe ẏ ſent you hether haue any deſire to fight againſt ten of my knights, they ſhall find thẽ ready, being as great gentlemen and of as high a linage as they are. And as touching their ſafe conduict, I wil ſo wel prouide for it, ẏ they ſhall haue occaſion to think wel of me: wherfore return thou vnto thẽ, and let

me know their answere. With that the squire hauing his dispatch, went and came so often betweene them, that in the end the combate of ten to ten was fully agréed vpon, and the lists appoint hard before the Towne: where they the next morning the tenne knights went, whose names were as followeth. Norandel, Garuate du Val Craintif, Talanque, Manely, Ambor de Galdel, Elian le delibere, Brauor son of Balan, Trion cousin germane to Quéene Briolanie, Imosil de Burgoigne, and Listoran of the siluer bridge.

CHAP. XLIX.

How the ten Christian knights entred into the lists, and of the combate betweene them and tenne Pagan knights that belonged to the Souldan of Liquie.

ALL that night the ten knights watched in the principallest church of Constantinople, confessing thẽselues, and praying vnto God as if they should presently die: The next day as the sunne began to appeare, the Emperour accompanied of diuers Noblemen, the Empresse, ỹ Princesse Leonorine, Quéene Minoresse, with diuers other Ladies and Gentlewomen, came vnto them, where they heard masse deuoutly, that done, they returned vnto the pallace where Norandel and his nine companions armed themselues, the ladies seruing them for squires, in such sort, as Norandel receaued such fauor at quéen Minoresses handes, that shee found meanes to helpe to buckle on euery péece of his armour one after the other. As shee was busie about him, he found meanes to say vnto her: Madame, the honor that you doe me, maketh mee so couragious, that this day I hope to make it knowne to those that shall beholde vs fight, how much my strength is now increased by your meanes. But if it pleased you to bestow some fauour vpon me, that I might bear the same about my armour, I should account my selfe for one of the most happy knights liuing on the yearth. My good friend (saied she) the most precious iewell ỹ I can giue vnto you, is my heart ỹ shal accompany yours, to the end, that being united together, they may the better preserue both your life & mine. And taking a bracelet

of

of gold, that from her infancy she had alwaies kept, shee tied it about his right arme. And this circle (saied she) being round as you behold it, shall without ceasing bee witnesse of our loues, seruing for a rampart to this army: which (if it pleaseth God) in defending it shal so wel defend his master, ỹ he shall return in as good health as I desire he should. Norandel thanked her most heartily: mean time Leonorine intertained Talanque, Manely & the rest, to whom she said: My friends, I hope the Lord wil shew you so much grace that the victory shall be yours, for the combat you take in hand is not for to defend the honour of a Gentlewoman, but the glorious faith of Christ. If therfore it be so, ỹ strength procéedeth from him, be you thẽ wel assured, ỹ he wil impart so much to you as you shal want. Madame (said Talanque) at other times we haue ben at the like feast, from whence we haue returned to the great expence of those ỹ called vs thither: as (if it be Gods wil) we hope this day to do ỹ like. Wherwith taking their leaues of her, they went to find their horses, and being mounted, the emperor with great number of knights and gentlewomen brought them to the gate: And committing them to God, the ten knights marched brauely to ỹ place of combat, where the souldan with a great number of his friends met thẽ, asking them whom the emperor had appointed iudge on their side. Souldan (said Norandel) wée desire no other iudge then your self, that are accounted a curteous and most faithfull prince. By all my gods (said he) I had rather die a thousand deaths, then you should indure the least iniury in the world: we beléeue it wel (said al the knights. With ỹ he caused them to enter into the lists at one end, and the ten pagans at the other: but before they entred into fight, he called Norandel & his companions, & said vnto them: My friends, I pray you let me shew you what the custome of my country is in such affairs: thẽ if you think good, you may obserue it, if not, my knights shal kéep your custome if it be indifferẽt. Shew vs thẽ, said Norandel) what it is, & if ỹ same be reasonable, we wil not refuse it. You shal vnderstand (said he) ỹ all knights iustle one against one, to ỹ end, ỹ all men may know ỹ excellency of the victor: And if any one be ouerthrown, he ỹ is on horseback shall not assaile ỹ other before their companions haue run out their course:

Then he that is on horſeback ſhall alight, and ſhall fight it out by dint of ſword with him that before was ouerthrown. Becauſe it chanceth oftentimes, that the beſt knights that are fall into ſuch inconuenience, only by the fault and means of bad horſes, which cauſe them diuers times either to faile in ſtriking of their enemy, or els not to run their right courſe: Which cannot bee excuſed in thoſe that are on foot, to whome it is permitted to ſuccour each other if néed require. Truly (ſaid Norandel) that cuſtome is wel ordained, and I and my companions will obſerue the ſame. Wherwith the ſoudan went out of the liſts, cauſing his Heralds to proclaim the fight: With that a Pagan ſtepped forth againſt Norandel, that refuſed him not: but couering himſelfe with his ſhield, they met ſo fiercely, that their ſpears were broke to their wreſts, méeting body to body with ſo great ſtrength, that the Pagan fell ouer his horſe taile, lying flat vpon the ground: but Norandel had no hurt, onely that his horſes ſhoulder was thruſt out of ioint, ſo that he lighted of, ſtaying til the reſt had runne their courſe, as he had promiſed. Then Garuate du Val Craintif ran againſt one of the other, and they charged each other in ſuch ſort, that their féet failing in their ſtirrops, they were both caſt out of their ſaddles. Then Talanque ran againſt the third Pagan, to whome fortune was more fauourable then to any of the reſt: for they ran ſo wel, that neither of them once ſtarted aſide, or moued in their ſaddles, and yet brake their ſpeares in many péces. The like chanced to Manely and Ambor, but not to Brauor the ſon of Balan, for hee hit him that ran againſt him right in the breaſt, and threw him from his horſe. And preſently therewith Imoſil of Burgundy had ſo great a ſtroke with a launce, that his eies ſtarted in his head, and was therewith ſo much aſtonished, that his horſe bare him to the ſide of the barriers, where he fell downe flat. Elian le delibere, and hee that ran againſt him, were conſtrained to holde by their horſes maines. Liſtoran of the ſiluer bridge miſſed his ſtroke, and his enemy likewiſe: the like happened to Trion, and the laſt that ran with him. That done, all they that were on horſebacke, lighted downe to fight with ſwords, and there began betwéen them ſuch a fight as the like had not béene ſéene of ſo few knights together,

maintaining

maintaining themselues so brauely one against the other, that the strongest of them was so wearie and out of breath, that they were constrained to rest. And as Norandel leaned vpō his sword which he rested on the ground, the bracelet that Minoresse gaue him fell downward vpon his arme, which put him in so good remembraunce of her, that cleane forgetting all the trauaile hée he had taken before, he spake so loud that euery man might hear, and said: By God, sir Knight, this rest doth not beséeme vs: many men will from henceforth be in doubt of the great glory that now we meane to win. Wherefore let euery man shewe forth what he can doe, and let no man spare. Wherewith taking the little pæce of his shield that rested in his hand, and lifting vp his arme, he gaue so great a blow vnto his enemie, that he made him réele therewith: and doubling it, strake him so surely on the helmet, that with the blow the Turke was forced to knéele downe, and let his sword fall out of his hand: which Norandel seased vpon being readie to strike off his head, if he had not cried him mercie: which Talanque and Manely perceiuing, employed their forces in such manner, that it might easily be iudged they would soon obtaine the victorie. As for Brauor he had alreadie stricken his knight downe, wherefore he ranne to helpe the rest, and Norandel likewise. With the which helpe it soone appeared, that they which rested yet to ouercome would not long resist: for in short space they found themselues in such extremitie, that vnlesse the Souloan of Liquie had desired the Christian knights to stay a while, they had all died: but calling Norandel vnto him, he said: I pray you (said he) proceéd no further in this combat, and content your selues that I account my knights for vanquished, as in truth they are, and so hardly handled, that the force you shall from henceforth vse against them, shall more be holden for a kinde of crueltie than any chiualrie. Neuertheles if my request may take no place with you, doe as you thinke good. Souldan (said Norandel) if they acknowledge it at our hands and aske vs mercie, they shall not faile to haue it: for it was neuer our custome to vse force to such as could not stand against vs. Content your selues (saide he) that I that am their Lord yéeld you the victorie, and I pray

you therefore shew mercie vnto them, swearing vnto you by my crowne (if you doe them so much good) that while I liue, I will not be vnmindfull of the same. With that the ten Christian knightes went out of the fielde, and mounting on their horses, toke their way vnto the citie, where the Emperour staied for them, for he had seene the issue of the combat, and how they returned victors: but he heard not what words had past betweene them, till they being lighted off their horses, told him what was done, for the which hee praised God, esteeming more of them for their courtesie they had shewen vnto the enemy.

CHAP. L.

How Queene Calafre came to aide the Pagans, and of the maruailous and perillous assault that shee gaue to the citie of Constantinople.

THe renowme of this warre vndertaken by the Kings, Taborlans, Souldans, Califes, and Princes dwelling in Tartaria, India, Arabia, and other countries in the East, against the Emperour and his Empire of Constantinople, was spread so far abroad, that it was knowne to the puissant Queene Calafre reigning in Califorine, a most fertile and pleasant countrey, confining on the head of the riuer Boristenes, hard by the foot of the Riffee mountains. This countrey whereof I speake, was sometimes peopled with good knights and men of all quarters, but the women vpon malice deuised a meanes to kill them all, establishing a law among themselues, that from that time forwardes they would acknowledge for Ladie and Queene one of their owne country women, gouerning themselues as the Amazons vsed to doe. Whereby it was not lawfull for any of them to vse the companie of men aboue once or twice a yeere, vpon the dates and times by them appointed, when they went out of their owne countrie and vsed

their

their neighbours helpe, with whom God knoweth if they found not meanes to make them pay the vsurie of the time lost, in such sort, that most of them returned home with child: but the bringing vp of their children was far different, for the maiden children were kept aliue, burning their right paps, but not the men children, for as soone as they were borne they put them to death, hauing agreed not to suffer one aliue, or els so few, that they very easily might ouercome them. For this cause often times they warred against the Tartarians bordering on their country, putting them to great trouble by diuers and continuall inuasions, as well by sea as by land. In their lawes and customes they obserued so great rigour, as that if any man (by casualtie or otherwise) fell into their hands, he prooued for food vnto a great number of griffons, nourished among them when they were young, being so tame and gentle, that neuer any hauke knewe better the Faulkoners lure, then those gentle birds knew the voice of her that ordinarily fedde them. To come vnto the point, this queene of Califorine being a woman of great spirit, valiant, hardie, young, faire, and of good behauiour, hearing of the warres vndertaken against the Christians, was desirous to be there, not for any ill shee wished them, but onely for to know them, and to see their countrey that bare so great renowme. And for that cause she assembled great numbers of the principall ladies of her countrey, shewing them what honour they might obtaine in that voiage: which may peraduenture be such (said shee) that by our force and great prowesse wee may greatly augment our Empire, beeing feared and redoubted of each man, and not continue alwaies buried among these mountaines, as they in times past did, of whome at this present wee now possesse and enioye the place. The Queene in this sort could so well persuade them, that they being moued with a marueilous desire to goe with her, presently prepared their shippes, and set saile for Thracia, with so good and prosperous a winde, that the tenth day after the assaults of Constantinople, they arriued in the armie of Armato, where they were honourably receiued: & after

diuers

diuers spéeches vsed by the Souldan of Liquie, and other princes of the campe vnto the quéene of Califorine, specially touching their determination concerning that great enterprise, shée being sorrie they had done so little against the towne, desired them that she might once haue leaue to try her fortune against it, by means that she would vse. And the better to induce them thereunto, she told them she had fiftie griffons that would not faile (béeing let out of their cages) to sease vpon the Christians without hurting of her women, because they knewe them and had béen nourished with them. And while they take their flight (said she) I will giue such an assault against the towne, that without doubt wee will enforce the same: for if the Emperors souldiers appeare but to defend the wals, my Griffons shall be ready to carrie them clean away, as the Merlin doth the larke. But to the end (said she) your men receiue no hurt, let them abide within their tentes till they be shut into their cages. When king Armato and the Souldan of Liquie heard the great zeale and affection she shewed to employ her forces, as also the inuention that she had, they all agréed that the next day after she should doe what liked her. Whereupō she sent presently to her that kept the griffons, that shée should giue them nothing for to eate of all that day, that when they meant to vse them at the assault, they might be grédier: and further sent worde by sound of drumme, that all her companies should be readie the next day early in the morning, to giue assault vnto the citie. Quéene Calafre hauing in this maner prouided for her enterprise, at the time appointed all her women armed accordingto their manner (the most part of them bearing bowes) ranne with great furie vnto the walles, and with their ladders began to mount vp: with that the alarme went about the citie, all men running to defend the same: and as they were some vpon the walles and other places of defence, the Quéene made signe to let the Griffons loose, which being hungry and flying ouer the towne, seazed vpon such as they could find abroad: wherewith the Emperours souldiers were in so great feare, that most part of them that fought, forsake the walles to hide themselues. Alas what pitie was it to sée souldiers, citizens, knights,

and

and others, yea women and little children, and all whatsoeuer they could get into their clawes taken vp into the aire, and sometimes hauing taken them vp, they let them fall vpon the stones, whereby they had a strange and cruell death; surely if God had not kept the Cittie better than those that had the charge, it is most sure it had bene taken at that time. But there happened a strange case, for as the Griffons helde their prey, and that the Knights of great Brittaine with some small number of others, resisted the assault made by the women, the Turkes (that had ben aduertised not to come out of their tents while they assailed the towne) moued with too greedy a desire to sacke the Citte which they thought surely had ben taken, ranne vnto the assault making such a noise, that the Griffons (feeding on their preyes) left the bodies they had seazed vpon, and flying vp againe, seased on them that they sawe come running to the towne, whereof in short space after they made so great a butcherie, that more than foure hundred Turkes were presently slaine by them: meane time those within the towne perceiuing that good fortune, did so fiercely repulse the Californiens, that their principall women lay dead within the ditches: wherewith the Queene was forced to retire, knowing her enterprise would not take effect as shee desired it should, not by reason of her souldiers, but in that they kept not in as they had promised. Wherewith she commanded to take the birdes againe, but the Falconers could not by any meanes make them to come in, before they had slaine and deuoured aboue a thousand Turkes and others, whereof they onely suckt the blood. Wherewith king Armato and the Soudan of Liquie were so grieued, that from thenceforth they began to shew so hard a countenance to the Queene, that shee was in the minde to returne into her countrey, not offering from that time once to giue stroke with sword to their aduantage. Yet not long after shee was appeased, and fought with King Amadis, as it shall bee shewed you at large in the end of this our fift Booke. And that wee may haue the better meanes to attaine thereto, wee will now returne againe vnto the Christian Princes, that assembled their powers and forces to helpe the

Emperour, imbarking themselues as presently you shall heare. But before they arriued at Constantinople, many good knights both of great Brittaine and others were slaine within the citie, not onely in the assaultes made against it by the Pagans, but at the last assault made by the quéene Calafre, among the which, none were so much lamented as Ledarin de Faiarque, Trys, Imosill of Burgundie, and the two sonnes of the gyant Balan.

CHAP. LI.

How the Christian Princes as well of the East as West partes assembled their forces to aid the Emperour of Constantinople, and of their nauigation.

IF you haue read the discourse of this our history, it hath béene shewed you before, how Enil went vnto the Emperour of Rome, and Florestan king of Sardaigne, and what became of Gandalin after he had passed the straights of Giberaltar, and entred in the Ocean sea, euen to great Brittaine and other places, where hée found king Amadis and others, to whome he had charge to goe: Now we must declare the rest. You shall therefore vnderstand, that Gandalin hauing sojourned eight daies in London, more by the commaundement of king Amadis and Quéene Oriane, than for the pleasure that hee toke in the woman they had caused him to marrie, knowing the affaires wherein he had left his companions, departed from thence, and trauailed so long, that he arriued in Fraunce, and went vnto king Perion to whome he gaue the letters that his sonne and grand-child sent vnto him: and withall declared the state of the East countries, as they then were, with the inconuenience that might fall vnto all Christendome, if the Empire of Constantinople were in obedience to the infidels. So well could Gandalin tell his tale, that the good old king Perion moued with a holy zeale, determined to go himselfe in person,

and

and to take with him great quantity of ships and men, furnished for the wars. Gandalin stayed not long with him, but while hee prepared himselfe, hee went into Scotland, Norway, Hobradise, Denmarke and Sweathland, and did his Embassages so well, that all the Kings and Princes to whome hee went, determined with all spéede to aid Esplandian, in such sort, that in short time after their ships were ready, and those of Sweathland, Norway, and Denmarke, come vnto the port of Suer, from whence setting saile, they coasted along Freseland, Holland, and Braband, till they arriued at Bulloigne, where king Perion had prepared great number of Ships, Hulkes, and other vessels: which being furnished with men, victuals, and munition necessarye for the warres, hoised saile and put to sea. And coasting Normandie, came to little Brittaigne, where they ankered in S. Mathewes Hauen, where the Kings, Luisart and Amadis accompanied of Grumedan and diuers other knights, were arriued to refresh thẽselues: hauing passed the Ile of Sorlingue, the Irish men imbarked themselues at the cape Antiquan, and the Scots at cape Bassa. And hauing sailed the way that the Brittons had past, ioined with the Westerne Princes that went that voiage, in such sort, that within thrée daies after they set saile, & hauing a Northeast wind, they discouered the coast of Spaine, passing the Port of Finisterre in compostelle: after that the cape S. Vincent: & drawing on the left side, they passed the straights of Gibraltar, & leauing Barbary and Guinde on the right hand, sailed toward Tamar, Austoza, and Lagarde, minding to leaue Maiorque & Minorque, to enter into ỹ straights of Busina and Monaco, & frõ thence to saile to the ports of Elese and Torse, where they met with Florestan king of Sardaigne & his fléet, but before they arriued there, fortune was so contrary vnto them, that certaine of their Gallions could not follow the ships, but stated behind to the number of eight, being so scattered, ỹ they made account they had been lost. Neuertheless, the next day they arriued all at Port S. Luce, where without longer staying they passed forward to go to Regi, where the army of the Emperor of Rome (comming from Otty) lay at anker staying for them. Where they continued six daies,

not onely to take in fresh water, but also to calke and mend their shippes and other vessels that had néed: the seuenth day hauing a good wind, they hoysed ankers, and setting saile, coasted along the country of Morea, comming to cape de Maluasie, where the winde fell somewhat contrarie: but in the end the sea waxing calme, put forward to Cape Talon, and the Isle of Negrepont; and entring into the Archipelago they discouered the side of the cape Athos, till they approched Galiopi, leauing the Ile of Tenedos, because they would not be discouered by the Turkes that Armato had set there to kéepe a passage for his victuals to bée brought vnto the armie: where they staied not long but they entred into the goulfe of Propontide, coasting Thrace, till they came vnto the Port of Salombre, which is not aboue thirtie miles from the citie of Constantinople, where they landed, that they might the better approch the Pagans campe: with that they agréed among them that king Childadan and Quedragant should be Generals of the armie by sea: and hauing left sufficient number of men for the furnishing and safe kéeping of their shippes, their fléet sailed towards Constantinople, hoping to set vpon Alphorax and his armie by sea before they should perceiue them. But it fell out otherwise, for the Turkes that had spies in all places, discouered them, not suffering Alphorax to fight, desiring him most earnestly onely to kéepe the entrie of the straits to take all meanes from the towne to be victualled on that side. Which king Childadan and Quedragant vnderstanding, would not hazzard themselues, but ankered within halfe a myle of the enemie, staying for king Luisart, the Emperour of Rome, and those that marched by land, meane time giuing diuers skirmishes to the enemie with their Pinnaces, but Alphorax for all that would not leaue his hole, lying as close as possibly he could: on the other side Armato and his company being aduertised of the great aid that came towards the towne, caused their forces to assemble, determining to kéep the side of the great sea, by ỹ which they might easilier recouer victuals, as well from Natolia as out of Tartaria. The kings Amadis, Perion, & others made such hast, that the ninth day after they incamped themselues in ỹ sight

of

of Constantinople tight before their enemies, in a place that séemed most conuenient. But if the Pagans at the first were much abashed to sée those succours, the Emperor & those within ỹ town were not much lesse, doubting it had béen some new forces come against the towne: for they had not any intelligence of the sending of Gandalin & Enil to the christian princes, that brought with them a multitude both of ships & men, as well knights as others. Now to returne to the Christians fléet: King Childadan knowing that Alphorax plaied the fore, desired Quedragant (hauing equall power with him) to be content that he with threéscore pinnaces might skirmish with him, that thereby if it were possible, he might prouoke him to come out, which he agréed vnto: wherefore setting saile, he made towards the enemie, so néere, that they were ready to fight hand to hand: neuertheles Alphorax for that time would not touch the bait, but entred farther in the straights: wherewith king Childadan retired, and came vnto the hauen of the citie, making the brauest show that might be séene: those of Constantinople perceiuing the bandirols and streamers of great Brittain & of other christian princes, made him answer with the like, and so high, that the noise of the trumpets, cleirons, & tabers was so great, that Armato and all the Pagans might easily hear it. With that king Childadan was receiued by the Emperor, Norandel, & others, to whome he shewed what aide was come vnto them, and what princes had taken the voiage in hand. In good faith (said the Emperor) they bind me for euer vnto them, yet am I much abashed how they vnderstood of the wars betwéene Armato & me. What: my Lord (said Childadan) did Esplandian neuer tell you thereof: No I assure you (said the Emperor) nor any of his companions, as far as I know. Is he not in the city (said ỹ king:) In good truth (said Norandel) hee would not leaue the castle Lamontaigne defendu, minding to kéep it, if the Pagans came to besiege it. Assure your selues (said Childadan) he will not long stay there before king Amadis sendeth for him: for we determine presently to giue battell, & if he should faile at such a iourny, it would grieue him euer after. Much other talke had the knights of Constantinople with Childadan and those that bare him companie,

where he ſtayed till the next day in the morning, that he entered into his ſhips to returne vnto Quedragant.

CHAP. LII.

How Eſplandian and the king of Denmarke were ſent for by Gandalin that went vnto the caſtle La montaigne defendu, where they ſtaied, attending the ſuccours of the Chriſtian Princes, and of a letter that the Souldan of Liquie and Queene Calafie wrot vnto king Amadis and Eſplandian.

KIng Childadan returned to Quedragant as you heard before, and the army on land incamped in ſight of the enemy, Amadis was aduertiſed by thoſe that had ben in the city of Conſtantinople, that Eſplandian and the king of Denmarke were at the caſtle La montaigne defendu, whereupon he ſent Gandalin to fetch them, Gandalin toke ſhipping, and had ſo good a winde, that without any aduenture hee arriued there, where hee declared vnto them howe king Amadis and almoſt all the Chriſtian Princes were incamped within halfe a mile of the Pagans hoſt, and all what hee and Enil had done conſidring their charge. And becauſe (ſaid Gandalin) that our men are determined ſhortly to giue them bataile, they pray you to come vnto them. Truly (ſaied Eſplandian) Gandalin my friend, you haue wrought the matter well, and I thanke you for the paines that you haue taken. My lord (ſaied the king of Denmarke) are you not determined that we go vnto them: For my part, I had rather loſe one of mine armes, then faile thereof. Brother (ſaied Eſplandian) to morrow if it pleaſeth God, the great ſerpent ſhall bring vs thither: before that time it had alwaies vſed to faile of it ſelfe, but as then it failed. For when they were entered into it, it ſtirred not, whereat Gandalin much abaſhed, could not refraine to ſay: By god, this veſſell is like to the horſe with the white legge, that faileth vs when we haue moſt need. Friend (ſaid Eſplandian) I am ſurely perſuaded that this proceedeth by reaſon of Vrgandas im-

priſonment,

prisonment, who at this time is in Melies power, and so well inchaunted, that her art profiteth her as little as this vessel doth vs, that moued by her inchauntments, which at this present hath no meanes to stirre, as you may well perceiue. And Esplandian saied true, for at the same time the countrey wherein Vrganda dwelt, called The vnknowne Iland, (because it was alwaies inuisible) was as then discouered and seene of all men. With that Gandalin counselled them to enter into the Pinnace, which Esplandian and the king of Denmarke did, and hauing a good winde, sayled towards Constantinople, and on a sunday in the morning they espied the vessels of king Childadan and Quedragant, which not long after they boorded, where Esplandian and ỹ king of Denmark were receiued with great ioy: after that hee went to see his father and the rest of the knights that were on lande, and after an infinite number of imbracings and welcomes on all sides, they determined to visit their enemies somewhat nearer, wherby many braue skirmishes were made, where the women of Quéen Calafre were continually in armes, and among the rest, a sister of the Quéenes named Liote, a hardy and valiant ladie, that toke a Frenchman prisoner, which certified the Soudan of Liqute that Amadis de Gaule king of great Brittaine, and Esplandian his sonne were in the army. Whereof the Soudan and Quéene Calafre being aduertised, determined together to write a letter vnto them, the contents whereof doe follow.

Rodrigue Soudan of Liqute, mortall enemy to the enemies of our gods, and Calafre Quéene of Califorzine, a countrey most rich and abundant in gold and precious stones, giue you Amadis de Gaule king of great Brittaine, and your sonne Knight of the great Serpent to vnderstand, that the occasion of our arrival in these countries, hath been for these two causes. The one in hope to destroy all Christendome, and the other to proone if wee may take from you the renowne that is spread abroad of you, to bee the two best knights liuing in ỹ world: for we account our selues for such, as that if you will accept the combate of your persons against ours, we will euidently make it knowne, that our valor is no lesse then yours. And to the end the glorye of the victors

may

may be knowne, the vanquished shall remaine in their powers, to dispose of them as they shall thinke conuenient. Aduise your selues therefore to answere vs herein by this our messenger, to whome wee haue giuen charge to declare vnto you (if you refuse this combate) that from henceforth we shall haue iust occasion to attribute to our selues the aduantage of the praises and endlesse glories that fortune heretofore hath giuen you; and to esteeme of you as meanely in time to come, as you haue béen highly renowned heretofore.

This letter giuen to the Gentlewoman that bare the first to Norandel, she went vnto the Christians campe, and being aduertised which was Amadis tent, entered therein, as he sate talking with king Luisart, Esplandian, and other good knights. Where knæling on the ground, she asked which of them was the knight of the great Serpent and his father. Amadis spake vnto her and saied: Gentlewoman, I am the one, and this is my sonne. Is it your pleasure to speake with vs? The gentlewoman casting hir eie vpon Esplandian, maruelling at his great beautie, spake & said: In good faith king Amadis, I verily beleeue that this is hee, for I haue heard him in diuers places esteemed for the same that nowe I doe behold in him. Gentlewoman (said Amadis) if you came into our campe only to sée him, you now haue your desire. That hath not ben only the cause (said she) but to bring this letter which the Soudan of Liquie and Quæn Calafre send vnto you both: wherfore hauing read it, I pray you returne an answere. With that (Amadis hauing taken it in his hand) the Gentlewoman departed out of the tent, attending their resolution. King Amadis hauing read it, shewed it to king Luisart and the rest that were in presence, wherewith there rose great controuersie among them concerning the refusall or acceptation of the combat, for that the most part of them were of aduise it should not be accepted, shewing diuers great and euident reasons to confirm the same, as the greater number of enemies they had before them readye to giue them battaile, & if it happen (said they) that fortune should be contrary to king Amadis and Esplandian (in whome partly consisteth our hope) such hard chance would breed great fear in diuers men

that

that are now very willing & ready to do the best they can. Others held the contrary, saying that it would be shame vnto them al, for that that refusal only would much incourage the enemy, but they were of this opinion, that it might wel be required that the number of the combatants might be greater. In good truth (sate Amadis) be it of two against two, twenty against twenty, or of greater number, the victory is in the hands of God. Wherefore in refusing thereof, I should doe my selfe wrong, and cause a great blemish to all Christendome, that would not be defaced in long time after. Besides I haue great hope of Gods helpe herein, for whose faith and honour I haue vndertaken this voiage. When Esplandian heard his fathers mind, he spake boldlier and said: That he would take that combate vpon himselfe alone, not onely against the Souldan and the Quéene, but against two others more with them, rather then it so should be refused: whereupon it was concluded, that Amadis and he would fight, and sending for the messenger into the tent, Amadis sated vnto her: Gentlewoman, you shall tel the Souldan and the Quéene that I and my son are content to doe as they require, wherefore let them chuse what arms they will, and for the place it shall bee betwéene their campe and ours: assuring them on the faith of a king, that not one of our soldiours shall once remoue, haw soeuer we spéed, which wee desire likewise at their hands: and if it bée their desire to haue the combate fought this day, we are content to doe it. With that the gentlewoman returned, and comming to the Souldans tent, shée declared her message vnto thẽ, being such as you haue heard: whereof the Souldan was glad, but especially the Quéene, for the great desire she had to sée Esplandian, wherefore shee asked the Gentlewoman what she thought of him. Madame (sated shee) I haue in my life time séene many men and women that nature had indued with great beautie, but by the gods I confesse it is all but painting in regard of that I haue found in him: for hee is so faire and beautifull, that the more I thinke thereon, so much the more it maketh me cõceiue such beauty to be rather deuine thẽ humane. That is much (said the Quéene.) I know not (said the gentlewoman) what you meane by that word Much, but I am wel assured,

if you had ſéene him as I did, that you would ſay as much as I doe, and it may be moze. Truly (ſaied the Quéene) beſoze I enter in combat with him, I will firſt ſée him vnarmed, and ſpeak with him, not as an enemie to an enemy, but as friends commonly do one vnto thè other. Madame (ſaied the Souldan) ſéeing it is your deſire, it were good our Gentlewoman went againe vnto them, to deſire them to giue you leaue to come and viſite them in their campe, not to pzocure them any cauſe of enuy, but to do them honour: and foz that cauſe to deſire their ſafe conduct. This counſell ſéemed good vnto the Quéene, and without longer ſtaying ſhe ſent the Gentlewoman backe againe vnto Amadis and Eſplandian whom ſhe found yet in the Tent whereas ſhe left them. With that ſhe told them what her meſſage was, and the great deſire the Quéene had to ſée them beſoze they entred into combat. King Amadis could not refraine laughing to hear the Gentlewoman expzeſſe the affection her miſtreſſe had, aſking king Luiſart what he thought therein. Sonne (ſaied hee) deny not her requeſt, foz I aſſure you (ſince our comming hether) I haue heard the Quéene to bée eſtéemed a wiſe and beautifull Pzinceſſe. You heare our anſwere (ſaied Amadis to the Gentlewoman) let the Quéene come hether when ſhe thinketh good, foz ſhe ſhall be heartely welcome. With that the Gentlewoman returned to the Quéene, who being greatly pleaſed with that anſwere, determined the next daye to goe vnto them. But ſhe knew not well what manner of apparell ſhe were beſt to weare: ſometimes ſhee thought it fit to goe as ſhe vſed when ſhe went to bataile, and then pzeſently changed opinion, thinking a womans apparrell would bee moze ſéemely and conuenient, ſéeing ſhe went not to trie their fozces, but only to win the loue and fauour of Eſplandian, if ſhe might pzocure the ſame. And thinking on it all night long, in the mozning when ſhe meant to apparrell her ſelf, ſhe was reſolued to dzeſſe her as women vſe to do, thinking ſhe had means inough afterward to ſhew her ſelfe in habite of a knight, whereby ſhee might bee ſéene both in the one and the other ſozt. Wherupon ſhe cauſed her moſt pzecious robes to be bzought vnto her, and apparrelling her ſelf, fozgot not any thing that might once beautifie oz adozn her perſon,

or that in her opinion would deck her well, the better to be liked. And to bear her company she toke twelue of her own gentlewomen, so well furnished and set forth with stones and pearles, that the like was neuer seene. That done, she sent vnto her ships for a most strange and monstrous beast, whereupon sometimes shee vsed to ride in great pomp. It was as big as a great Dromadary, the hair long & somewhat yellow, black spots, his two eares hanging downe vnto his knées, hauing but one eye, shining brighter then a burning glasse, and stood right in the midst of his forehead: out of his mouth there issued two great téeth like hornes, and although his fæt were clouen like an ox, yet was there no Hart in all the world ỳ could outrun him, were it in plaine way, or ouer rockes. In that manner she entered into the Christians campe, of whom she was not a little wondred at before shee came to King Luisarts tent, where Amadis and in a maner all the principal captaines of the army staied for her, praying Quedragant to goe out to welcome her, which he did with great courtesie: for he had no soner espied her, but hee stepped forward, and doing her great reuerence, holpe her to discend, and taking her by the arme, led her into the tent, where the lords were all assembled, of whome shee was most honourably receiued. But when she beheld Esplandians beauty, she was so much surprised with the loue of him, ỳ shee repented her comming thether, not so much for the small hope shee had to win him, (being diuers in religion) but doubting ỳ the fantasy newly entred into hir mind would so much estrange hir force (by ouermuch thinking vpon him) when she went to fight, ỳ therby she should be in danger to lose the honour and reputation shee had gotten in arms among the best knights in all ỳ world: which to preuent, shee determined to stay the lesse time there, knowing the nature of loue to bee such, ỳ it can steale the hearts of all persons, and commonly maketh himselfe possessor of it, before hee that hath it in possession, can perceaue it. And as the Princes entertained her with diuers swæte and pleasant spæches, shee tourned to Esplandian and saied: Sir Knight, for two most excellent graces that are in you, I haue taken the paines to

come and visite you: The first is the gift of beauty, which is such in you, as I could neuer haue imagined the same: The other is the force of your body and magnanimity of your courage, whereby you are accounted altogether inuincible. The one I haue sén with mine eies to be so perfect, that I neuer hope to sée the like againe, although I lined a thousand yeares and more: the other, ỹ combat you shal haue against the most puissant Souldan of Liquie will be a witnesse vnto vs: and had it not ben that hée requested me to fight against king Amadis (because his onely desire is to proue his body against yours) I would haue tried it my selfe. Of one thing can I wel assure you, that if the honour remaine to vs and life to you, I will afterward tel you a thing that much importeth me, and which I greatly desire to let you know before I saile into my countrey. Now for this time I haue satisfied my desire: wherefore my lords (said she vnto all the Princes) I beséech you pardon me in not vsing longer spéeches, for I know full well that my long staying with you, (thinking to finde that I hoped for) might possible cause me to lose my selfe, wherewith I should be ouermuch displeased, for that before sunnesetting I hope to bée in place where I will shew such valour in armes, that hee which neuer could be vanquished by man (as it is reported) shal now receiue an ouerthrow at a simple womans hand. Madame (saied king Perion) fortune can doe much when it pleaseth her, if you do as you say, truly you shall doe more then we can well beléeue, but commonly ỹ workman is known by his worke, and because the issue of the combat is the glory of him or you, til then we wil defer our iudgements. And although Amadis perceiued himselfe much outraged by the quéen, yet he made no sign thereof, but taking her by ỹ arm, led her where her company stated, and as shée mounted to return, with a smiling countenance he spake vnto her and said: Madame, whē we come to dealing of blowes I beséech you shew me not the greatest extremity you can, because I was alwaies a friend to women, and euer will be during my life: whereunto the quéen answered not a word, but rode vnto ỹ Pagans camp to arm hir selfe. Mean time Brian de Moniaste arriued in the Christians camp, who hauing ben sent by the king of Spain his father with

a great power of men into Africa, to beſiege the town of Ceſonie after called Centie, was aduertiſed by a pirate, of the Chriſtians enterpriſe, and how their army and great fleet had paſſed the cape of Finis terre, preſently ſent vnto his father to deſire him to giue him leaue to goe that voiage: whereunto by much importunitie he granted. For which cauſe Brian brake vp his ſiege of Cente, and entring again into his ſhips ſailed to Cicile, and from thence to Gallipoli, and ſo to Conſtantinople, where he ioyned with the Chriſtian princes that receiued him moſt gladly.

CHAP. LIII.

How king Amadis and Eſplandian his ſon, fought againſt the Souldan of Liquie and Queene Calafre, and of the battail fought the ſame day both by ſea and land, betweene the Chriſtians and the Pagans.

QUéene Calafre returned to the Pagans campe as you heard before, preſently armed her ſelfe, & the Souldan likewiſe, and ſtayed not long before they came vnto the place where the combat was aſſigned, where not long after they found Amadis and Eſplandian: and becauſe the two campes were not well aſſured of each other (notwithſtanding the oathes and promiſes on both ſides made) they ſet themſelues in order of battaile not ſtirring one foot: king Perion ſending word to Quedragant and king Childadan, that as they had intelligence from the enemy, they ſhould ſet vpon their armie by ſea: the like word was ſent vnto the Emperour of Conſtantinople, that he might likewiſe be prepared: and as the foure combatants were ready to ſtrike each other, the Souldan called Amadis and Eſplandian, aſking them if they would not ſweare and kéepe promiſe (according to the agréement ſent vnto them by his gentlewoman) that the vanquiſhers without impeachment ſhould lead away the vanquiſhed. I truly, ſaid they, therefore beware of vs. With that Amadis made towards the Quéene, and the Souldan againſt Eſ-

plandian, to whoune he gaue so great a blow with his launce into the shield, that he pierced it through: wherby diuers thought assuredly he had bëen wounded to death, but it was not so, for the launce passed vnder his saddle without any further hurt: but Esplandian gaue him his exchange, striking him so fiercely, that hée made him lose both stirrop and saddle and fall vpon the ground, with so great might, that he rolled twice or thrice before he stayed, in such manner, that the helmet flew off his head. Quéene Calafre ranne against king Amadis, and he against her: and as they were in the middle of their course, Amadis turned the but end of his launce against her, & passing forward would not strike her: yet shée held her launce downe and strake his horse in the steele of his forehead, and withall they met so strongly body to body, that therewith the Quéene fell downe, & Amadis was constrained to light, his horse was so astonished with the truncheon of the launce that stucke within his forehead. But the Quéene rose presently, and with her sword in hand went towards Amadis, the like did the Soudan to Esplandian that had suffered him to take breath and lace his helmet, not for any good he wished him, but that at the end of his carere hée espied the princes Leonorine standing on the walles of Constantinople, whereat he was so abashed, that euery man saide, the Soudan had hurt him in the bodie. Neuertheless within short space after they knew the contrarie: for hée lighted on foote, where betwéene them two was fought the most perillous combat that euer was séene, for Rodrigue was as valiant a knight in armes as any in his time: but Esplandian handled him in such manner, that often times he made him cleane forget the subtilties that commonly he vsed in such affaires, and in the end vsed him so hardly, that it might euidently be séene the victorie would be his. Meane time the Quéene vsed all her force to ouercome king Amadis, who holding in his hand a great truncheon of a launce instead of a sword, gaue her such a blowe on the crest of her helmet, that hée made her eyes start within her head. Wherewith shée being much offended, spake vnto him, and said: What sir Knight: doe you thinke me either to be a dogge or else a countrey clowne, that you séeme to

beat

beat me with a staffe? By my head before you escape out of my handes, there is no armour you haue but will be needfull for you to the safegard of your life. Calafre (said Amadis) all my life time I haue béene a seruant vnto Ladies, and if at this time I should begin with you to wish them ill, the good that others haue receiued at my handes would be lesse estéemed. You account mée then (said the Quéene) one of that number: but you shall presently féele that I am something more: with that shée toke her sword in both handes, and in great choller gaue him such a blow, that shée claue his shield in two, and thinking to double her stroke, Amadis stepped vnto her and plucked hers from eff her necke, with such force, that shée was constrained to knéele vpon the ground. Neuertheless shée rose presently againe, and thinking to be reuenged, vsed all her force to charge Amadis, who turning aside gaue her such a blowe with his truncheon hard by the eare, and therewith made her so astonished, that her sworde fell out of her hand: wherewith he stepped forward, and taking her by the helmet, said vnto her: Now you shall be my prisoner whether you will or not, as well as the Souldan is prisoner to my sonne. With that the Quéene lóked aside and perceiued that Amadis said true: wherefore shée said: Truly I am your prisoner séeing fortune will haue it so: and therewith Rodrigue and Esplandian came vnto them, and they foure going out of the lists, went vnto the Christians campe: the Pagans that saw them ledde away in whome in a manner consisted most of their hope, when the campes should ioyne in battaile, made countenance to rescue them: which caused the Christians to stand all day in order of battaile: meane time they agréed among themselues to send the Souldan and the Quéene vnto Constantinople, Gandalin hauing charge to bring them thither, and present them to the Princesse Leonorine, from Amadis and Esplandian, who thanked them most heartily. And before hée returned againe vnto the campe, a souldier of Thrace (that had dwelt in Tartaria about twentie yéere together) came and yélded himselfe vnto the Christians, and tolde King Perion and Lisuart, that their enemies determined the next day in the morning to surprise them

before

before they were aware, whereof they aduertised the Emperor of Constantinople, to the end he might be readie. There were in the citie fortie thousand men, whereof he appointed thirtie thousand to issue forth vpon the enemies rereward, as soone as they perceiued the battaile once begon, and gaue likewise intelligence to King Childadan and Quedragant, that his spies had brought him newes that Alphorax had vnfurnished his shippes of men to strengthen their armie on land, trusting to the straights which they meane to kéepe, hoping thereby to saile into the Maiorque seas, if fortune fauour not their enterprise: and there it would be good (with the other Christian princes aduise) that they should set vpon him, and that Frandalo with his fléete should second them. Which newes vnderstood by the two Generals of the armie by sea, they sent vnto king Amadis and the rest of the Commaunders in the campe, to knowe their aduise: whereunto answer was returned, that they should followe the opinion of the Emperour of Constantinople, which they should execute vpon the next day in the morning: whereupon Frandalo ceased not all night to make and prepare diuers kindes of artificiall fires, wherewith he made account to burne the most part of Alphorax ships, which he did, as hereafter you shall heare. But to returne to king Armato and his forces: About an houre before day, according to their former determinations, they began to march against the Christians, thinking to find them sléeping, and thereby to slay their watch before they should haue meanes to set themselues in order of battaile. Neuertheless they found themselues deceiued, for they were alreadie set in order of battaile, standing close, with great desire to receiue their enemie as they did: the Emperour of Rome had the vantguard, and with him king Luisart: king Amadis, king Perion, Galaor, and Esplandian the maine battaile: & Florestan, Bruneo, and Balan, the rereguard. On the Pagans side there marched first, the Soudan of Alara, three score knightes, two Calisses, and foure Tamorlanes, that in great furie set vpon the Emperour of Rome and his battaile: where at their first arriuall many a braue knight was stroken downe, both on the one side and the other, for Esplandian and the Christian princes

being

being ioyned together, gaue not one blowe but it was a deadly stroke: yet at the first they were repulsed by the great quantitie of arrowes the enemies shot against them, which flew in so great number, that hailestones neuer fell thicker out of the skies: whereby it fell out, that both vantguard, maine battaile, and reregard, indured much paine: with that Norandel, Talanque, Maneſy, Trion, Landin, Licoran, Imoſill, Palowin, Enil, Elian, and to conclude, all Eſplandians companions with thirtie thousand men chosen by the Emperour, issued out of the citie: which small troupe (resolutely determined) did so abash the Pagans, that in a manner they all lost their courages: whereby they presently began to recule as farre backe as they aduanced themselues: wherewith those that before had been in feare tooke courage againe, and turning their faces on the enemie, recouered the ground that they had lost, in such sort, that with good cause they might well crie, Victorie. On the other side, Quedragant and Childadan setting saile, made towardes the straights, at the entrie whereof Frandalo ouertooke them with fourescore vessels of all sorts: and as they had spoken together touching their enterprise (considering the great power of their enemies) it was agreed that Frandalo (that had preuented them at other times) should first set vpon them; whereat he began to smite forwards, and Alphorax likewise against him, giuing a signe of battaile to his men, who with great courage entred vpon ten of the best gallies that the Christians had and sunke them in the sea: yet Frandalo nought abashed, set fire on more than an hundred of their shippes before Childadan entred into fight: but not long after, he and Quedragan came into them, where good defence preuailed. In which fight they continued for the space of eight houres without any signe vpon which side the victorie would fall, vntill Quedragant boorded Alphorax shippe and entred by force, slaying all that were therein. What need I stand longer to discourse? The Turkes seeing their captaine dead, and their manifest ouerthrow before their faces, being ready to fall into the Christians hands, began to flie, and by force of oares entred into the Palanque sea: but not all, for there were taken, burnt, and drowned about two or

three hundred Gallies, Galleasses, Fustes, and Brigandines, the rest saued themselues, in such sort as you heard before: to whom night was so much assistant, that the chase endured not so long as els it would haue done. Alphorax dead, and his armie ouerthrowne; the Christians assembled themselues togither, staying to heare newes from their armie on land, which in the meane time had had so much to endure, that wonder it was how they could hold out: and among the rest the good olde king Perion and Luisart seeing Esplandian raging like a lyon followed by the hunters, would not leaue him fearing to lose him, and so long they followed him, striking both on the right side and the left, that they found themselues inclosed by aboue a thousand Turkish horsemen, not hauing any other aid by them than Grumedan the Duke of Bristowe, Gulan, Brandoyuas, Nicoran of the riuer bridge, Cendil de gonate, and a few others. Surely those eight or nine caused those that met them to buy full dearely their approch, as not being the first danger wherein they had fallen: nevertheless in the end being ouer weatie and sore trauailed with the blowes they had giuen and received, they were cleane out of breath, and the worst was their horses were slaine vnder them, and they themselues so sore wounded, that they were all slaine in the place: only Esplandian that in a manner could scarse lift vp his armes when king Amadis his father with great number of Frenchmen found him there: whereat the battaile begun fiercer than euer it had beene, for Amadis and his company seeing the Kings dead and their companions lying on the ground, and Esplandian fighting in the middle of them on foote, they were in a manner mad, and they with rude such slaughter, that the Turkes were forced to separate themselues, and Esplandian horsed again, and being on horseback, notwithstanding all his wounds, yet he shed well that his body was not weary, for hee followed the enemies in such sort, (mourning withall to see his friends dead) that in short space (by the aide of his father and the rest that followed him) he forced the Soudan of Alara and his souldiers to turne their backes and flie, and with a slight gaue him such a blow with his sword vpon the head, that he strake him dead,

and more than an hundred Pagans with him: Amadis likewise did so valiantly, with all the Knightes of Fraunce, great Brittaine, and Swethland, specially the King of Denmarke, Talanque, Manely, Ambor, and Norandel, that wonder it was to see, yet had their valour little preuailed without the aide that the Emperor of Constantinople brought thither, with a great troupe of horsemen that the Emperour of Rome had likewise gathered togither: by which meanes king Armato with thirtie other Kings and their retinue were cleane ouerthrowne, and the most part of them put to the sword: the Christian Knightes making such slaughter, that the blood ranne about the field in such abundance, as if it had rained blood a whole day together: and greater had the abundance bene if night had not come on, which separated them, the Westerne Princes remaining incamped in the field, till day opened, that they might accomplish their desires. Meane time Amadis caused watch and Sentinels to be set in all places, because hee had been aduertised that King Armato that had fledde away, assembled his men by little and little, which to doe hee caused hornes and drummes to sound throughout the field, making fire round about the place where hee had retired, sending two knights to the sea side to know what had happened to his sonne: but newes was brought him that he was slaine, and all his shippes burnt and drowned, except fiftie or threescore that were at the end of the straights of the Maiorque sea, staying to heare newes of him, assure your selues that such newes pleased him not too well: neuertheless perceiuing it more conuenient to supply his owne necessitie than to spend the time in sorrow and teares, hee called such captaines as hee had togither, with whome he determined presently to depart, and before day to imbarke that small number of men that rested, before the Christians should perceiue the same. With that he commanded from place to place that euery man should presently retire, and without noise make towards the sea; where being arriued, they entred into their shippes flying towards Tartaria in all the hast they could: wherof the Emperor of Constantinople being aduertised, sent Frandalo with diuers gallies with him to follow them, but

all in vaine: in the meane time the hurt Knightes and souldiers were brought into the citie, and the dead buried each according to his degrée: wherein the Emperour shewed great affection, especially as touching the buriall of the Kings Perion and Luisart, for whome, Esplandian (comming to the Empire) and those that succéeded after him, caused two Pyramides to be made, not any thing inferiour to those which sometime were erected in the citie of Memphis, as well for the Kings Miris, Chemnis, as others: and hard by them they buried the bodies of the valiant knights Balan, Helian, Polimnier, Enil, Grumedan, the good olde man, and diuers other knights that died in that battaile, fighting in the defence of the faith of Jesus Christ, with whome their blessed soules do now remaine in ioy. And because no mention hath béen made of Quéene Calafre since her captiuitie, neither of the aide that shée had brought vnto the Pagan kings, it séemeth reason that I should declare the occasion why her women fought not with the rest, you must vnderstand, that the Quéene perceiuing her in one day to be taken not only with the loue of the knight Esplandian, but by the force of his father King Amadis, not long after she had béen in the company of the princes Leonorine, to whome Gandalin brought her, shée sent vnto her sister Lyote to will her with her women to return to sea, kéeping apart from all the Pagans, without once stirring from thence, for any thing whatsoeuer should fall, till shée receiued further newes from her, which was partly the cause of the enemies ouerthrow: for they doubting some treason being separated in that sort, from that time forward were in some feare and in greater suspition than before: and not without cause, for that if Lyote had aided king Armato both by sea and land, as shée might haue done, if her sister had not forbidden her, it is likely her esquadron of women being twentie thousand strong and somewhat more, had done great mischiefe to the Christians: but God of his goodnes prouided better for them.

CHAP.

CHAP. LIIII.

How after the Pagans were driuen out of Thrace, the Emperour of Constantinople renouncing his Empire, inuested Esplandian therwith, marrying him to his doughter the princesse Leonorine.

THe obsequies and funerals of the Kinges, Princes, Lords and others, that died in the battell, being finished, the wounded cured, and all things set at rest: the Emperour of Constantinople knowing that Amadis and those that were come with him from the Weslerne parts would retourne againe into their countries, desired them to assemble, shewing them that his meaning was to let them know what hée determined to doe before they went from thence: The next day in the morning they all met in the emperors great hall, and he standing in the midest, spake vnto them and said: My brethren, lords, and good friends, the bond wherein I stand bounden vnto you is so great, ỳ although it hath pleased God to make me Emperour of all Grecia, yet am I well assured, it is far beyond my poore hability to satisfie you for the same, estéeming the honour and riches that I now haue (next vnder God) be it little or much, to proceed from you: I am now threescore yeares of age, wholly aged & decrepit, by reason of the paines that in my youthfull yeares I haue continually taken in following armes: so it is I haue but one child, which is a daughter, the onely staffe & hope of my old yeares, whome I haue determined (if you thinke good) to giue in marriage vnto the valiant knight Esplandian, and with her likewise to inuest him with the Empire and gouernement of all my countries. And the better to liue solitarily, and to seperate my selfe from worldly company, I haue determined to goe (with the Empresse my wife) into the Monastery that I caused to bee made, there to liue religiously, calling vpon God and doing penuance for the euils I haue committed heretofore. Wherefore my

good lords and friendes I pray you, if this my determination like you well, let euery man giue consent, and you first (saied hee vnto king Amadis) to whom the matter toucheth neerer then to any of the rest, as being father and sonne. My lord (said he) my sonne shal doe as you command him. I will tell you, (said the Emperour) I remember that among other Prophesies which ought to happen in this our time, there is one that maketh me (as I think) agree with you in one consent. Esplandian hath vpon his body (as I haue vnderstood) certaine carracters, which shew his name and others that in no wise can be read, but only by this woman that is ordained to be his wife, let vs now see if it be my daughter or not: with that he sent for the Princesse Leonorine, who being brought thether by the Empresse and diuers other ladies, the Emperour desired Esplandian to open his doublet and shew them the letters hee had borne vpon his body from his mothers wombe, which hee refused not, but before them all shewed them openly, where euerye man might easily perceiue the white carracters, containing this word Esplandian, but they could not know the red: wherefore the Emperour caused his daughter to come neere, asking her what she could doe therein. My lord (said she) not long before Melie betraied Vrganda, she and I being alone in my chamber, she sent to fetch one of the bookes that had ben taken from her, couered with gold, whereon the Enchauntresse was ingrauen, and I remember that I saw therein the like carracters that Esplandian beareth on his body, and ouer them their signification, which is nothing else but his name and mine. Daughter (said the Emperor) if you haue the booke still, cause it to be brought hether: whereunto shee obaied. The booke being brought, shee shewed him the place that Melie had read vnto her, containing that which followeth: The happy knight ỹ shall conquer the sworde the great treasure inchaunted by me, shall from his mothers wombe bear his name in white carracters, and the name of her that shall be his wife in red carracters vpon his body, which red carracters shal be so difficult to vnderstand ỹ no man liuing in that time how wise or learned soeuer he be, shall expresse the same without he see this booke, which will teach him what the seuen carracters do signifie, repre-

senting the seuen words that follow, Leonorine daughter of the Emperour of Greece. In good faith (saied the Emperour) here is a strange case, and sheweth well ỳ the Enchantresse lady had more knowledge in art Magicke, then any ỳ liued in her time: and seeing my daughter hath so wel deuised, I am determined that you, (said he vnto the archbishop of Thrace) do graunt vnto Esplandian that which nature before his birth had promised vnto him, which is my daughter Leonorine. By which meanes the marriage was solemnised and finished the same day with no great ceremonies, the Court being as yet troubled for the death of so many Princes and great lords that were slaine in the battaile: but let it suffice to knowe, that those two louers enioyed the thing which they so long desired, Esplandian the same day being proclaimed Emperor of Grèece according to the commandement of his father in law: who within two months after, with the Empresse his wife went vnto a monastery & place of deuotion. And because quéne Calafre had alwaies pretended to marry with Esplandian, perceauing her intent frustrated, she could not refrain to speak in presence of thẽ all, & said vnto them: My lords, I beseech you giue me leaue to declare my mind. It is certain (said she) ỳ those which know me are not ignorant ỳ I am one of the greatest & most puissant princesse in all the east parts, by reason of the great quantity of golde and precious stones ỳ are within my countries. As touching my lineage, I am daughter of a quéne of ancient race, and as noble as any ỳ euer was in the world: so it is that fortune brought me into these countries, promising me shortly to return laden with great number of slaues & abundance of treasure. But to the contrary, I ỳ pretended to haue bought the captiuity of others, haue my selfe taken & better holden prisoner thẽ they ỳ were in their mortall enemies hands. This imprisonmẽt what so euer it is, is not ỳ wherevnto I am bound by the faith I haue giuen vnto my Amadis, hauing vanquished me by force, which I accept as from God to be wholly subiect to fortune: but the imprisonment wherein I do complain, is ỳ wherein my hart hath inclosed it self, & hath ỳ only willing by ỳ sole beauty & fauor I haue found in ỳ me we most happye emperor, esteeming my selfe to be such, ỳ I hoped (hauing myne to accept of yours)

to

to haue had him for my lord and husband, although my hope by little and little began to deminish, when I perceiued the Princes Leonorine to be more recommended in all perfections then any that euer I heard of, or euer haue séene: so that (speaking against my selfe) it had béene impossible to finde a more equall match nor more conformable one vnto the other, then the marriage of them together: which maketh me beléeue that fortune erreth wholly to eternise this my passion, wherein I will (if I can) so much impeach her, that forgetting my first affection, and if it will please him to giue me another husband worthy my estate, I will accept it willingly together with baptisme and the law of Christ which you doe hold. When the Emperour Esplandian saw her good pretence, he began to comfort her in the best manner hee could, and calling Talanque (a faire lusty and well disposed Gentleman) hee saied vnto the Quéene: Madame, this Gentleman I offer vnto you, is my cousin, and son vnto King Galaor, one of ỹ best knights as I thinke liuing in the world, I pray you at my request refuse him not for your lord and husband, assuring you, that I knowe no Princesse (how great soeuer she be) liuing in the world, but might content her selfe with him. The Quéene beheld him with so good affection, that shee easily beléeued Esplandian, and saied vnto him: Vpon your word my lord I will accept of him, and from this time forward yeeld my selfe to be his wife, and will for his sake obey so much, ỹ the Iland wherin I and others my predecessors would not suffer a man to liue, shall from henceforth be gouerned by him as other countries are by their Kings and Princes. And because her sister Leonce was not at that assembly, but with her ships lying in the straights (for Quéen Calafe had commaunded her as you heard before) shee desired the Emperour to send for her, who presently sent the admirall Tarsis to fetch her, she being come, and hauing heard her sisters mind, easily agréed thereto, and by the same meanes was married to Manely the wise, both espoused at one time, and being baptised, caused all their armie to do the like: which done, not long after those nine married couples, taking their leaues of the Kings, Princes, Lords, Ladies, and Gentlewomen of the Court, they imbarked themselues, Manely hauing

with

with him the vessels wherein Childadan his father arriued in the east, and Talanque those of king Galaor, which they caused to bee straighted & laden with all things necessary for so strange a country. And setting saile for Californie, not without great trouble, (which in the end they ouercame) they arriued in safety, where afterward they had many battels with their neighbours bordering about them, whom they ouercame, augmenting their dominions with many great lands & territories. But because the subiect of our history is not further to intreat of them, we will for this present leaue thē to goe on with ỹ which afterward was done in the city of Constantinople. Now heard before of the loues of Norandel and quæn Minoresse, ỹ daily increased mo thē more & more, which the Empresse knowing ful well, caused them to be married together, the emperor giuing to Norandel the castle La montaigne defendu, with the townes of Alburn & Galatia, for the which he recompenced Brandelo with the rich, fertile and well peopled villes of Galatines. Meantime the Emperor Esplandian not forgetting the imprisonment of Vrganda, one day among the rest (not long before the princes of the West imbarked thēselues to retyre into their countries) hee shewed thē in what sort Melie had taken her away, & by inchantment caried her to the great citty of Tesifant, where she held her prisoner in a great tower, desiring them most earnestly to giue him counsel what he might do therin. Son (said king Amadis) it were good you sent vnto Armato to offer him for her the souldan of Liquie ỹs your prisoner: & if he refuse you so to doe, we will enter into his country and fetch her thence by force. Whereunto they all agréed, so ỹ without longer delay Carmelle was sent to Tesifant, imbarking her self with four squires & three gentlewomē, & with a good wind arriued at ỹ castle La montaigne defendu, where she remained certain daies, staying for king Armatos passport which by one of her womē she sent to seeke, who found Armato as melancholy as might be, séeing as yet his fortune past, spetially the death of his son Alphorax, which without ceasing he cōtinually lamented. With ỹ the gentle woman gaue him to vnderstand ỹ cause of her arriual, whereat he was so ioyful ỹt [illegible] that presently he caused Carmelles safe conduct to be made and paide

ching it to the messenger, said vnto her: My friend, returne vnto your mistresse and assure her from mee, ỳ shee may come vnto my court as often as it pleaseth her, remembring well the pleasures she shewed vnto me during my imprisonment. The gentlewomã thanked him most hartily, and returned to Carmelle: who within fe w daies after went to Tessiant to Armato, where shee declared at large the effect of her embassage, which heard by king Armato and considring with himself, ỳ for Vrganda hee might recouer one of his greatest friends, & therby cause the Christian Princes for a time to refraine the ouerrunning of his country, sent presently for Melie, desiring her in all affection (for his sake) to grant to his desire & the pleasure of the Christians, considring the offer made by thẽ was both aduantage vnto him & his. Melie desirous to please Armato, brake her inchantments, & without delay Vrganda was deliuered vnto Carmelle, vpon condition, ỳ shee being arriued in the city of Constantinople, should likewise set the Soudan of Liqueie at liberty, which she swore and promised to do: which done, taking their leaue of Armato, they trauelled so long, ỳ they came vnto the castle La montaigne defendu, where Vrganda caused thẽ to leaue Carmelles ship to enter into the great serpent that as yet she found there, which presently of it selfe began to saile, as it had alwaies done before Vrganda was in prison, in such manner, that without impeachment they arriued in the Hauen of Constantinople, where the Princes and lords being on shoare, descended to the water side to receiue Vrganda: And thinking to bring her to the pallace, she desired thẽ to stay there til a propheſie were accõplished, ỳ should be done before the sun went down, which they agreed vnto: not onely to please her mind, but likewise desiring to see what it should be. With that they were abashed that the great serpent began to leape and labour in the water, as if it had ben in the greatest storme ỳ euer was, although the sea was very calme, but only about ỳ serpent, where things in most horrible maner, but ỳ which most abashed the beholders was, that the vessell cast forth such hoys ỳ he serues, ỳ not meaning them but his hatre [illegible] [illegible] & hauing entered in ỳ mans [illegible] ỳ serpent ỳn hyd into ỳ wa-

ter, wherewith it sunk and neuer was seen again. And with that they perceiued a farre off a great rock, which being driuen by the waues, came within half a bow shot nèer vnto the shore, on ẏ top whereof stood a woman bareheaded, and couered only with a linnen cloth to hide her priuities, being inuironned by more then a thousand serpents as wel great as small, which stung her in such sort, ẏ she wept and lamented in most pittiful maner, wherat the knights of great Brittaine had so much cõpassion, ẏ they thought to enter into the ships, and go to help her: which Vrganda forbad them. For (said she) besides the dangers that may happẽ vnto you you shal lose your labors, because she whom you behold (which is the inchauntresse lady) hath ordained it to be so. With ẏ the rocke sunk into the water, and the gentlewoman vanished out of sight, but not long after she appeared again vpon ẏ waues, flying from the fury of a monster of the sea, ẏ with his throat opẽ followed after, ready to deuour her, in such manner, that she came right vnto the hauen, crying with a loud voice vnto Esplandian: Gentle Emperor I pray you help me, for none but you can do it: wherewith Esplandian stepped forward, & holding the sword he conquered in the old pallace of the inchaunted rock in his hand, ran vnto her, & thinking to go nèere the monster, the gentlewoman ẏ fled from it raught hold of his sword, & whether he would or not took it away, wherwith she threw her self into the sea, & the monster after her. Whereat euery man began to laugh, saying to the emperor, that if a gentlewoman had predestinated the same vnto him, & kept it long time, another gentlewoman or she her selfe vpon a sodain tide had taken it from him againe. With ẏ Vrganda was led vnto the pallace, accompanied by the emperor with all ẏ kings & knights: where not long after the Soudan of Liquie was deliuered & sent to Tesiant, & about the beginning of the next week after the westerne princes took shipping: and being imbarked with Vrganda (recommending ẏ emperor to God) sailed forwards, till at ẏ last euery man arriued at his desired hauen, namely king Amadis that found Oriane very sad for ẏ death of her mother newly deceased, which much increased whẽ she knew of her father king Lisuart was dead. But in the end, time made her to forget her sorow, but not so soon as Amadis could haue wished.

CHAP. LV.

How the Emperour Esplandian sent Norandel to take possession of the country he had giuen him, and of the taking of Tesifant.

LONG after the western princes were departed into their countries, the emperor Esplandian would that Norandel should goe vnto the castle La montaigne defendu, and other towns that he had giuen him, to make warre against king Armato, for which cause he gaue him a great number of soldiers, with the which to make short he assailed the king of Turky, & had battell together, wherein many a valiant knight lost their liues: neuertheless, the victory fell on Norandels side, whereby he caused Armato to flie away, retiring to his city of Tesifant, which being known vnto the Emperour, he departed from Constantinople, & with a great army going into Turkie, ioyned with Norandels power, and besieged Tesifant, but feare sealed so wel vpon Armato, ỹ he found means to flie away & leaue ỹ town, which not long after was taken, & the princesse Heliaxe brought vnto the emperor, who vsed her courteously, and sent her againe vnto her father Amphicon king of Medea, giuing her diuers rich presents. News being spred throughout the country of Turky of the flight of king Armato, as also of the taking of Tesifant, diuers townes and cities yelded to Esplandian, that gaue them likewise to Norandel: and because winter ran on, they returned into Thrace, where two of his nephewes, sonnes of Galaor came to visite him, and to receiue the order of knighthood: which he gaue vnto them with both armor and horses, minding to request them to trauell to Tesifant with Norandel, thereto begin their first entrance into armes, but they desired rather to take ỹ way to Gaule Montaigne, where Nestorio and Talanque had great warre against their neighbours, which ỹ emperor perceiuing caused all things necessary for so long a voiage to be giuen them, with sorowful lamentations that in the end they receiued at their desired pleasure, where they attained to great honor and estimation among their fellowes. Now will we further discourse of them, & make mention of this present let them rest. And let it suffice vs to speake how

how that as time passed, Perion succeeded in his fathers seat, and Garinter married in the east parts with Heletria queen of Tharee, and was the best knight in all the world. And because it is declared at large in the first and seuenth bookes of this our history, we will passe it ouer at this time.

CHAP. LVI.

How Vrganda sent to desire king Amadis, the Emperor Esplandian, Don Galaor king of Sobradise, and others, to come vnto the Firme Isle, and of the maruellous inchauntments that he made ouer the same.

VRganda being in her Isle not as yet discouered, taking great pleasure to read Melies bookes, knewe by her art death to be nere vnto the kings and princes whom she most loued, and hauing great sorrow that worms should consume the flesh of so valiant knights, deuised to preuent ye same, which to do she took sea, accompanied of her two cousins Iuliande, and Soliset, with diuers other gentlewomen, and went vnto the Firme Isle, where being arriued, she sent to the emperor Esplandian, Amadis, Galaor, Florestan, Agraies, and Gratiador, praying them most earnestly to come vnto her to the palace of Apolidon, for matter ye touched them most neer, otherwise they should, if they did it not, ye before long time past euil would happe vnto the, and ye master Elizabeth should bring with him the book ye made of the aduentures of the knights liuing in his time, as also ye how should bring their liues with Ardan the valiant, Carmele, Galdalin, & the Gentlewoman of Denmarke. Those princes hauing vnderstood Vrganda's mind, failed not therin, so that about ye time she limited they came, they all arriued [illegible]

should passe away, & by death haue an end, according to the qualities of his creatures: Which diuers great persons considering with themselues, haue trauailed (during their liues) in many sorts, after their deaths to leaue some memorie of them, not minding to bury their renowme together with their bodies. Now I know for certaine that the end of your daies is nére: wherefore it is most requisite, that you bée constant, and shew your selues to be the same you were at the beginning. Neuertheless before that death shall seaze vpon you, I will shew the loue that I haue alwaies borne vnto you, and with the helpe of God, will doe so much, that without death you shall remaine asléepe, vntill the time that one descended of your race shall deliuer you frō thence, and after that shall bée in as good case and raigne againe within your countries as you did before: otherwise assure your selues that before fiue moneths do come vnto an end, not one of you shall be aliue, but all buried in the earth. Wherefore let euery man shew me his opinion, and for the rest (said shee) let me prouide. Surely that speech and newes of death was so harde for them to endure, that not one of them but changed colour, their hearts béeing seazed with an extreme sorow. And as they beheld each other, king Amadis seeming least astonished, answered vnto Vrganda and said: Madame, we know for certaine, that not one of vs, nor any other liuing creature can perfectly know what is necessarie for vs, but only you alone: wherefore doe with vs as you thinke good, and wée will all obey you: that is sufficient (said Vrganda) therefore let euery man put on his armour in the same maner hée vseth when hée goeth to the fielde, and each man hold his sword naked in his hand: that done, she caused them to goe into the forbidden chamber, setting them in their royall seates, with all their armes by them: which done, Vrganda tooke certaine liquours and Soliste in fiue vessels of gold brought a certaine composition, wherewith shee desired them to wash their faces, which they did. Whereby it happened, that one fashion (which Age and Time had defaced in them) began againe to appeare within their faces, in as great perfection as euer it had done: which aduenture pleased them almost so much that they began to behold each

other,

other, and their husbands thereat to be much abashed. Then Vrganda called master Elizabeth, & taking him by the hand, led him into the nert chamber, where she caused him to sit downe, & putting the booke that he had brought into her hands, she made signes to Gandalin and the gentlewoman of Denmark that they should follow her: and passing through the Arke of faithfull louers, they entred into the garden, where the images of Apolidon and Grimanaise were placed: ouer the which she set them and Ardan the dwarfe hard by them, wherwith she said vnto them: My friends, the true and faithfull louers haue been worthy to see these images before the Arke sometime inchanted, so you deserue this place for the faith and true and affection that you haue alwaies borne to your masters. Wherefore vpon your liues, see you depart not hence whatsoeuer you shall heare or see: that done, she went vnto the chamber where shee left the Emperour, and taking Carmelle by the hand, before them all she said vnto her: Carmelle, you were but of meane parentage, but the vertue and great courtesie of your heart hath so much inabled you, that you shall bee placed at the Emperors feet to fulfill the promise made vnto him, which was, neuer to forsake him while you liued. With that she spake vnto king Amadis and all the other princes, praying them not to stir till shee returned againe: and going vp into one of the towers of the pallace, shee take with her the best of Medeas bookes which Melie had, that sometime belonged to the Enchantresse ladye: and being in the tower shee vncouered her head, and that done she began to read certaine coniurations, and looking into all the foure quarters of the earth, making signes and tokens with her fingers, her face became so redde, that it seemed fire had issued out of her eyes. Whereupon there happened such an earthquake & so great tempests of lightning and thunder, as though the Elements had fought together. This tempest continuing for the space of three quarters of an houre, those whome she had caused to sit downe (as you heard before) remained in a trance without all knowledge, as if they had beene dead: and withall there appeared a cloud so obscure and thicke which inuironed the place, that neuer after it could be seen, till Luisart of Greece sonne to Eiplandian brought

that

that enchantment taken end, by meanes of a sword, whiche he ouer-
quered, as it shall be declared to you in the ixe Booke: wherein
is described one of the most pleasant and delectable hill desers that
euer was read. At whiche time all the Princes and the rest were
returned againe, and not before. The Emperor Esplandian at that
time had scarce attained his grandfathers name called Lisuart, as
then about the age of eight yeeres: King Amadis a sonne and a
daughter, the sonne named Perion, and the daughter Bellene that
married the eldest sonne of the Emperour of Rome: King Ga-
lay two sonnes, the one named Perion, the noble Gariter, of
whom I haue shewed you before: Florestan the King of Scot-
dained two sonnes, the one named Florestan after his father, that
raigned after him, and the other Palmindan of Almaine after his
grandfather: Agayes Earle of Dalandyze two sonnes, the one
called Langines, the other Olinedes: King Brunea one sonne
named Matlaces, and a daughter named Melicene that married
Queene Sagamors sonne, and bare his fathers name: King Childada
two sonnes, the eldest called Abies of Ireland after his grandfa-
ther, whome Amadis delyuered as you haue heard be-
fore: [illegible] as then were
[illegible]